



1907



BIBLIOTECA DELLA R. CASA  
IN NAPOLI

N.º d'inventario

Sala Grande

Scansia 8 Polchetto 3

N.º d'ord. 29

7/10/15





568585

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
DECLINE AND FALL  
OF THE  
ROMAN EMPIRE.

By EDWARD GIBBON, Esq;

VOLUME THE TENTH.

A NEW EDITION.

---

BASIL:

PRINTED BY J. J. TOURNEISEN.

M DCC LXXXIX.



2000

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## OF THE TENTH VOLUME.

### CHAP. LIII.

*State of the Eastern Empire in the Tenth Century. —  
Extent and Division. — Wealth and Revenue. —  
Palace of Constantinople. — Titles and Offices. —  
Pride and Power of the Emperors. — Tactics of the  
Greeks, Arabs, and Franks. — Loss of the Latin  
Tongue. — Studies and Solitude of the Greeks.*

A. D. Page

<b>M</b> EMORIALS of the Greek Empire . . . . .	1
Works of Constantine Porphyrogenitus . . . . .	2
Their Imperfections . . . . .	3
Embassy of Liutprand . . . . .	5
The Themes, or Provinces of the Empire, and its Limits in every Age . . . . .	6
General Wealth and Populousness . . . . .	8
State of Peloponnesus: Sclavonians . . . . .	10
Freemen of Laconia . . . . .	12
Cities and Revenue of Peloponnesus . . . . .	ib.
Manufactures—especially of Silk . . . . .	13
Transported from Greece to Sicily . . . . .	15
Revenue of the Greek Empire . . . . .	16
Pomp and Luxury of the Emperors . . . . .	18
The Palace of Constantinople . . . . .	ib.
Furniture and Attendants . . . . .	21
Honours and Titles of the Imperial Family . . . . .	22
Offices of the Palace, the State, and the Army . . . . .	24
Adoration of the Emperor . . . . .	26

<u>A. D.</u>		<u>Page</u>
	<u>Reception of Ambassadors</u> . . . . .	27
	<u>Processions and Acclamations</u> . . . . .	28
	<u>Marriage of the Cæsars with foreign Nations</u> . . . . .	30
	<u>Imaginary Law of Constantine</u> . . . . .	31
733	<u>The first Exception</u> . . . . .	ib.
941	<u>The second</u> . . . . .	32
943	<u>The third</u> . . . . .	ib.
972	<u>Otho of Germany</u> . . . . .	34
988	<u>Wolodomir of Russia</u> . . . . .	ib.
	<u>Despotic Power</u> . . . . .	35
	<u>Coronation Oath</u> . . . . .	ib.
	<u>Military Force of the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Franks</u> . . . . .	36
	<u>Navy of the Greeks</u> . . . . .	37
	<u>Tactics and Character of the Greeks</u> . . . . .	40
	<u>Character and Tactics of the Saracens</u> . . . . .	43
	<u>The Franks or Latins</u> . . . . .	45
	<u>Their Character and Tactics</u> . . . . .	48
	<u>Oblivion of the Latin Language</u> . . . . .	50
	<u>The Greek Emperors and their Subjects retain and assert the name of Romans</u> . . . . .	52
	<u>Period of Ignorance</u> . . . . .	ib.
	<u>Revival of Greek Learning</u> . . . . .	53
	<u>Decay of Taste and Genius</u> . . . . .	56
	<u>Want of national Emulation</u> . . . . .	59

## C H A P. LIV.

Origin and Doctrine of the Paulicians. — Their Persecution by the Greek Emperors. Revolt in Armenia, &c. — Transplantation into Thrace. — Propagation in the West. — The Seeds, Character, and Consequences of the Reformation.

<u>A. D.</u>		<u>Page</u>
	<u>Stupine Superstition of the Greek Church</u> . . . . .	61
660	<u>Origin of the Paulicians, or Disciples of St. Paul</u> . . . . .	63
	<u>Their Bible</u> . . . . .	64
	<u>The Simplicity of their Belief and Worship</u> . . . . .	65

# CONTENTS.

v

A. D.	Page
They hold the two Principles of the Magians and Manichæans . . . . .	67
The Establishment of the Paulicians in Armenia, Pontus, &c. . . . .	ib.
Persecution of the Greek Emperors . . . . .	68
845—880. Revolt of the Paulicians . . . . .	71
They fortify Tephricæ . . . . .	ib.
And pillage Asia Minor . . . . .	72
Their Decline . . . . .	74
Their Transplantation from Armenia to Thrace . . . . .	ib.
Their Introduction into Italy and France . . . . .	77
1200 Persecution of the Albigeois . . . . .	79
Character and Consequences of the Reformation . . . . .	80

## CHAP. LV.

*The Bulgarians. — Origin, Migrations, and Settlement of the Hungarians. — Their Inroads in the East and West. — The Monarchy of Russia. — Geography and Trade. — Wars of the Russians against the Greek Empire. — Conversion of the Barbarians.*

A. D.	Page
680 Emigration of the Bulgarians . . . . .	86
900 Croats or Slavonians of Dalmatia . . . . .	88
640—1017. First Kingdom of the Bulgarians . . . . .	89
884 Emigration of the Turks or Hungarians . . . . .	92
Their Fennic Origin . . . . .	94
900 Tactics and Manners of the Hungarians and Bulgarians . . . . .	95
889 Establishment and Inroads of the Hungarians . . . . .	98
934 Victory of Henry the Fowler . . . . .	102
955 ——— of Otto the Great . . . . .	ib.
839 Origin of the Russian Monarchy . . . . .	105
The Varangians of Constantinople . . . . .	107
950 Geography and Trade of Russia . . . . .	108
Naval Expeditions of the Russians against Constantinople . . . . .	111
865 The first . . . . .	113

A. D.	Page
904 The second . . . . .	113
941 The third . . . . .	114
1043 The fourth . . . . .	ib.
Negotiations and Prophecy . . . . .	115
955—973. Reign of Swatoslaus . . . . .	116
970—973. His Defeat by John Zimisces . . . . .	118
864 Conversion of Russia . . . . .	120
955 Baptism of Olga . . . . .	121
988 ——— of Wolodomir . . . . .	122
800—1100. Christianity of the North . . . . .	123

## CHAP. LVI.

*The Saracens, Franks, and Greeks, in Italy. — First Adventures and Settlement of the Normans. — Character and Conquests of Robert Guiscard, Duke of Apulia. — Deliverance of Sicily by his Brother Roger. — Victories of Robert over the Emperors of the East and West. — Roger, King of Sicily, invades Africa and Greece. — The Emperor Manuel Comnenus. — Wars of the Greeks and Normans. — Extinction of the Normans.*

A. D.	Page
840—1017. Conflict of the Saracens, Latins, and Greeks, in Italy . . . . .	127
871 Conquest of Bari . . . . .	129
890 New Province of the Greeks in Italy . . . . .	130
983 Defeat of Otho III. . . . .	131
Anecdotes . . . . .	132
1016 Origin of the Normans in Italy . . . . .	135
1029 Foundation of Averfa . . . . .	137
1038 The Normans serve in Sicily . . . . .	138
1040—1043. Their Conquest of Apulia . . . . .	140
Character of the Normans . . . . .	141
1046 Oppression of Apulia . . . . .	142
1049—1054. League of the Pope and the two Empires . . . . .	143
1053 Expedition of Pope Leo IX. against the Normans . . . . .	144

# CONTENTS.

VII

A. D.	Page
His Defeat and Captivity . . . . .	145
Origin of the Papal Investitures to the Normans . . . . .	146
1029—1085. Birth and Character of Robert Guiscard . . . . .	ib.
1054—1080 His Ambition and Success . . . . .	149
1060 Duke of Apulia . . . . .	151
His Italian Conquests . . . . .	152
School of Salerno . . . . .	153
Trade of Amalfi . . . . .	154
1060—1090. Conquest of Sicily by count Roger . . . . .	155
1081 Robert invades the Eastern Empire . . . . .	158
Siege of Durazzo . . . . .	160
The Army and March of the Emperor Alexius . . . . .	163
Battle of Durazzo . . . . .	166
1082 Durazzo taken . . . . .	168
Return of Robert, and Actions of Bohemond . . . . .	169
1081 The Emperor Henry III. invited by the Greeks . . . . .	170
1081—1084. Besieges Rome . . . . .	172
Flies before Robert . . . . .	173
1084 Second Expedition of Robert into Greece . . . . .	174
1085 His Death . . . . .	176
1101—1154. Reign and Ambition of Roger, great Count of Sicily . . . . .	177
1127 Duke of Apulia . . . . .	ib.
1130—1139. First King of Sicily . . . . .	178
1122—1152. His Conquests in Africa . . . . .	179
1146 His Invasion of Greece . . . . .	181
His Admiral delivers Louis VII. of France . . . . .	181
Insults Constantinople . . . . .	ib.
1148, 1149. The Emperor Manuel repulses the Normans . . . . .	ib.
1155 He reduces Apulia and Calabria . . . . .	184
1155—1174. His Design of acquiring Italy and the Western Empire . . . . .	185
Failure of his Designs . . . . .	187
1156 Peace with the Normans . . . . .	188
1185 Last War of the Greeks and Normans . . . . .	189
1144—1166. William I. the Bad, King of Sicily . . . . .	ib.

A. D.	Page
1166—1189. William II. the Good . . . . .	190
Lamentation of the Historian Falcandus . . . . .	191
1194 Conquest of the Kingdom of Sicily by the Emperor Henry VI. . . . .	193
1204 Final Extinction of the Normans . . . . .	195

## C H A P. LVII.

*The Turks of the House of Seljuk. — Their Revolt against Mahmud Conqueror of Hindostan. — Togrul subdues Persia, and protects the Caliphs. — Defeat and Captivity of the Emperor Romanus Diogenes by Alp Arslan. — Power and Magnificence of Malek Shab. — Conquest of Asia Minor and Syria. — State and Oppression of Jerusalem. — Pilgrimages to the Holy Sepulchre.*

A. D.	Page
THE TURKS . . . . .	196
997—1028. Mahmud, the Gaznevide . . . . .	197
His twelve Expeditions into Hindostan . . . . .	198
His Character . . . . .	200
980—1028. Manners and Emigration of the Turks, or Turkmans . . . . .	202
1038 They defeat the Gaznevites, and subdue Persia . . . . .	205
1038—1152. Dynasty of the Seljukians . . . . .	ib.
1038—1063. Reign and Character of Togrul Beg . . . . .	206
1055 He delivers the Caliph of Bagdad . . . . .	208
His Investiture . . . . .	209
1063 And Death . . . . .	211
1050 The Turks invade the Roman Empire . . . . .	ib.
1063—1072. Reign of Alp Arslan . . . . .	212
1065—1068. Conquest of Armenia and Georgia . . . . .	ib.
1068—1071. The Emperor Romanus Diogenes . . . . .	213
1071 Defeat of the Romans . . . . .	215
Captivity and Deliverance of the Emperor . . . . .	217
1072 Death of Alp Arslan . . . . .	220
1072—1092. Reign and Prosperity of Malek Shah . . . . .	222



# CONTENTS.

IX

A. D.	Page
1092 His Death . . . . .	225
Division of the Seljukian Empire . . . . .	226
1074—1084. Conquest of Asia Minor by the Turks . . . . .	227
The Seljukian Kingdom of Roum . . . . .	230
638—1099. State and Pilgrimage of Jerusalem . . . . .	232
969—1076. Under the Fatimite Caliphs . . . . .	235
1009 Sacrilege of Hakem . . . . .	236
1024 Encrease of Pilgrimages . . . . .	237
1076—1096, Conquest of Jerusalem by the Turks . . . . .	238

## CHAP. LVIII.

*Origin and Numbers of the First Crusade. — Characters of the Latin Princes. — Their March to Constantinople. — Policy of the Greek Emperor Alexius. — Conquest of Nice, Antioch, and Jerusalem, by the Franks. — Deliverance of the Holy Sepulchre. — Godfrey of Bouillon, First King of Jerusalem. — Institutions of the French or Latin Kingdom.*

A. D.	Page
1095—1099. The first Crusade . . . . .	241
Peter the Hermit . . . . .	ib.
1095 Urban II. in the Council of Placentia . . . . .	243
Council of Clermont . . . . .	246
Justice of the Crusades . . . . .	249
Spiritual Motives and Indulgences . . . . .	252
Temporal and carnal Motives . . . . .	255
Influence of Example . . . . .	257
1096 Departure of the first Crusaders . . . . .	259
Their Destruction in Hungary and Asia . . . . .	261
The Chiefs of the first Crusade . . . . .	263
I. Godfrey of Bouillon . . . . .	264
II. Hugh of Vermandois, Robert of Normandy . . . . .	
Robert of Flanders, Stephen of Chartres, &c. . . . .	265
III. Raymond of Tholouse . . . . .	266
IV. Bohemond and Tancred . . . . .	267
Chivalry . . . . .	268
1096, 1097. March of the Princes to Constantinople . . . . .	272

A. D.	Page
Policy of the Emperor Alexius Comnenus	276
He obtains the Homage of the Crusaders	278
Influence of the Franks	282
1097 Their Review and Numbers	283
Siege of Nice	286
Battle of Dorylæum	288
March through the Lesser Asia	290
1097—1151. Baldwin founds the Principality of Edessa	291
1097, 1098. Siege of Antioch	292
1098. Victory of the Crusaders	296
Their Famine and Distress at Antioch	ib.
Legend of the Holy Lance	299
Celestial Warriors	301
The State of the Turks and Caliphs of Egypt	303
1098, 1099. Delay of the Franks	305
1099 Their March to Jerusalem	306
Siege and Conquest of Jerusalem	ib.
1099, 1100. Election and Reign of Godfrey of Bouillon	311
1099 Battle of Ascalon	312
1099—1187. The Kingdom of Jerusalem	313
1099—1369. Affairs of Jerusalem	315
Court of Peers	317
Law of judicial Combats	318
Court of Burgesses	320
Syrians	ib.
Villains and Slaves	321

# CONTENTS.

xi

## CHAP. LIX.

*Preservation of the Greek Empire. — Numbers, Passage, and Event, of the Second and Third Crusades. — St. Bernard. — Reign of Saladin in Egypt and Syria. — His Conquest of Jerusalem. — Naval Crusades. — Richard the First of England. — Pope Innocent the Third; and the Fourth and Fifth Crusades. — The Emperor Frederic the Second. — Louis the Ninth of France; and the Two last Crusades. — Expulsion of the Latins or Franks by the Mamelukes.*

A. D.	Page
1097—1118. Success of Alexius	322
Expeditions by Land	325
1101 The first Crusade	ib.
1147 The second, of Conrad III. and Louis VII.	ib.
1189 The third, of Frederic I.	ib.
Their Numbers	326
Passage through the Greek Empire	328
Turkish Warfare	331
Obstinacy of the Enthusiasm of the Crusades	334
1091—1153. Character and Mission of St. Bernard	335
Progress of the Mahometans	337
The Atabeks of Syria	338
1127—1145. Zenghi	ib.
1145—1174. Nouredin	339
1163—1169. Conquest of Egypt by the Turks	340
1171 End of the Fatimite Caliphs	344
1171—1193. Reign and Character of Saladin	ib.
1187 His Conquest of the Kingdom	348
And City of Jerusalem	351
1188 The third Crusade, by Sea	354
1189—1191. Siege of Acre	356
1191, 1192. Richard of England, in Palestine	358
1192 His Treaty and Departure	361
1193 Death of Saladin	363

A. D.	Page
1198—1216. Innocent III.	364
1203 The fourth Crusade	365
1218 The fifth	ib.
1228 The emperor Frederic II. in Palestine	366
1243 Invasion of the Carizmians	369
1248—1254. St. Louis, and the sixth Crusade	370
1249 He takes Damietta	371
1250 His Captivity in Egypt	372
1270 His Death before Tunis, in the seventh Crusade	374
1250—1317. The Mamalukes of Egypt	ib.
1268 Loss of Antioch	375
1291 The Loss of Acre and the Holy Land	377

---

THE  
H I S T O R Y  
OF THE  
DECLINE AND FALL  
OF THE  
ROMAN EMPIRE.

---

CHAP. LIII.

*State of the Eastern Empire in the Tenth Century. — Extent and Division. — Wealth and Revenue. — Palace of Constantinople. — Titles and Offices. — Pride and Power of the Emperors. — Tactics of the Greeks, Arabs, and Franks. — Loss of the Latin Tongue. — Studies and Solitude of the Greeks.*

A RAY of historic light seems to beam from the darkness of the tenth century. We open with curiosity and respect the royal volumes of Constantine Porphyrogenitus<sup>1</sup>, which he composed at a mature age for the instruction of his son, and which promise to unfold the state of the Eastern empire, both in peace and war, both at home

CHAP.  
LIII.  
Memorials of  
the Greek  
empire.

## 2 THE DECLINE AND FALL

C H A P.

LIII.

Works of  
Constantine  
Porphyrogen-  
itus.

and abroad. In the first of these works he minutely describes the pompous ceremonies of the church and palace of Constantinople, according to his own practice and that of his predecessors<sup>2</sup>. In the second, he attempts an accurate survey of the provinces, the *themes*, as they were then denominated; both of Europe and Asia<sup>3</sup>. The system of Roman tactics, the discipline and order of the troops, and the military operations by land and sea, are explained in the third of these didactic collections, which may be ascribed to Constantine or his father Leo<sup>4</sup>. In the fourth, of the administration of the empire, he reveals the secrets of the Byzantine policy, in friendly or hostile intercourse with the nations of the earth. The literary labours of the age, the practical systems of law, agriculture, and history, might redound to the benefit of the subject and the honour of the Macedonian princes. The sixty books of the *Basilics*<sup>5</sup>, the code and pandects of civil jurisprudence, were gradually framed in the three first reigns of that prosperous dynasty. The art of agriculture had amused the leisure, and exercised the pens, of the best and wisest of the ancients; and their chosen precepts are comprised in the twenty books of the *Geoponics*<sup>6</sup> of Constantine. At his command, the historical examples of vice and virtue were methodised in fifty-three books<sup>7</sup>, and every citizen might apply, to his contemporaries or himself, the lesson or the warning of past times. From the august character of a legislator, the sovereign of the East descends to the

more humble office of a teacher and a scribe: C H A P.  
LIII.  
and if his successors and subjects were regardless of his paternal cares, *we* may inherit and enjoy the everlasting legacy.

A closer survey will indeed reduce the value of the gift, and the gratitude of posterity: in the possession of these Imperial treasures, we may still deplore our poverty and ignorance; and the fading glories of their authors will be obliterated by indifference or contempt. The Basilics will sink to a broken copy, a partial and mutilated version in the Greek language, of the laws of Justinian; but the sense of the old civilians is often superseded by the influence of bigotry; and the absolute prohibition of divorce, concubinage, and interest for money, enslaves the freedom of trade and the happiness of private life. In the historical book, a subject of Constantine might admire the inimitable virtues of Greece and Rome: he might learn to what a pitch of energy and elevation the human character had formerly aspired. But a contrary effect must have been produced by a new edition of the lives of the saints, which the great logothete or chancellor of the empire was directed to prepare: and the dark fund of superstition was enriched by the fabulous and florid legends of Simon the *Metaphrast* \*. The merits and miracles of the whole calendar are of less account in the eyes of a sage than the toil of a single husbandman, who multiplies the gifts of the Creator and supplies the food of his brethren. Yet the royal authors of

Their imper-  
fectious!

## 4 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. the *Geoponics* were more seriously employed in expounding the precepts of the destroying art, which has been taught since the days of Xenophon', as the art of heroes and kings. But the *Tactics* of Leo and Constantine are mingled with the baser alloy of the age in which they lived. It was destitute of original genius; they implicitly transcribe the rules and maxims which had been confirmed by victories. It was unskilled in the propriety of style and method, they blindly confound the most distant and discordant institutions, the phalanx of Sparta and that of Macedon, the legions of Cato and Trajan, of Augustus and Theodosius. Even the use, or at least the importance, of these military rudiments may be fairly questioned: their general theory is dictated by reason; but the merit, as well as difficulty, consists in the application. The discipline of a soldier is formed by exercise rather than by study: the talents of a commander are appropriated to those calm though rapid minds, which nature produces to decide the fate of armies and nations: the former is the habit of a life, the latter the glance of a moment; and the battles won by lessons of tactics may be numbered with the epic poems created from the rules of criticism. The book of ceremonies is a recital, tedious yet imperfect, of the despicable pageantry which had infected the church and state since the gradual decay of the purity of the one and the power of the other. A review of the themes or provinces might promise such authentic and useful information, as



the curiosity of government only can obtain, instead of traditionary fables on the origin of the cities, and malicious epigrams on the vices of their inhabitants<sup>10</sup>. Such information the historian would have been pleased to record; nor should his silence be condemned if the most interesting objects, the population of the capital and provinces, the amount of the taxes and revenues, the numbers of subjects and strangers who served under the Imperial standard, have been unnoticed by Leo the philosopher, and his son Constantine. His treatise of the public administration is stained with the same blemishes; yet it is discriminated by peculiar merit: the antiquities of the nations may be doubtful or fabulous; but the geography and manners of the Barbaric world are delineated with curious accuracy. Of these nations, the Franks alone were qualified to observe in their turn, and to describe, the metropolis of the East. The ambassador of the great Otho, a bishop of Cremona, has painted the state of Constantinople about the middle of the tenth century: his style is glowing, his narrative lively, his observation keen; and even the prejudices and passions of Liutprand are stamped with an original character of freedom and genius<sup>11</sup>. From this scanty fund of foreign and domestic materials I shall investigate the form and substance of the Byzantine empire; the provinces and wealth, the civil government and military force, the character and literature, of the Greeks in a period of six hundred years, from

Embassy of  
Liutprand.

## 6 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. the reign of Heraclius to the successful invasion of  
LIII. the Franks or Latins.

The themes  
or provinces  
of the em-  
pire, and its  
limits in  
every age.

After the final division between the sons of Theodosius, the swarms of Barbarians from Scythia and Germany overspread the provinces and extinguished the empire of ancient Rome. The weakness of Constantinople was concealed by extent of dominion: her limits were inviolate, or at least entire; and the kingdom of Justinian was enlarged by the splendid acquisition of Africa and Italy. But the possession of these new conquests was transient and precarious; and almost a moiety of the Eastern empire was torn away by the arms of the Saracens. Syria and Egypt were oppressed by the Arabian caliphs; and, after the reduction of Africa, their lieutenants invaded and subdued the Roman province which had been changed into the Gothic monarchy of Spain. The islands of the Mediterranean were not inaccessible to their naval powers; and it was from their extreme stations, the harbours of Crete and the fortresses of Cilicia, that the faithful or rebel emirs insulted the majesty of the throne and capital. The remaining provinces under the obedience of the emperors, were cast into a new mould; and the jurisdiction of the presidents, the consulars, and the counts, was superseded by the institution of the *themes*<sup>12</sup>, or military governments, which prevailed under the successors of Heraclius, and are described by the pen of the royal author. Of the twenty-nine themes, twelve in Europe

and seventeen in Asia, the origin is obscure, the etymology doubtful or capricious: the limits were arbitrary and fluctuating; but some particular names that sound the most strangely to our ear were derived from the character and attributes of the troops that were maintained at the expence, and for the guard, of the respective divisions. The vanity of the Greek princes most eagerly grasped the shadow of conquest and the memory of lost dominion. A new Mesopotamia was created on the western side of the Euphrates: the appellation and prætor of Sicily were transferred to a narrow slip of Calabria; and a fragment of the dutchy of Beneventum was promoted to the style and title of the theme of Lombardy. In the decline of the Arabian empire, the successors of Constantine might indulge their pride in more solid advantages. The victories of Nicephorus, John Zimisces, and Basil the second, revived the fame and enlarged the boundaries of the Roman name: the province of Cilicia, the metropolis of Antioch, the islands of Crete and Cyprus, were restored to the allegiance of Christ and Cæsar: one third of Italy was annexed to the throne of Constantinople: the kingdom of Bulgaria was destroyed; and the last sovereigns of the Macedonian dynasty extended their sway from the sources of the Tigris to the neighbourhood of Rome. In the eleventh century, the prospect was again clouded by new enemies and new misfortunes: the relics of Italy were swept away by the Norman adventurers; and almost all

## 8 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. the Asiatic branches were dis severed from the  
 LIII Roman trunk by the Turkish conquerors. After  
 these losses, the emperors of the Comnenian fam-  
 ily continued to reign from the Danube to  
 Peloponnesus, and from Belgrade to Nice, Tre-  
 bizond, and the winding stream of the Meander.  
 The spacious provinces of Thrace, Macedonia,  
 and Greece, were obedient to their sceptre; the  
 possession of Cyprus, Rhodes, and Crete, was  
 accompanied by the fifty islands of the Ægean or  
 Holy Sea"; and the remnant of their empire  
 transcends the measure of the largest of the Eu-  
 ropean kingdoms.

General  
 wealth and  
 populous-  
 ness.

The same princes might assert, with dignity  
 and truth, that of all the monarchs of Christen-  
 dom they possessed the greatest city", the most  
 ample revenue, the most flourishing and populous  
 state. With the decline and fall of the em-  
 pire, the cities of the West had decayed and  
 fallen; nor could the ruins of Rome, or the mud  
 walls, wooden hovels, and narrow precincts,  
 of Paris and London, prepare the Latin stranger  
 to contemplate the situation and extent of  
 Constantinople, her stately palaces and churches,  
 and the arts and luxury of an innumerable  
 people. Her treasures might attract, but her  
 virgin strength had repelled, and still promised  
 to repel, the audacious invasion of the Persian  
 and Bulgarian, the Arab and the Russian. The  
 provinces were less fortunate and impregnable;  
 and few districts; few cities, could be discovered  
 which had not been violated by some fierce Bar-

barian, impatient to despoil, because he was hopeless to possess. From the age of Justinian the Eastern empire was sinking below its former level: the powers of destruction were more active than those of improvement; and the calamities of war were embittered by the more permanent evils of civil and ecclesiastical tyranny. The captive who had escaped from the Barbarians was often stripped and imprisoned by the ministers of his sovereign: the Greek superstition relaxed the mind by prayer, and emaciated the body by fasting; and the multitude of convents and festivals diverted many hands and many days from the temporal service of mankind. Yet the subjects of the Byzantine empire were still the most dextrous and diligent of nations; their country was blessed by nature with every advantage of soil, climate, and situation; and, in the support and restoration of the art, their patient and peaceful temper was more useful than the warlike spirit and feudal anarchy of Europe. The provinces that still adhered to the empire were repopled and enriched by the misfortunes of those which were irrecoverably lost. From the yoke of the caliphs, the Catholics of Syria, Egypt, and Africa, retired to the allegiance of their prince, to the society of their brethren: the moveable wealth, which eludes the search of oppression, accompanied and alleviated their exile; and Constantinople received into her bosom the fugitive trade of Alexandria and Tyre. The chiefs of Armenia and

C H A P. Scythia, who fled from hostile or religious per-  
 LIII. secution, were hospitably entertained: their fol-  
 lowers were encouraged to build new cities and  
 to cultivate waste lands; and many spots, both  
 in Europe and Asia, preserved the name, the  
 manners, or at least the memory; of these nati-  
 onal colonies. Even the tribes of Barbarians,  
 who had seated themselves in arms on the ter-  
 ritory of the empire, were gradually reclaimed  
 to the laws of the church and state; and as  
 long as they were separated from the Greeks,  
 their posterity supplied a race of faithful and  
 obedient soldiers. Did we possess sufficient ma-  
 terials to survey the twenty-nine themes of the  
 Byzantine monarchy, our curiosity might be  
 satisfied with a chosen example: it is fortunate  
 enough that the clearest light should be thrown  
 on the most interesting province, and the name  
 of PELOPONESUS will awaken the attention of  
 the classic reader.

State of Pe-  
 loponesus:  
 Scythians.

As early as the eighth century, in the troubled  
 reign of the Iconoclasts, Greece, and even Pello-  
 ponnesus<sup>15</sup>, were overrun by some Scythian  
 bands who outstripped the royal standard of Bul-  
 garia. The strangers of old, Cadmus, and Da-  
 naus, and Pelops, had planted in that fruitful  
 soil, the seeds of policy and learning; but the  
 savages of the north eradicated what yet remained  
 of their sickly and withered roots. In this irrup-  
 tion, the country and the inhabitants were trans-  
 formed; the Grecian blood was contaminated;  
 and the proudest nobles of Peloponesus were

branded with the names of foreigners and *slaves*. By the diligence of succeeding princes, the land was in some measure purified from the Barbarians; and the humble remnant was bound by an oath of obedience, tribute, and military service, which they often renewed and often violated. The siege of Patras was formed by a singular concurrence of the Slavonians of Peloponesus and the Saracens of Africa. In their last distress, a pious fiction of the approach of the prætor of Corinth, revived the courage of the citizens. Their sally was bold and successful; the strangers embarked, the rebels submitted, and the glory of the day was ascribed to a phantom or a stranger, who fought in the foremost ranks under the character of St. Andrew the apostle. The shrine which contained his relics was decorated with the trophies of victory, and the captive race was for ever devoted to the service and vassalage of the Metropolitan church of Patras. By the revolt of two Slavonian tribes in the neighbourhood of Helos and Lacedæmon, the peace of the peninsula was often disturbed. They sometimes insulted the weakness, and sometimes resisted the oppression, of the Byzantine government, till at length the approach of their hostile brethren extorted a golden bull to define the rights and obligations of the Ezzerites and Milengi, whose annual tribute was defined at twelve hundred pieces of gold. From these strangers the Imperial geographer has accurately distinguished a domestic and perhaps original race, who, in some

C H A P.  
LIII.

C H A P.  
LIII.  
Freemen of  
Laconia.

degree, might derive their blood from the much injured Helots. The liberality of the Romans, and especially of Augustus, had enfranchised the maritime cities from the dominion of Sparta; and the continuance of the same benefit ennobled them with the title of *Eleuthero*-or free-Laconians<sup>16</sup>. In the time of Constantine Prophyrogenitus, they had acquired the name of *Mainotes*, under which they dishonour the claim of liberty by the inhuman pillage of all that is shipwrecked on their rocky shores. Their territory, barren of corn, but fruitful of olives, extended to the Cape of Malea: they accepted a chief or prince from the Byzantine prætor, and a light tribute of four hundred pieces of gold was the badge of their immunity rather than of their dependence. The freemen of Laconia assumed the character of Romans, and long adhered to the religion of the Greeks. By the zeal of the emperor Basil, they were baptized in the faith of Christ: but the altars of Venus and Neptune had been crowned by these rustic votaries five hundred years after they were proscribed in the Roman world. In the theme of Peloponesus<sup>17</sup>, forty cities were still numbered, and the declining state of Sparta, Argos, and Corinth, may be suspended in the tenth century, at an equal distance, perhaps, between their antique splendour and their present desolation. The duty of military service either in person or by substitute, was imposed on the lands or benefices of the province: a sum of five pieces of gold was assessed on each of the

Cities and  
revenue of  
Pelopone-  
sus.



substantial tenants ; and the same capitation was shared among several heads of inferior value. On the proclamation of an Italian war, the Peloponnesians excused themselves by a voluntary oblation of one hundred pounds of gold (four thousand pounds sterling), and a thousand horses with their arms and trappings. The churches and monasteries furnished their contingent ; a sacrilegious profit was extorted from the sale of ecclesiastical honours, and the indigent bishop of Leucadia<sup>19</sup> was made responsible for a pension of one hundred pieces of gold<sup>20</sup>.

But the wealth of the province, and the trust of the revenue, were founded on the fair and plentiful produce of trade and manufactures : and some symptoms of liberal policy may be traced in a law which exempts from all personal taxes the mariners of Peloponesus, and the workmen in parchment and purple. This denomination may be fairly applied or extended to the manufactures of linen, woollen, and more especially of silk : the two former of which had flourished in Greece since the days of Homer ; and the last was introduced perhaps as early as the reign of Justinian. These arts, which were exercised at Corinth, Thebes, and Argos, afforded food and occupation to a numerous people : the men, women, and children, were distributed according to their age and strength ; and if many of these were domestic slaves, their masters, who directed the work and enjoyed the profit, were of a free and honourable condition. The gifts which a rich

C H A P.  
LIII.

Manufactures, especially of silk,

## 14 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP.  
LIII.

and generous matron of Peloponesus presented to the emperor Basil, her adopted son, were doubtless fabricated in the Grecian looms. Danielis bestowed a carpet of fine wool, of a pattern which imitated the spots of a peacock's tail, of a magnitude to overspread the floor of a new church, erected in the triple name of Christ, of Michael the archangel, and of the prophet Elijah. She gave six hundred pieces of silk and linen, of various use and denomination: the silk was painted with the Tyrian dye, and adorned by the labours of the needle; and the linen was so exquisitely fine, that an entire piece might be rolled in the hollow of a cane". In this description of the Greek manufactures, an historian of Sicily discriminates their price, according to the weight and quality of the silk, the closeness of the texture, the beauty of the colours, and the taste and materials of the embroidery. A single, or even a double or treble thread was thought sufficient for ordinary sale; but the union of six threads composed a piece of stronger and more costly workmanship. Among the colours, he celebrates, with affectation of eloquence, the fiery blaze of the scarlet, and the softer lustre of the green. The embroidery was raised either in silk or gold: the more simple ornament of stripes or circles was surpassed by the nicer imitation of flowers: the vestments that were fabricated for the palace or the altar often glittered with precious stones; and the figures were delineated in strings of Oriental pearls". Till

the twelfth century, Greece alone, of all the countries of Christendom, was possessed of the insect who is taught by nature, and of the workmen who are instructed by art, to prepare this elegant luxury. But the secret had been stolen by the dexterity and diligence of the Arabs: the caliphs of the East and West scorned to borrow from the unbelievers their furniture and apparel; and two cities of Spain, Almeria and Lisbon, were famous for the manufacture, the use, and perhaps the exportation, of silk. It was first introduced into Sicily by the Normans; and this emigration of trade distinguishes the victory of Roger from the uniform and fruitless hostilities of every age. After the sack of Corinth, Athens, and Thebes, his lieutenant embarked with a captive train of weavers and artificers of both sexes, a trophy glorious to their master, and disgraceful to the Greek emperor<sup>21</sup>. The king of Sicily was not insensible of the value of the present; and, in the restitution of the prisoners, he excepted only the male and female manufacturers of Thebes and Corinth, who labour, says the Byzantine historian, under a barbarous lord, like the old Eretrians in the service of Darius<sup>22</sup>. A stately edifice, in the palace of Palermo, was erected for the use of this industrious colony<sup>23</sup>; and the art was propagated by their children and disciples to satisfy the encreasing demand of the western world. The decay of the looms of Sicily may be ascribed to the troubles of the island, and the competition of the Italian cities.

transported  
from Greece  
to Sicily.

## 16 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. In the year thirteen hundred and fourteen, Lucca  
 LIII. alone, among her sister republics, enjoyed the  
 lucrative monopoly". A domestic revolution  
 dispersed the manufactures to Florence, Bologna,  
 Venice, Milan, and even the countries beyond  
 the Alps; and thirteen years after this event, the  
 statutes of Modena enjoin the planting of mul-  
 berry trees, and regulate the duties on raw  
 silk". The northern climates are less propitious  
 to the education of the silk-worm; but the  
 industry of France and England" is supplied  
 and enriched by the productions of Italy and  
 China.

Revenue of  
 the Greek  
 empire.

I must repeat the complaint that the vague and  
 scanty memorials of the times will not afford any  
 just estimate of the taxes, the revenue, and the  
 resources, of the Greek empire. From every  
 province of Europe and Asia, the rivulets of  
 gold and silver discharged into the Imperial re-  
 servoir a copious and perennial stream. The  
 separation of the branches from the trunk en-  
 creased the relative magnitude of Constantinople;  
 and the maxims of despotism contracted the state  
 to the capital, the capital, to the palace, and the  
 palace to the royal person. A Jewish traveller, who  
 visited the East in the twelfth century, is lost in  
 his admiration of the Byzantine riches. "It is  
 "here," says Benjamin of Tudela, "in the  
 "queen of cities, that the tributes of the Greek  
 "empire are annually deposited, and the lofty  
 "towers are filled with precious magazines  
 "of silk, purple, and gold. It is said, that  
 "Constantinople

“ Constantinople pays each day to her sovereign  
 “ twenty thousand pieces of gold; which are  
 “ levied on the shops, taverns, and markets, on  
 “ the merchants of Persia and Egypt, of Russia  
 “ and Hungary, of Italy and Spain, who fre-  
 “ quent the capital by sea and land.” In all  
 pecuniary matters, the authority of a Jew is  
 doubtless respectable; but as the three hundred  
 and sixty-five days would produce a yearly in-  
 come exceeding seven millions sterling, I am  
 tempted to retrench at least the numerous festivals  
 of the Greek calendar. The mass of treasure that  
 was saved by Theodora and Basil the second,  
 will suggest a splendid, though indefinite, idea  
 of their supplies and resources. The mother of  
 Michael, before she retired to a cloister, attempted  
 to check or expose the prodigality of her ungrate-  
 ful son, by a free and faithful account of the  
 wealth which he inherited; one hundred and  
 nine thousand pounds of gold, and three hundred  
 thousand of silver, the fruits of her own œco-  
 nomy and that of her deceased husband”. The  
 avarice of Basil is not less renowned than his  
 valour and fortune: his victorious armies were  
 paid and rewarded without breaking into the mass  
 of two hundred thousand pounds of gold (about  
 eight millions sterling), which he had buried in  
 the subterraneous vaults of the palace”. Such  
 accumulation of treasure is rejected by the  
 theory and practice of modern policy; and we  
 are more apt to compute the national riches by  
 the use and abuse of the public credit. Yet the

## 18 THE DECLINE AND FALL

**C H A P.** maxims of antiquity are still embraced by a monarch formidable to his enemies; by a republic respectable to her allies; and both have attained their respective ends, of military power, and domestic tranquillity.

**LIII.**

Pomp and  
luxury of the  
emperors.

Whatever might be consumed\* for the present wants, or reserved for the future use, of the state, the first and most sacred demand was for the pomp and pleasure of the emperor; and his discretion only could define the measure of his private expence. The princes of Constantinople were far removed from the simplicity of nature; yet, with the revolving seasons, they were led by taste or fashion to withdraw to a purer air, from the smoke and tumult of the capital. They enjoyed, or affected to enjoy, the rustic festival of the vintage: their leisure was amused by the exercise of the chace and the calmer occupation of fishing, and, in the summer heats, they were shaded from the sun, and refreshed by the cooling breezes from the sea. The coasts and islands of Asia and Europe were covered with their magnificent villas: but, instead of the modest art which secretly strives to hide itself and to decorate the scenery of nature, the marble structure of their gardens served only to expose the riches of the lord, and the labours of the architect. The successive casualties of inheritance and forfeiture, had rendered the sovereign proprietor of many stately houses in the city and suburbs, of which twelve were appropriated to the ministers of state; but the great palace", the centre of the

The palace

Imperial residence, was fixed during eleven centuries to the same position, between the hippodrome, the cathedral of St. Sophia, and the gardens, which descended by many a terrace to the shores of the Propontis. The primitive edifice of the first Constantine was a copy or rival of ancient Rome; the gradual improvements of his successors aspired to emulate the wonders of the old world", and in the tenth century, the Byzantine palace excited the admiration, at least of the Latins, by an unquestionable pre-eminence of strength, size, and magnificence". But the toil and treasure of so many ages had produced a vast and irregular pile: each separate building was marked with the character of the times and of the founder; and the want of space might excuse the reigning monarch who demolished, perhaps with secret satisfaction, the works of his predecessors. The œconomy of the emperor Theophilus allowed a more free and ample scope for his domestic luxury and splendour. A favourite ambassador who had astonished the Abbassides themselves by his pride and liberality, presented on his return the model of a palace, which the caliph of Bagdad had recently constructed on the banks of the Tigris. The model was instantly copied and surpassed: the new buildings of Theophilus" were accompanied with gardens, and with five churches, one of which was conspicuous for size and beauty: it was crowned with three domes, the roof of gilt brass reposed on columns of Italian marble, and the walls were incrust-

CHAP.  
LIII.  
of Constantinople.

CHAP. with marbles of various colours. In the face of  
 LIII. the church, a semi-circular portico, of the figure  
 and name of the Greek *sigma* was supported by  
 fifteen columns of Phrygian marble, and the  
 subterraneous vaults were of a similar construction. The square before the sigma was decorated  
 with a fountain; and the margin of the basin  
 was lined and encompassed with plates of silver.  
 In the beginning of each season, the basin,  
 instead of water, was replenished with the most  
 exquisite fruits, which were abandoned to the  
 populace for the entertainment of the prince.  
 He enjoyed this tumultuous spectacle from a  
 throne resplendent with gold and gems, which  
 was raised by a marble stair-case to a height of  
 a lofty terrace. Below the throne were seated the  
 officers of his guards, the magistrates, the chiefs  
 of the factions of the circus; the inferior steps  
 were occupied by the people, and the place  
 below was covered with troops of dancers,  
 singers, and pantomimes. The square was sur-  
 rounded by the hall of justice, the arsenal, and  
 the various offices of business and pleasure; and  
 the *purple* chamber was named from the annual  
 distribution of robes of scarlet and purple by the  
 hand of the empress herself. The long series of  
 the apartments was adapted to the seasons, and  
 decorated with marble and porphyry, with paint-  
 ing, sculpture, and mosaics, with a profusion of  
 gold, silver, and precious stones. His fanciful  
 magnificence employed the skill and patience of  
 such artists as the times could afford: but the



taste of Athens would have despised their frivolous and costly labours; a golden tree, with its leaves and branches, which sheltered a multitude of birds, warbling their artificial notes, and two lions of massy gold, and of the natural size, who looked and roared like their brethren of the forest. The successors of Theophilus, of the Basilian and Comnenian dynasties, were not less ambitious of leaving some memorial of their residence; and the portion of the palace most splendid and august, was dignified with the title of the golden *triclinium* ". With becoming modesty, the rich and noble Greeks aspired to imitate their sovereign, and when they passed through the streets on horseback, in their robes of silk and embroidery, they were mistaken by the children for kings ". A matron of Peloponnesus ", who had cherished the infant fortunes of Basil the Macedonian, was excited by tenderness or vanity to visit the greatness of her adopted son. In a journey of five hundred miles from Patras to Constantinople, her age or indolence declined the fatigue of an horse or carriage: the soft litter or bed of Danielis was transported on the shoulders of ten robust slaves; and as they were relieved at easy distances, a band of three hundred was selected for the performance of this service. She was entertained in the Byzantine palace with filial reverence, and the honours of a queen; and whatever might be the origin of her wealth, her gifts were not unworthy of the regal dignity. I have already described the fine

CHAP.  
LIII,

Furniture  
and attend-  
ants.

## 22 THE DECLINE AND FALL

C H A P. and curious manufactures of Peloponnesus, of  
 LIIL. linen, silk, and woollen; but the most acceptable  
 of her presents consisted in three hundred beautiful  
 youths, of whom one hundred were eunuchs ";  
 " for she was not ignorant, " says the historian,  
 " that the air of the palace is more congenial to  
 " such insects, than a shepherd's dairy to the  
 " flies of the summer. " During her lifetime, she  
 bestowed the greater part of her estates in Peloponnesus, and her testament instituted Leo the  
 son of Basil her universal heir. After the payment  
 of the legacies, fourscore villas or farms were  
 added to the Imperial domain; and three thousand  
 slaves of Danielis were enfranchised by their new  
 lord, and transplanted as a colony to the Italian  
 coast. From this example of a private matron,  
 we may estimate the wealth and magnificence of  
 the emperors. Yet our enjoyments are confined  
 by a narrow circle; and, whatsoever may be  
 its value, the luxury of life is possessed with  
 more innocence and safety by the master of his  
 own, than by the steward, of the public fortune.

Honours and  
 titles of the  
 Imperial fa-  
 mily.

In an absolute government, which levels the  
 distinctions of noble and plebeian birth, the  
 sovereign is the sole fountain of honour; and  
 the rank, both in the palace and the empire,  
 depends on the titles and offices which are  
 bestowed and resumed by his arbitrary will.  
 Above a thousand years, from Vespasian to  
 Alexius Comnenus ", the *Cæsar* was the second  
 person; or at least the second degree, after  
 the supreme title of *Augustus* was more freely

communicated to the sons and brothers of the reigning monarch. To elude without violating his promise to a powerful associate, the husband of his sister; and, without giving himself an equal, to reward the piety of his brother Isaac, the crafty Alexius interposed a new and super-eminent dignity. The happy flexibility of the Greek tongue allowed him to compound the names of Augustus and emperor (Sebastos and Autocrator), and the union produced the sonorous title of *Sebastocrator*. He was exalted above the Cæsar on the first step of the throne: the public acclamations repeated his name; and he was only distinguished from the sovereign by some peculiar ornaments of the head and feet. The emperor alone could assume the purple or red buskins, and the close diadem or tiara, which imitated the fashion of the Persian kings ". It was an high pyramidal cap of cloth or silk, almost concealed by a profusion of pearls and jewels: the crown was formed by an horizontal circle and two arches of gold: at the summit, the point of their intersection was placed a globe or cross, and two strings or lappets of pear depended on either cheek. Instead of red, the buskins of the Sebastocrator and Cæsar were green; and on their *open* coronets or crowns, the precious gems were more sparingly distributed. Beside and below the Cæsar, the fancy of Alexius created the *Panhypers Sebastos* and the *Protosebastos* a whose sound and signification will satisfy, Grecian ear. They imply a superiority and a

## 24 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAPTER. priority above the simple name of Augustus ;  
 LIII. and this sacred and primitive title of the Roman prince was degraded to the kinsmen and servants of the Byzantine court. The daughter of Alexius applauds, with fond complacency, this artful gradation of hopes and honours ; but the science of words is accessible to the meanest capacity ; and this vain dictionary was easily enriched by the pride of his successors. To their favourite sons or brothers, they imparted the more lofty appellation of Lord or *Despot*, which was illustrated with new ornaments and prerogatives, and placed immediately after the person of the emperor himself. The five titles of, 1. *Despot* ; 2. *Schastocrator* ; 3. *Cæsar* ; 4. *Panhypersebastes* ; and 5. *Prosebastos* ; were usually confined to the princes of his blood : they were the emanations of his majesty ; but as they exercised no regular functions, their existence was useless, and their authority precarious.

Offices of the  
 palace, the  
 state, and the  
 army.

But in every monarchy the substantial powers of government must be divided and exercised by the ministers of the palace and treasury, the fleet and army. The titles alone can differ ; and in the revolution of ages, the counts and præfects, the prætor and quæstor, insensibly descended, while their servants rose above their heads to the first honours of the state. 1. In a monarchy, which refers every object to the person of the prince, the care and ceremonies of the palace form the most respectable department. The *Curopolata* \*\*, so illustrious in the age of Justinian, was sup-

planted by the *Protovestiare*, whose primitive functions were limited to the custody of the wardrobe. From thence his jurisdiction was extended over the numerous menials of pomp and luxury; and he presided with his silver wand at the public and private audience. 2. In the ancient system of Constantine, the name of *Logothete*, or accountant, was applied to the receivers of the finances: the principal officers were distinguished as the *Logothetes* of the domain, of the posts, the army, the private and public treasure; and the great *Logothete*, the supreme guardian of the laws and revenues, is compared with the chancellor of the Latin monarchies ". His discerning eye pervaded the civil administration; and he was assisted, in due subordination, by the eparch or prefect of the city, the first secretary, and the keepers of the privy seal, the archives, and the red or purple ink which was reserved for the sacred signature of the emperor alone ". The introducer and interpreter of foreign ambassadors were the great *Chiuufs* " and the *Dagoman* ", two names of Turkish origin, and which are still familiar to the sublime Porte. 3. From the humble style and service of guards, the *Domestics* insensibly rose to the station of generals; the military themes of the East and West, the legions of Europe and Asia, were often divided, till the great *Domestic* was finally invested with the universal and absolute command of the land forces. The *Protofrator*, in his original functions, was the assistant of the emperor when he mounted

C H A P.  
LIII.

CHAP. on horseback: he gradually became the lieutenant  
 LIII. of the great Domestic in the field; and his jurisdiction extended over the stables, the cavalry, and the royal train of hunting and hawking. The *Stratopedarch* was the great judge of the camp; the *Protospathaire* commanded the guards; the *Constable*“, the *great Æteriarch*, and the *Aco'yrh*, were the separate chiefs of the Franks, the Barbarians, and the Varangi, or English, the mercenary strangers, who, in the decay of the national spirit, formed the nerve of the Byzantine armies. 4. The naval powers were under the command of the *great Duke*; in his absence they obeyed the *great Drungaire* of the fleet; and, in his place, the *Emir*, or *admiral*, a name of Saracen extraction“, but which has been naturalized in all the modern languages of Europe. Of these officers, and of many more whom it would be useless to enumerate, the civil and military hierarchy was framed. Their honours and emoluments, their dress and titles, their mutual salutations and respective pre-eminence, were balanced with more exquisite labour, than would have fixed the constitution of a free people; and the code was almost perfect when this baseless fabric, the monument of pride and servitude, was for ever buried in the ruins of the empire“.

Adoration of  
 the emperor.

The most lofty titles, and the most humble postures, which devotion has applied to the Supreme Being, have been prostituted by flattery and fear to creatures of the same nature with

ourselves. The mode of *adoration* ", of falling prostrate on the ground, and kissing the feet of the emperor, was borrowed by Diocletian from Persian servitude ; but it was continued and aggravated till the last age of the Greek monarchy. Excepting only on Sundays, when it was waved, from a motive of religious pride, this humiliating reverence was exacted from all who entered the royal presence, from the princes invested with the diadem and purple, and from the ambassadors who represented their independent sovereigns, the caliphs of Asia, Egypt, or Spain, the kings of France and Italy, and the Latin emperors of ancient Rome. In his transactions of business, Liutprand, bishop of Cremona ", asserted the free spirit of a Frank and the dignity of his master Otho. Yet his sincerity cannot disguise the abasement of his first audience. When he approached the throne, the birds of the golden tree began to warble their notes, which were accompanied by the roarings of the two lions of gold. With his two companions, Liutprand was compelled to bow and to fall prostrate ; and thrice he touched the ground with his forehead. He arose, but in the short interval, the throne had been hoisted by an engine from the floor to the ceiling, the Imperial figure appeared in new and more gorgeous apparel, and the interview was concluded in haughty and majestic silence. In this honest and curious narrative, the bishop of Cremona represents the ceremonies of the Byzantine court,

Reception of  
ambassadors.

CHAP.

LIII.

which are still practised in the sublime Porte, and which were preserved in the last age by the dukes of Muscovy or Russia. After a long journey by the sea and land, from Venice to Constantinople, the ambassador halted at the golden gate, till he was conducted by the formal officers to the hospitable palace prepared for his reception; but this palace was a prison, and his jealous keepers prohibited all social intercourse either with strangers or natives. At his first audience, he offered the gifts of his master, slaves, and golden vases; and costly armour. The ostentatious payment of the officers and troops displayed before his eyes the riches of the empire: he was entertained at a royal banquet", in which the ambassadors of the nations were marshalled by the esteem or contempt of the Greeks: from his own table, the emperor, as the most signal favour, sent the plates which he had tasted; and his favourites were dismissed with a robe of honour". In the morning and evening of each day, his civil and military servants attended their duty in the palace; their labour was repaid by the sight, perhaps by the smile, of their lord; his commands were signified by a nod or a sign: but all earthly greatness stood silent and submissive in his presence. In his regular or extraordinary processions through the capital, he unveiled his person to the public view: the rites of policy were connected with those of religion, and his visits to the principal churches were regulated by the festivals of the Greek

Processions  
and acclama-  
tions.



calendar. On the eve of these processions, the gracious or devout intention of the monarch was proclaimed by the heralds. The streets were cleared and purified; the pavement was strewed with flowers; the most precious furniture, the gold and silver plate, and filken hangings, were displayed from the windows and balconies, and a severe discipline restrained and silenced the tumult of the populace. The march was opened by the military officers at the head of their troops; they were followed in long order by the magistrates and ministers of the civil government: the person of the emperor was guarded by his eunuchs and domestics, and at the church-door, he was solemnly received by the patriarch and his clergy. The task of applause was not abandoned to the rude and spontaneous voices of the crowd. The most convenient stations were occupied by the bands of the blue and green factions of the circus; and their furious conflicts, which had shaken the capital, were insensibly sunk to an emulation of servitude. From either side they echoed in responsive melody the praises of the emperor; their poets and musicians directed the choir, and long life " and victory were the burthen of every song. The same acclamations were performed at the audience, the banquet, and the church; and as an evidence of boundless sway, they were repeated in the Latin, Gothic, Persian, French, and even English language, by the mercenaries who sustained the real or fictitious character of those nations. By the pen of

6 H A P. Constantine Porphyrogénitus, this science of form  
 & LIII. and flattery has been reduced into a pompous and trifling volume “, which the vanity of succeeding times might enrich with an ample supplement. Yet the calmer reflection of a prince would surely suggest, that the same acclamations were applied to every character and every reign: and if he had risen from a private rank, he might remember, that his own voice had been the loudest and most eager in applause, at the very moment, when he envied the fortune, or conspired against the life, of his predecessor”.

Marriage of  
 the Cæsars  
 with foreign  
 nations.

The princes of the North, of the nations, says Constantine, without faith or fame, were ambitious of mingling their blood with the blood of the Cæsars, by their marriage with a royal virgin, or by the nuptials of their daughters with a Roman prince”. The aged monarch, in his instructions to his son, reveals the secret maxims of policy and pride; and suggests the most decent reasons for refusing these insolent and unreasonable demands. Every animal, says the discreet emperor, is prompted by nature to seek a mate among the animals of his own species; and the human species is divided into various tribes, by the distinction of language, religion, and manners. A just regard to the purity of descent preserves the harmony of public and private life; but the mixture of foreign blood is the fruitful source of disorder and discord. Such had ever been the opinion and practice of the sage Romans: their jurisprudence proscribed the marriage of a citizen and a stranger: in the

days of freedom and virtue, a senator would have scorned to match his daughter with a king: the glory of Mark Anthony was sullied by an Egyptian wife"; and the emperor Titus was compelled, by popular censure, to dismiss with reluctance the reluctant Berenice". This perpetual interdict was ratified by the fabulous sanction of the great Constantine. The ambassadors of the nations, more especially of the unbelieving nations, were solemnly admonished, that such strange alliances had been condemned by the founder of the church and city. The irrevocable law was inscribed on the altar of St. Sophia; and the impious prince who should stain the majesty of the purple was excluded from the civil and ecclesiastical communion of the Romans. If the ambassadors were instructed by any false brethren in the Byzantine history, they might produce three memorable examples of the violation of this imaginary law: the marriage of Leo, or rather of his father Constantine the fourth, with the daughter of the king of the Chozars, the nuptials of the granddaughter of Romanus with a Bulgarian prince, and the union of Bertha of France or Italy with young Romanus, the son of Constantine Porphyrogenitus himself. To these objections, three answers were prepared, which solved the difficulty and established the law. 1. The deed and the guilt of Constantine Copronymus were acknowledged. The Isaurian heretic, who sullied the baptismal font, and declared war against the holy images, had indeed embraced a Barbarian

C H A P.  
LIII.

Imaginary  
law of Con-  
stantine.

The first ex-  
ception,  
A. D. 733.

CHAP. wife, By this impious alliance, he accomplished  
 LIIL. the measure of his crimes, and was devoted to  
 the just censure of the church and of posterity.

The second, II. Romanus could not be alleged as a legitimate  
 A. D. 941. emperor; he was a plebeian usurper, ignorant of  
 the laws, and regardless of the honour, of the  
 monarchy. His son Christopher, the father of  
 the bride, was the third in rank in the college  
 of princes, at once the subject and the accomplice  
 of a rebellious parent. The Bulgarians were sincere  
 and devout Christians; and the safety of the  
 empire, with the redemption of many thousand  
 captives, depended on this preposterous alliance.  
 Yet no consideration could dispense from the law  
 of Constantine; the clergy, the senate, and the  
 people, disapproved the conduct of Romanus;  
 and he was reproached, both in his life and death,  
 as the author of the public disgrace. III. For the  
 marriage of his own son with the daughter of  
 Hugo king of Italy, a more honourable defence  
 is contrived by the wife Porphyrogenitus. Con-  
 stantine, the great and holy, esteemed the fidelity  
 and valour of the Franks; and his prophetic  
 spirit beheld the vision of their future greatness.  
 They alone were excepted from the general  
 prohibition: Hugo king of France was the lineal  
 descendant of Charlemagne; and his daughter  
 Bertha inherited the prerogatives of her family  
 and nation. The voice of truth and malice insen-  
 sibly betrayed the fraud or error of the Imperial  
 court. The patrimonial estate of Hugo was redu-  
 ced from the monarchy of France to the simple  
 county

The third,  
 A. D. 943.

county of Arles; though it was not denied, that, in the confusion of the times, he had usurped the sovereignty of Provence, and invaded the kingdom of Italy. His father was a private noble; and if Bertha derived her female descent from the Carolingian line, every step was polluted with illegitimacy or vice. The grandmother of Hugo was the famous Valdrada, the concubine, rather than the wife, of the second Lothair; whose adultery, divorce, and second nuptials, had provoked against him the thunders of the Vatican. His mother, as she was styled the great Bertha, was successively the wife of the count of Arles and of the marquis of Tuscany: France and Italy were scandalised by her gallantries; and, till the age of threescore, her lovers, of every degree, were the zealous servants of her ambition. The example of maternal incontinence was copied by the king of Italy; and the three favourite concubines of Hugo were decorated with the classic names of Venus, Juno, and Semele<sup>1</sup>. The daughter of Venus was granted to the solicitations of the Byzantine court: her name of Bertha was changed to that of Eudoxia; and she was wedded, or rather betrothed, to young Romanus, the future heir of the empire of the East. The consummation of this foreign alliance was suspended by the tender age of the two parties; and, at the end of five years, the union was dissolved by the death of the virgin spouse. The second wife of the emperor Romanus was a maiden of plebeian, but of Roman, birth; and their two daughters,

C H A P. Theophano and Anne, were given in marriage

LIII. to the princes of the earth. The eldest was

Otho of Ger- bestowed, as the pledge of peace, on the eldest  
many,  
A. D. 972. son of the great Otho, who had solicited this

alliance with arms and embassies. It might legally be questioned how far a Saxon was entitled to the privilege of the French nation: but every scruple was silenced by the fame and piety of a hero who had restored the empire of the West. After the death of her father-in-law and husband, Theophano governed Rome, Italy, and Germany, during the minority of her son, the third Otho; and the Latins have praised the virtues of an empress, who sacrificed to a superior duty the remembrance of her country". In the nuptials of her sister Anne, every prejudice was lost; and every consideration of dignity was superseded, by the stronger argument of necessity and fear.

Wolodimir  
of Russia,  
A. D. 988.

A Pagan of the north, Wolodimir, great prince of Russia, aspired to a daughter of the Roman purple; and his claim was enforced by the threats of war, the promise of conversion, and the offer of a powerful succour against a domestic rebel. A victim of her religion and country, the Grecian princess was torn from the palace of her fathers, and condemned to a savage reign and an hopeless exile on the banks of the Borysthenes, or in the neighbourhood of the Polar circle". Yet the marriage of Anne was fortunate and fruitful: the daughter of her grandson Jeroslaus was recommended by her Imperial descent; and the king of France, Henry I. sought a wife on the last borders of Europe and Christendom".

In the Byzantine palace, the emperor was the first slave of the ceremonies which he imposed, of the rigid forms which regulated each word and gesture, besieged him in the palace, and violated the leisure of his rural solitude. But the lives and fortunes of millions hung on his arbitrary will: and the firmest minds, superior to the allurements of pomp and luxury, may be seduced by the more active pleasure of commanding their equals. The legislative and executive power were centered in the person of the monarch, and the last remains of the authority of the senate, were finally eradicated by Leo the philosopher<sup>2</sup>. A lethargy of servitude had benumbed the minds of the Greeks; in the wildest tumults of rebellion they never aspired to the idea of a free constitution; and the private character of the prince was the only source and measure of their public happiness. Superstition rivetted their chains; in the church of St. Sophia, he was solemnly crowned by the patriarch; at the foot of the altar, they pledged their passive and unconditional obedience to his government and family. On his side, he engaged to abstain as much as possible from the capital punishments of death and mutilation; his orthodox creed was subscribed with his own hand, and he promised to obey the decrees of the seven synods, and the canons of the holy church<sup>3</sup>. But the assurance of mercy was loose and indefinite: he swore, not to his people, but to an invisible judge, and except in the inexpiable guilt of heresy,

C H A P.

LIII.

Despotie  
power.Coronation  
oath.

CHAP. the ministers of heaven were always prepared to  
 LIII. preach the indefeasible right, and to absolve the  
 venial transgressions, of their sovereign. The  
 Greek ecclesiastics were themselves the subjects  
 of the civil magistrate: at the nod of a tyrant,  
 the bishops were created, or transferred, or depos-  
 ed, or punished, with an ignominious death:  
 whatever might be their wealth or influence, they  
 could never succeed like the Latin clergy in the  
 establishment of an independent republic; and  
 the patriarch of Constantinople condemned, what  
 he secretly envied, the temporal greatness of his  
 Roman brother. Yet the exercise of boundless  
 despotism is happily checked by the laws of nature  
 and necessity. In proportion to his wisdom and  
 virtue, the master of an empire is confined to the  
 path of his sacred and laborious duty. In propor-  
 tion to his vice and folly, he drops the sceptre  
 too weighty for his hands; and the motions of  
 the royal image are ruled by the imperceptible  
 thread of some minister or favourite, who under-  
 takes for his private interest to exercise the task  
 of the public oppression. \* In some fatal moment,  
 the most absolute monarch may dread the reason  
 or the caprice of a nation of slaves; and expe-  
 rience has proved, that whatever is gained in the  
 extent, is lost in the safety and solidity, of regal  
 power.

Military  
 force of the  
 Greeks, the  
 Saracens, and  
 the Franks.

Whatever titles a despot may assume, whatever  
 claims he may assert, it is on the sword that he  
 must ultimately depend to guard him against his  
 foreign and domestic enemies. From the age of



Charlemagne to that of the Crusades, the world (for I overlook the remote monarchy of China) was occupied and disputed by the three great empires or nations of the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Franks. Their military strength may be ascertained by a comparison of their courage, their arts and riches, and their obedience to a supreme head, who might call into action all the energies of the state. The Greeks, far inferior to their rivals in the first, were superior to the Franks, and at least equal to the Saracens, in the second and third of these warlike qualifications.

C H A P.  
LIII.

The wealth of the Greeks enabled them to purchase the service of the poorer nations, and to maintain a naval power for the protection of their coasts and the annoyance of their enemies". A commerce of mutual benefit exchanged the gold of Constantinople for the blood of the Slavonians and Turks, the Bulgarians and Russians; their valour contributed to the victories of Nicephorus and Zimisces; and if an hostile people pressed too closely on the frontier, they were recalled to the defence of their country, and the desire of peace, by the well-managed attack of a more distant tribe". The command of the Mediterranean, from the mouth of the Tanais to the columns of Hercules, was always claimed, and often possessed, by the successors of Constantine. Their capital was filled with naval stores and dextrous artificers: the situation of Greece and Asia, the long coasts, deep gulfs, and numerous islands, accustomed their subjects to the exercise of navigation; and

Navy of the  
Greeks.

CHAP. the trade of Venice and Amalfi supplied a nursery  
 LIII, of seamen to the Imperial fleet<sup>71</sup>. Since the time  
 of the Peloponnesian and Punic wars, the sphere  
 of action had not been enlarged; and the science  
 of naval architecture appears to have declined.  
 The art of constructing those stupendous machines  
 which displayed three, or six, or ten, ranges of  
 oars, rising above, or falling behind, each other,  
 was unknown to the ship-builders of Constantinople,  
 as well as to the mechanicians of modern days<sup>72</sup>. The  
*Dromones*<sup>73</sup>, or light gallees of the Byzantine empire,  
 were content with two tire of oars; each tire was  
 composed of five and twenty benches; and two rowers  
 were seated on each bench, who plyed their oars on  
 either side of the vessel. To these we must add the  
 captain or centurion, who, in time of action, stood  
 erect with his armour-bearer on the poop, two  
 steersmen at the helm, and two officers at the prow,  
 the one to manage the anchor, the other to point  
 and play against the enemy the tube of liquid  
 fire. The whole crew, as in the infancy of the  
 art, performed the double service of mariners  
 and soldiers; they were provided with defensive  
 and offensive arms, with bows and arrows,  
 which they used from the upper deck, with  
 long pikes, which they pushed through the  
 port holes of the lower tire. Sometimes indeed  
 the ships of war were of a larger and more solid  
 construction; and the labours of combat and  
 navigation were more regularly divided between  
 seventy soldiers and two hundred and thirty

mariners. But for the most part they were of the light and manageable size; and as the cape of Malea in Peloponesus was still clothed with its ancient terrors, an Imperial fleet was transported five miles over land across the Isthmus of Corinth<sup>74</sup>. The principles of maritime tactics had not undergone any change since the time of Thucydides: a squadron of gallies still advanced in a crescent, charged to the front, and strove to impel their sharp beaks against the feeble sides of their antagonists. A machine for casting stones and darts was built of strong timbers in the midst of the deck; and the operation of boarding was effected by a crane that hoisted baskets of armed men. The language of signals, so clear and copious in the naval grammar of the moderns, was imperfectly expressed by the various positions and colours of a commanding flag. In the darkness of the night the same orders to chace, to attack, to halt, to retreat, to break, to form, were conveyed by the lights of the leading galley. By land, the fire signals were repeated from one mountain to another; a chain of eight stations commanded a space of five hundred miles; and Constantinople in a few hours was apprized of the hostile motions of the Saracens of Tarsus<sup>75</sup>. Some estimate may be formed of the power of the Greek emperors, by the curious and minute detail of the armament which was prepared for the reduction of Crete. A fleet of one hundred and twelve gallies, and seventy-five vessels of the Pamphylian style, was equipped in the capital, the islands of the Ægean

CHAP. I. III. sea, and the sea-ports of Asia, Macedonia, and Greece. It carried thirty-four thousand mariners, seven thousand three hundred and forty soldiers, seven hundred Russians, and five thousand and eighty-seven Mardaites, whose fathers had been transplanted from the mountains of Libanus. Their pay, most probably of a month, was computed at thirty-four centenaries of gold, about one hundred and thirty-six thousand pounds sterling. Our fancy is bewildered by the endless recapitulation of arms and engines, of clothes and linen, of bread for the men and forage for the horses, and of stores and utensils of every description, inadequate to the conquest of a petty island, but amply sufficient for the establishment of a flourishing colony."

Tactics and  
character of  
the Greeks.

The invention of the Greek fire did not, like that of gunpowder, produce a total revolution in the art of war. To these liquid combustibles, the city and empire of Constantine owed their deliverance; and they were employed in sieges and sea-fights with terrible effect. But they were either less improved, or less susceptible of improvement: the engines of antiquity, the catapultæ, balistæ, and battering-rams, were still of most frequent and powerful use in the attack and defence of fortifications; nor was the decision of battles reduced to the quick and heavy *fire* of a line of infantry, whom it were fruitless to protect with armour against a similar fire of their enemies. Steel and iron were still the common instruments of destruction and safety; and the helmets, cuirasses, and shields, of the

tenth century did not, either in form or substance, essentially differ from those which had covered the companions of Alexander or Achilles". But instead of accustoming the modern Greeks, like the legionaries of old, to the constant and easy use of this salutary weight; their armour was laid aside in light chariots, which followed the march, till, on the approach of an enemy, they resumed with haste and reluctance the unusual incumbrance. Their offensive weapons consisted of swords, battle-axes, and spears; but the Macedonian pike was shortened a fourth of its length, and reduced to the more convenient measure of twelve cubits or feet. The sharpness of the Scythian and Arabian arrows had been severely felt; and the emperors lament the decay of archery as a cause of the public misfortunes, and recommend, as an advice, and a command, that the military youth, till the age of forty, should assiduously practise the exercise of the bow". The *bands*, or regiments, were usually three hundred strong; and, as a medium between the extremes of four and sixteen, the foot soldiers of Leo and Constantine were formed eight, deep; but the cavalry charged in four ranks from the reasonable consideration, that the weight of the front could not be increased by any pressure of the hindmost horses. If the ranks of the infantry or cavalry were sometimes doubled, this cautious array betrayed a secret distrust of the courage of the troops, whose numbers might swell the appearance of the line, but of whom only a chosen band would dare to encounter the

C H A P. spears and swords of the Barbarians. The order  
 LIII. of battle must have varied according to the ground, the object, and the adversary; but their ordinary disposition, in two lines and a reserve, presented a succession of hopes and resources most agreeable to the temper as well as the judgment of the Greeks". In case of a repulse, the first line fell back into the intervals of the second; and the reserve, breaking into two divisions, wheeled round the flanks to improve the victory or cover the retreat. Whatever authority could enact was accomplished, at least in theory, by the camps and marches, the exercises and evolutions, the edicts and books, of the Byzantine monarch". Whatever art could produce from the forge, the loom, or the laboratory, was abundantly supplied by the riches of the prince, and the industry of his numerous workmen. But neither authority nor art could frame the most important machine, the soldier himself; and if the *ceremonies* of Constantine always suppose the safe and triumphal return of the emperor", his *tactics* seldom soar above the means of escaping a defeat, and procrastinating the war". Notwithstanding some transient success, the Greeks were sunk in their own esteem and that of their neighbours. A cold hand and a loquacious tongue was the vulgar description of the nation: the author of the tactics was besieged in his capital; and the last of the Barbarians, who trembled at the name of the Saracens, or Franks, could proudly exhibit the medals of gold and silver which they had extorted

from the feeble sovereign of Constantinople. What spirit their government and character denied, might have been inspired in some degree by the influence of religion; but the religion of the Greeks could only teach them to suffer and to yield. The emperor Nicephorus, who restored for a moment the discipline and glory of the Roman name, was desirous of bestowing the honours of martyrdom on the Christians who lost their lives in an holy war against the infidels. But this political law was defeated by the opposition of the patriarch, the bishops, and the principal senators; and they strenuously urged the canons of St. Basil, that all who were polluted by the bloody trade of a soldier, should be separated, during three years, from the communion of the faithful".

These scruples of the Greeks have been compared with the tears of the primitive Moslems when they were held back from battle; and this contrast of base superstition, and high-spirited enthusiasm, unfolds to a philosophic eye the history of the rival nations. • The subjects of the last caliphs " had undoubtedly degenerated from the zeal and faith of the companions of the prophet. Yet their martial creed still represented the deity as the author of war": the vital though latent spark of fanaticism still glowed in the heart of their religion, and among the Saracens who dwelt on the Christian borders, it was frequently rekindled to a lively and active flame. Their regular force was formed of the valiant slaves who had been educated to guard the person and accompany the

C H A P.  
LIII.

Character  
and tactics of  
the Saracens.

## 44 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. LIII. standard of their lord; but the Musulman people of Syria and Cilicia, of Africa and Spain, was awakened by the trumpet which proclaimed an holy war against the infidels. The rich were ambitious of death or victory in the cause of God; the poor were allured by the hopes of plunder, and the old, the infirm, and the women, assumed their share of meritorious service by sending their substitutes, with arms and horses, into the field. These offensive and defensive arms were similar in strength and temper to those of the Romans, whom they far excelled in the management of the horse and the bow; the massy silver of their belts, their bridles, and their swords, displayed the magnificence of a prosperous nation, and except some black archers of the south, the Arabs disdained the naked bravery of their ancestors. Instead of waggons, they were attended by a long train of camels, mules, and asses; the multitude of these animals, whom they bedecked with flags and streamers, appeared to swell the pomp and magnitude of their host; and the horses of the enemy were often disordered by the uncouth figure and odious smell of the camels of the East. Invincible by their patience of thirst and heat, their spirits were frozen by a winter's cold, and the consciousness of their propensity to sleep exacted the most rigorous precautions against the surprises of the night. Their order of battle was a long square of two deep and solid lines; the first of archers, the second of cavalry. In their engagements by sea and land, they sustained with



patient firmness the fury of the attack, and seldom advanced to the charge till they could discern and oppress the lassitude of their foes. But if they were repulsed and broken, they knew not how to rally or renew the combat; and their dismay was heightened by the superstitious prejudice, that God had declared himself on the side of their enemies. The decline and fall of the caliphs countenanced this fearful opinion; nor were there wanting, among the Mahometans and Christians, some obscure prophecies " which prognosticated their alternate defeats. The unity of the Arabian empire was dissolved, but the independent fragments were equal to populous and powerful kingdoms; and in their naval and military armaments, an emir of Aleppo or Tunis might command no despicable fund of skill and industry and treasure. In their transactions of peace and war with the Saracens, the princes of Constantinople too often felt that these Barbarians had nothing barbarous in their discipline; and that if they were destitute of original genius, they had been endowed with a quick spirit of curiosity and imitation. The model was indeed more perfect than the copy: their ships, and engines, and fortifications, were of a less skilful construction; and they confess, without shame, that the same God who has given a tongue to the Arabians, had more nicely fashioned the hands of the Chinese, and the heads of the Greeks."

A name of some German tribes between the Rhine and the Weser had spread its victorious

The Franks  
or Latins.

CHAP. influence over the greatest part of Gaul, Ger-  
 LIII. many, and Italy; and the common appellation of  
 FRANKS " was applied by the Greeks and Ara-  
 bians to the Christians of the Latin church, the  
 nations of the West, who stretched beyond  
*their* knowledge to the shores of the Atlantic  
 Ocean. The vast body had been inspired and  
 united by the soul of Charlemagne; but the  
 division and degeneracy of his race soon annihil-  
 ated the Imperial power, which would have  
 rivalled the Cæsars of Byzantium, and revenged  
 the indignities of the Christian name. The ene-  
 mies no longer feared, nor could the subjects  
 any longer trust, the application of a public  
 revenue, the labours of trade and manufactures  
 in the military service, the mutual aid of pro-  
 vinces and armies, and the naval squadrons which  
 were regularly stationed from the mouth of the  
 Elbe to that of the Tyber. In the beginning of  
 the tenth century, the family of Charlemagne  
 had almost disappeared; his monarchy was  
 broken into many hostile and independent states;  
 the regal title was assumed by the most ambitious  
 chiefs; their revolt was imitated in a long sub-  
 ordination of anarchy and discord, and the nobles  
 of every province disobeyed their sovereign,  
 oppressed their vassals, and exercised perpetual  
 hostilities against their equals and neighbours.  
 Their private wars, which overturned the fabric  
 of government, fomented the martial spirit of  
 the nation. In the system of modern Europe,  
 the power of the sword is possessed, at least in

in fact, by five or six mighty potentates; their operations are conducted on a distant frontier, by an order of men who devote their lives to the study and practice of the military art: the rest of the country and community enjoys in the midst of war the tranquillity of peace, and is only made sensible of the change by the aggravation or decrease of the public taxes. In the disorders of the tenth and eleventh centuries, every peasant was a soldier, and every village a fortification; each wood or valley was a scene of murder and rapine; and the lords of each castle were compelled to assume the character of princes and warriors. To their own courage and policy, they boldly trusted for the safety of their family, the protection of their lands, and the revenge of their injuries; and, like the conquerors of a larger size, they were too apt to transgress the privilege of defensive war. The powers of the mind and body were hardened by the presence of danger and necessity of resolution: the same spirit refused to desert a friend and to forgive an enemy; and, instead of sleeping under the guardian care of the magistrate, they proudly disdained the authority of the laws. In the days of feudal anarchy, the instruments of agriculture and art were converted into the weapons of bloodshed: the peaceful occupations of civil and ecclesiastical society were abolished or corrupted; and the bishop who exchanged his mitre for an helmet, was more forcibly urged by the manners of the times than by the obligation of his tenure."

C H A P.

LIII.

Their character and tactics.

The love of freedom and of arms was felt, with conscious pride, by the Franks themselves, and is observed by the Greeks with some degree of amazement and terror. "The Franks," says the emperor Constantine, "are bold and valiant "to the verge of temerity; and their dauntless "spirit is supported by the contempt of danger "and death. In the field and in close onset, "they press to the front, and rush headlong "against the enemy, without deigning to compute either his numbers or their own. Their "ranks are formed by the firm connections of "consanguinity and friendship; and their martial "deeds are prompted by the desire of saving or "revenging their dearest companions. In their "eyes, a retreat is a shameful flight; and flight "is indelible infamy." A nation endowed with such high and intrepid spirit, must have been secure of victory, if these advantages had not been counterbalanced by many weighty defects. The decay of their naval power, left the Greeks and Saracens in possession of the sea, for every purpose of annoyance and supply. In the age which preceded the institution of knighthood, the Franks were rude and unskilful in the service of cavalry"; and, in all perilous emergencies, their warriors were so conscious of their ignorance, that they chose to dismount from their horses and fight on foot. Unpractised in the use of pikes, or of missile weapons, they were encumbered by the length of their swords, the weight of their armour, the magnitude of their shields,

shields, and, if I may repeat the satire of the meagre Greeks, by their unwieldy intemperance. Their independent spirit disdained the yoke of subordination, and abandoned the standard of their chief, if he attempted to keep the field beyond the term of their stipulation or service. On all sides they were open to the snares of an enemy, less brave, but more artful, than themselves. They might be bribed, for the Barbarians were venal; or surprised in the night, for they neglected the precautions of a close encampment or vigilant centinels. The fatigues of a summer's campaign exhausted their strength and patience, and they sunk in despair if their voracious appetite was disappointed of a plentiful supply of wine and of food. This general character of the Franks was marked with some national and local shades, which I should ascribe to accident, rather than to climate, but which were visible both to natives and to foreigners. An ambassador of the great Otho declared, in the palace of Constantinople, that the Saxons could dispute with swords better than with pens; and that they preferred inevitable death to the dishonour of turning their backs to an enemy". It was the glory of the nobles of France, that, in their humble dwellings, war and rapine were the only pleasure, the sole occupation, of their lives. They affected to deride the palaces, the banquets, the polished manners, of the Italians, who, in the estimate of the Greeks themselves, had degenerated from the liberty and valour of the ancient Lombards".

C H A P.

LIII.

Oblivion of  
the Latin  
language.

By the well-known edict of Caracalla, his subjects, from Britain to Egypt, were entitled to the name and privileges of Romans, and their national sovereign might fix his occasional or permanent residence in any province of their common country. In the division of the East and West, an ideal unity was scrupulously preserved, and in their titles, laws, and statutes, the successors of Arcadius and Honorius announced themselves as the inseparable colleagues of the same office, as the joint sovereigns of the Roman world and city, which were bounded by the same limits. After the fall of the Western monarchy, the majesty of the purple resided solely in the princes of Constantinople; and of these, Justinian was the first, who after a divorce of sixty years regained the dominion of ancient Rome, and asserted, by the right of conquest, the august title of emperor of the Romans". A motive of vanity or discontent solicited one of his successors, Constans the second, to abandon the Thracian Bosphorus, and to restore the pristine honours of the Tyber: an extravagant project (exclaims the malicious Byzantine), as if he had despoiled a beautiful and blooming virgin, to enrich, or rather to expose, the deformity of a wrinkled and decrepit matron". But the sword of the Lombards opposed his settlement in Italy: he entered Rome, not as a conqueror, but as a fugitive, and after a visit of twelve days, he pillaged, and for ever deserted, the ancient capital of the world". The final revolt

and separation of Italy was accomplished about two centuries after the conquests of Justinian, and from his reign we may date the gradual oblivion of the Latin tongue. That legislator had composed his Institutes, his Code, and his Pandects, in a language which he celebrates as the proper and public style of the Roman government, the consecrated idiom of the palace and senate of Constantinople, of the camps and tribunals of the East". But this foreign dialect was unknown to the people and soldiers of the Asiatic provinces; it was imperfectly understood by the greater part of the interpreters of the laws and the ministers of the state. After a short conflict, nature and habit prevailed over the obsolete institutions of human power: for the general benefit of his subjects, Justinian promulgated his novels in the two languages; the several parts of his voluminous jurisprudence were successively translated": the original was forgotten, the version was studied, and the Greek, whose intrinsic merit deserved indeed the preference, obtained a legal as well as popular establishment in the Byzantine monarchy. The birth and residence of succeeding princes estranged them from the Roman idiom: Tiberius by the Arabs", and Maurice by the Italians"', are distinguished as the first of the Greek Cæsars, as the founders of a new dynasty and empire: the silent revolution was accomplished before the death of Heraclius; and the ruins of the Latin speech were darkly preserved

CHAP. in the terms of jurisprudence and the acclamations of the palace. After the restoration of the Western empire by Charlemagne and the Othos, the names of Franks and Latins acquired an equal signification and extent; and these haughty Barbarians asserted, with some justice, their superior claim to the language and dominion of Rome. They insulted the aliens of the East who had renounced the dress and idiom of Romans; and their reasonable practice will justify the frequent appellation of Greeks<sup>11</sup>. But this contemptuous appellation was indignantly rejected by the prince and people to whom it is applied. Whatsoever changes had been introduced by the lapse of ages, they alleged a lineal and unbroken succession from Augustus and Constantine; and, in the lowest period of degeneracy and decay, the name of ROMANS adhered to the last fragments of the empire of Constantinople<sup>12</sup>.

The Greek emperors and their subjects retain and assert the name of Romans.

Period of ignorance.

While the government of the East was transacted in Latin, the Greek was the language of literature and philosophy; nor could the masters of this rich and perfect idiom be tempted to envy the borrowed learning and imitative taste of their Roman disciples. After the fall of Paganism, the loss of Syria and Egypt, and the extinction of the schools of Alexandria and Athens, the studies of the Greeks insensibly retired to some regular monasteries, and above all to the royal college of Constantinople, which was burnt in the reign of Leo the Isaurian<sup>13</sup>. In the pompous style of the age, the president



of that foundation was named the Sun of Science: his twelve associates, the professors in the different arts and faculties, were the twelve signs of the zodiac; a library of thirty-six thousand five hundred volumes was open to their enquiries; and they could shew an ancient manuscript of Homer, on a roll of parchment one hundred and twenty feet in length, the intestines, as it was fabled, of a prodigious serpent<sup>103</sup>. But the seventh and eighth centuries were a period of discord and darkness; the library was burnt, the college was abolished, the Iconoclasts are represented as the foes of antiquity; and a savage ignorance and contempt of letters has disgraced the princes of the Heracleian and Isaurian dynasties<sup>104</sup>.

In the ninth century, we trace the first dawnings of the restoration of science<sup>105</sup>. After the fanaticism of the Arabs had subsided, the caliphs aspired to conquer the arts, rather than the provinces, of the empire: their liberal curiosity rekindled the emulation of the Greeks, brushed away the dust from their ancient libraries, and taught them to know and reward the philosophers, whose labours had been hitherto repaid by the pleasure of study and the pursuit of truth. The Cæsar Bardas, the uncle of Michael the third, was the generous protector of letters, a title which alone has preserved his memory and excused his ambition. A particle of the treasures of his nephew was sometimes diverted from the indulgence of vice and folly; a school was

Revival of  
Greek learn-  
ing.

## 54 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP.  
LIII.

opened in the palace of Magnaura; and the presence of Bardas excited the emulation of the masters and students. At their head was the philosopher Leo, archbishop of Thessalonica: his profound skill in astronomy and the mathematics was admired by the strangers of the East; and this occult science was magnified by vulgar credulity, which modestly supposes that all knowledge superior to its own must be the effect of inspiration or magic. At the pressing entreaty of the Cæsar, his friend, the celebrated Photius<sup>107</sup>, renounced the freedom of a secular and studious life, ascended the patriarchal throne, and was alternately excommunicated and absolved by the synods of the East and West. By the confession even of priestly hatred, no art or science, except poetry, was foreign to this universal scholar, who was deep in thought, indefatigable in reading, and eloquent in diction. Whilst he exercised the office of protospathaire, or captain of the guards, Photius was sent ambassador to the caliph of Bagdad<sup>108</sup>. The tedious hours of exile, perhaps of confinement, were beguiled by the hasty composition of his *Library*, a living monument of erudition and criticism. Two hundred and fourscore writers, historians, orators, philosophers, theologians, are reviewed without any regular method: he abridges their narrative or doctrine, appreciates their style and character, and judges even the fathers of the church with a discreet freedom, which often breaks through the superstition of the times. The

emperor Basil, who lamented the defects of his own education, entrusted to the care of Photius his son and successor Leo the philosopher; and the reign of that prince and of his son Constantine Porphyrogenitus forms one of the most prosperous æras of the Byzantine literature. By their munificence the treasures of antiquity were deposited in the Imperial library; by their pens, or those of their associates, they were imparted in such extracts and abridgments as might amuse the curiosity, without oppressing the indolence, of the public. Besides the *Basilics*, or code of laws, the arts of husbandry and war, of feeding or destroying the human species, were propagated with equal diligence; and the history of Greece and Rome was digested into fifty-three heads or titles, of which two only ( of embassies, and of virtues and vices ) have escaped the injuries of time. In every station, the reader might contemplate the image of the past world, apply the lesson or warning of each page, and learn to admire, perhaps to imitate, the examples of a brighter period. I shall not expatiate on the works of the Byzantine Greeks, who, by the assiduous study of the ancients, have deserved in some measure the remembrance and gratitude of the moderns. The scholars of the present age may still enjoy the benefit of the philosophical common-place book of Stobæus, the grammatical and historic lexicon of Suidas, the Chiliads of Tzetzes, which comprise six hundred narratives in twelve thousand verses, and the

CHAP. commentaries on Homer of Eustathius archbishop  
 LIII. of Thessalonica, who, from his horn of plenty, has poured the names and authorities of four hundred writers. From these originals, and from the numerous tribe of scholiasts and critics"', some estimate may be formed of the literary wealth of the twelfth century: Constantinople was enlightened by the genius of Homer and Demosthenes, of Aristotle and Plato; and in the enjoyment or neglect of our present riches, we must envy the generation that could still peruse the history of Theopompus, the orations of Hyperites, the comedies of Menander"', and the odes of Alcæus and Sappho. The frequent labour of illustration attests not only the existence but the popularity of the Grecian classics: the general knowledge of the age may be deduced from the example of two learned females, the empress Eudocia, and the princess Anna Comnena, who cultivated, in the purple, the arts of rhetoric and philosophy"". The vulgar dialect of the city was gross and barbarous: a more correct and elaborate style distinguished the discourse, or at least the compositions, of the church and palace, which sometimes affected to copy the purity of the Attic models.

Decay of  
 taste and ge-  
 nius.

In our modern education, the painful though necessary attainment of two languages, which are no longer living, may consume the time and damp the ardour of the youthful student. The poets and orators were long imprisoned in the barbarous dialects of our Western ancestors, devoid of

harmony or grace; and their genius, without precept or example, was abandoned to the rude and native powers of their judgment and fancy. But the Greeks of Constantinople, after purging away the impurities of their vulgar speech, acquired the free use of their ancient language, the most happy composition of human art, and a familiar knowledge of the sublime masters who had pleased or instructed the first of nations. But these advantages only tend to aggravate the reproach and shame of a degenerate people. They held in their lifeless hands the riches of their fathers, without inheriting the spirit which had created and improved that sacred patrimony: they read, they praised, they compiled, but their languid souls seemed alike incapable of thought and action. In the revolution of ten centuries, not a single discovery was made to exalt the dignity or promote the happiness of mankind. Not a single idea has been added to the speculative systems of antiquity, and a succession of patient disciples became in their turn the dogmatic teachers of the next servile generation. Not a single composition of history, philosophy, or literature, has been saved from oblivion by the intrinsic beauties of style or sentiment, of original fancy, or even of successful imitation. In prose, the least offensive of the Byzantine writers are absolved from censure by their naked and unpresuming simplicity; but the orators, most eloquent in their own conceit, are the farthest removed from the models whom

CHAP. LIII. they affect to emulate. In every page our taste and reason are wounded by the choice of gigantic and obsolete words, a stiff and intricate phraseology, the discord of images, the childish play of false or unseasonable ornament, and the painful attempt to elevate themselves, to astonish the reader, and to involve a trivial meaning in the smoke of obscurity and exaggeration. Their prose is soaring to the vicious affectation of poetry: their poetry is sinking below the flatness and insipidity of prose. The tragic, epic, and lyric muses, were silent and inglorious: the bards of Constantinople seldom rose above a riddle or epigram, a panegyric or tale; they forgot even the rules of prosody; and with the melody of Homer yet sounding in their ears, they confound all measure of feet and syllables in the impotent strains which have received the name of *political* or *city verses*<sup>1</sup>. The minds of the Greeks were bound in the fetters of a base and imperious superstition, which extends her dominion round the circle of profane science. Their understandings were bewildered in metaphysical controversy: in the belief of visions and miracles, they had lost all principles of moral evidence, and their taste was vitiated by the homilies of the monks, an absurd medley of declamation and scripture. Even these contemptible studies were no longer dignified by the abuse of superior talents: the leaders of the Greek church were humbly content to admire and copy the oracles of antiquity, nor did the

schools or pulpit produce any rivals of the fame of Athanasius and Chrysostom.<sup>114</sup>

C H A P.

III.

In all the pursuits of active and speculative life, the emulation of states and individuals is the most powerful spring of the efforts and improvements of mankind. The cities of ancient Greece were cast in the happy mixture of union and independence, which is repeated on a larger scale, but in a looser form, by the nations of modern Europe: the union of language, religion, and manners, which renders them the spectators and judges of each others merit<sup>115</sup>: the independence of government and interest, which asserts their separate freedom, and excites them to strive for pre-eminence in the career of glory. The situation of the Romans was less favourable; yet in the early ages of the republic, which fixed the national character, a similar emulation was kindled among the states of Latium and Italy; and, in the arts and sciences, they aspired to equal or surpass their Grecian masters. The empire of the Cæsars undoubtedly checked the activity and progress of the human mind; its magnitude might indeed allow some scope for domestic competition; but when it was gradually reduced, at first to the East and at last to Greece and Constantinople, the Byzantine subjects were degraded to an abject and languid temper, the natural effect of their solitary and insulated state. From the North they were oppressed by nameless tribes of Barbarians, to whom they scarcely imparted the appellation of men. The language

Want of national emulation.

## 60 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. and religion of the more polished Arabs were  
LIII. an insurmountable bar to all social intercourse. The conquerors of Europe were their brethren in the Christian faith; but the speech of the Franks or Latins was unknown, their manners were rude, and they were rarely connected, in peace or war, with the successors of Heraclius. Alone in the universe, the self-satisfied pride of the Greeks was not disturbed by the comparison of foreign merit; and it is no wonder if they fainted in the race, since they had neither competitors to urge their speed, nor judges to crown their victory. The nations of Europe and Asia were mingled by the expeditions to the Holy Land; and it is under the Comnenian dynasty that a faint emulation of knowledge and military virtue was rekindled in the Byzantine empire.



## CHAP. LIV.

*Origin and Doctrine of the Paulicians. — Their Persecution by the Greek Emperors. — Revolt in Armenia, &c. — Transplantation into Thrace. — Propagation in the West. — The Seeds, Character, and Consequences of the reformation.*

IN the profession of Christianity, the variety of national characters may be clearly distinguished. The natives of Syria and Egypt abandoned their lives to lazy and contemplative devotion: Rome again aspired to the dominion of the world; and the wit of the lively and loquacious Greeks was consumed in the disputes of metaphysical theology. The incomprehensible mysteries of the Trinity and Incarnation, instead of commanding their silent submission, were agitated in vehement and subtle controversies, which enlarged their faith at the expence perhaps of their charity and reason. From the council of Nice to the end of the seventh century, the peace and unity of the church was invaded by these spiritual wars; and so deeply did they effect the decline and fall of the empire, that the historian has too often been compelled to attend the synods, to explore the creeds, and to enumerate the sects, of this busy period of ecclesiastical annals. From the beginning of the eighth century

CHAP.  
LIV.

Supine superstition of the Greek church.

## 62 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. to the last ages of the Byzantine empire the found  
 LIV. of controversy was seldom heard: curiosity was exhausted, zeal was fatigued; and, in the decrees of six councils, the articles of the Catholic faith had been irrevocably defined. The spirit of dispute, however vain and pernicious, requires some energy and exercise of the mental faculties; and the prostrate Greeks were content to fast; to pray, and to believe, in blind obedience to the patriarch and his clergy. During a long dream of superstition, the Virgin and the Saints, their visions and miracles, their relics and images, were preached by the monks and worshipped by the people; and the appellation of people might be extended without injustice to the first ranks of civil society. At an unseasonable moment, the Isaurian emperors attempted somewhat rudely to awaken their subjects: under their influence, reason might obtain some proselytes, a far greater number was swayed by interest or fear; but the Eastern world embraced or deplored their visible deities, and the restoration of images was celebrated as the feast of orthodoxy. In this passive and unanimous state the ecclesiastical rulers were relieved from the toil, or deprived of the pleasure, of persecution. The Pagans had disappeared; the Jews were silent and obscure; the disputes with the Latins were rare and remote hostilities against a national enemy; and the sects of Egypt and Syria enjoyed a free toleration, under the shadow of the Arabian caliphs. About the middle of the seventh

century, a branch of Manichæans was selected as the victims of spiritual tyranny: their patience was at length exasperated to despair and rebellion; and their exile has scattered over the West the seeds of reformation. These important events will justify some enquiry into the doctrine and story of the **PAULICIANS**<sup>1</sup>; and, as they cannot plead for themselves, our candid criticism will magnify the *good*, and abate or suspect the *evil*, that is reported by their adversaries.

The Gnostics, who had distracted the infancy, were oppressed by the greatness and authority, of the church. Instead of emulating or surpassing the wealth, learning, and numbers, of the Catholics, their obscure remnant was driven from the capitals of the East and West, and confined to the villages and mountains along the borders of the Euphrates. Some vestige of the Marcionites may be detected in the fifth century<sup>2</sup>; but the numerous sects were finally lost in the odious name of the Manichæans; and these heretics, who presumed to reconcile the doctrines of Zoroaster and Christ, were pursued by the two religions with equal and unrelenting hatred. Under the grandson of Heraclius, in the neighbourhood of Samosata, more famous for the birth of Lucian than for the title of a Syrian kingdom, a reformer arose, esteemed by the *Paulicians* as the chosen messenger of truth. In his humble dwelling of Mananâlis, Constantine entertained a deacon, who returned from Syrian captivity, and received the

CHAP.

LIV.

Origin of the  
Paulicians,  
or disciples of  
St. Paul,  
A. D. 660,  
&c.

CHAP. inestimable gift of the New Testament, which was  
 - LIV. already concealed from the vulgar by the prudence  
 of the Greek, and perhaps of the Gnostic, clergy \*. These books became the measure of his studies and the rule of his faith; and the Catholics, who dispute his interpretation, acknowledge that his text was genuine and sincere. But he attached himself with peculiar devotion to the writings and character of St. Paul: the name of the Paulicians is derived by their enemies from some unknown and domestic teacher; but I am confident that they gloried in their affinity to the apostle of the Gentiles. His disciples, Titus, Timothy, Sylvanus, Tychichus, were represented by Constantine and his fellow-labourers: the names of the apostolic churches were applied to the congregations which they assembled in Armenia and Cappadocia; and this innocent allegory revived the example and memory of the first ages. In the gospel, and the  
 Their bible. epistles of St. Paul, his faithful follower investigated the creed of primitive Christianity: and, whatever might be the success, a protestant reader will applaud the spirit, of the enquiry. But if the scriptures of the Paulicians were pure, they were not perfect. Their founders rejected the two epistles of St. Peter \*, the apostle of the circumcision, whose dispute with their favourite for the observance of the law could not easily be forgiven \*. They agreed with their Gnostic brethren in the universal contempt for the Old Testament, the books of Moses and the prophets, which have been consecrated by the decrees of the Catholic church.

church. With equal boldness, and doubtless with more reason, Constantine, the new Sylvanus, disclaimed the visions, which, in so many bulky and splendid volumes, had been published by the Oriental sects; the fabulous productions of the Hebrew patriarchs and the sages of the East; the spurious gospels, epistles, and acts, which in the first age had overwhelmed the orthodox code; the theology of Manes, and the authors of the kindred heresies; and the thirty generations, or æons, which had been created by the fruitful fancy of Valentine. The Paulicians sincerely condemned the memory and opinions of the Manichæan sect, and complained of the injustice which impressed that invidious name on the simple votaries of St. Paul and of Christ.

Of the ecclesiastical chain, many links had been broken by the Paulician reformers; and their liberty was enlarged, as they reduced the number of masters, at whose voice profane reason must bow to mystery and miracle. The early separation of the Gnostics had preceded the establishment of the Catholic worship; and against the gradual innovations of discipline and doctrine, they were as strongly guarded by habit and aversion, as by the silence of St. Paul and the evangelists. The objects which had been transformed by the magic of superstition, appeared to the eyes of the Paulicians in their genuine and naked colours. An image made without hands, was the common workmanship of a mortal artist, to whose skill alone the wood and canvass must be indebted for

The simplicity of their belief and worship.

C H A P. LIV. their merit or value. The miraculous relics were an heap of bones and ashes, destitute of life or virtue, or of any relation, perhaps, with the person to whom they were ascribed. The true and vivifying cross was a piece of sound or rotten timber; the body and blood of Christ, a loaf of bread and a cup of wine, the gifts of nature and the symbols of grace. The mother of God was degraded from her celestial honours and immaculate virginity; and the saints and angels were no longer solicited to exercise the laborious office, of mediation in heaven, and ministry upon earth. In the practice, or at least in the theory of the sacraments, the Paulicians were inclined to abolish all visible objects of worship, and the words of the gospel were, in their judgment, the baptism and communion of the faithful. They indulged a convenient latitude for the interpretation of scripture; and as often as they were pressed by the literal sense, they could escape to the intricate mazes of figure and allegory. Their utmost diligence must have been employed to dissolve the connection between the old and the new testament; since they adored the latter as the oracles of God, and abhorred the former, as the fabulous and absurd invention of men or dæmons. We cannot be surpris'd, that they should have found in the gospel, the orthodox mystery of the trinity: but instead of confessing the human nature and substantial sufferings of Christ, they amused their fancy with a celestial body that passed through the virgin like water through a pipe; with a

They hold  
the two prin-  
ciples of the  
Magians and  
Manichæans.

phantastic crucifixion, that eluded the vain and impotent malice of the Jews. A creed thus simple and spiritual was not adapted to the genius of the times<sup>7</sup>: and the rational Christian who might have been contented with the light yoke and easy burthen of Jesus and his apostles, was justly offended, that the Paulicians should dare to violate the unity of God, the first article of natural and revealed religion. Their belief and their trust was in the Father, of Christ, of the human soul, and of the invisible world. But they likewise held the eternity of matter; a stubborn and rebellious substance, the origin of a second principle, of an active being, who has created this visible world, and exercises his temporal reign till the final consummation of death and sin<sup>8</sup>. The appearances of moral and physical evil had established the two principles in the ancient philosophy and religion of the East; from whence this doctrine was transfused to the various swarms of the Gnostics. A thousand shades may be devised in the nature and character of *Ahriman*, from a rival god to a subordinate dæmon, from passion and frailty to pure and perfect malevolence: but, in spite of our efforts, the goodness, and the power, of Ormuzd are placed at the opposite extremities of the line; and every step that approaches the one must recede in equal proportion from the other<sup>9</sup>.

The apostolic labours of Constantine-Sylvanus, soon multiplied the number of his disciples, the secret recompence of spiritual ambition. The

The esta-  
blishment of  
the Paulici-  
ans in Arme-

CHAPTER. remnant of the Gnostic sects, and especially the  
 LIV. Manichæans of Armenia, were united under his  
 standard; many Catholics were converted or  
 seduced by his arguments; and he preached with  
 success in the regions of Pontus<sup>11</sup> and Cappadocia,  
 which had long since imbibed the religion of  
 Zoroaster. The Paulician teachers were distin-  
 guished only by their scriptural names, by the  
 modest title of fellow-pilgrims, by the austerity  
 of their lives, their zeal or knowledge, and the  
 credit of some extraordinary gifts of the holy  
 spirit. But they were incapable of desiring, or  
 at least of obtaining, the wealth and honours of  
 the Catholic prelacy: such anti-christian pride they  
 bitterly censured; and even the rank of elders or  
 presbyters was condemned as an institution of the  
 Jewish synagogue. The new sect was loosely  
 spread over the provinces of Asia Minor to the  
 westward of the Euphrates; six of their principal  
 congregations represented the churches to which  
 St. Paul had addressed his epistles; and their foun-  
 der chose his residence in the neighbourhood of  
 Colonia<sup>12</sup>, in the same district of Pontus which  
 had been celebrated by the altars of Bellona<sup>13</sup> and  
 the miracles of Gregory<sup>14</sup>. After a mission of  
 twenty-seven years, Sylvanus, who had retired  
 from the tolerating government of the Arabs,  
 fell a sacrifice to Roman persecution. The laws  
 of the pious emperors, which seldom touched the  
 lives of less odious heretics, proscribed without  
 mercy or disguise the tenets, the books, and the  
 persons of the Montanists and Manichæans: the

Persecution  
 of the Greek  
 emperors.



books were delivered to the flames; and all who should presume to secrete such writings, or to profess such opinions, were devoted to an ignominious death". A Greek minister, armed with legal and military powers, appeared at Colonia to strike the shepherd, and to reclaim, if possible, the lost sheep. By a refinement of cruelty, Simeon placed the unfortunate Sylvanus before a line of his disciples, who were commanded, as the price of their pardon and the proof of their repentance, to massacre their spiritual father. They turned aside from the impious office; the stones dropt from their filial hands, and of the whole number, only one executioner could be found, a new David, as he is styled by the Catholics, who boldly overthrew the giant of heresy. This apostate, Justus was his name, again deceived and betrayed his unsuspecting brethren, and a new conformity to the acts of St. Paul may be found in the conversion of Simeon: like the apostle, he embraced the doctrine which he had been sent to persecute, renounced his honours and fortunes, and acquired among the Paulicians the fame of a missionary and a martyr. They were not ambitious of martyrdom", but in a calamitous period of one hundred and fifty years, their patience sustained whatever zeal could inflict: and power was insufficient to eradicate the obstinate vegetation of fanaticism and reason. From the blood and ashes of the first victims, a succession of teachers and congregations repeatedly arose: amidst their foreign hostilities, they found leisure for domestic

C H A P.  
LIV.

quarrels: they preached; they disputed, they suffered; and the virtues, the apparent virtues, of Sergius, in a pilgrimage of thirty-three years, are reluctantly confessed by the orthodox historians'. The native cruelty of Justinian the second was stimulated by a pious cause, and he vainly hoped to extinguish in a single conflagration the name and memory of the Paulicians. By their primitive simplicity, their abhorrence of popular superstition, the Iconoclast princes might have been reconciled to some erroneous doctrines; but they themselves were exposed to the calumnies of the monks, and they chose to be the tyrants, lest they should be accused as the accomplices, of the Manichæans. Such a reproach has sullied the clemency of Nicephorus, who relaxed in their favour the severity of the penal statutes, nor will his character sustain the honour of a more liberal motive. The feeble Michael the first, the rigid Leo the Armenian, were foremost in the race of persecution; but the prize must doubtless be adjudged to the sanguinary devotion of Theodora, who restored the images to the Oriental church. Her inquisitors explored the cities and mountains of the lesser Asia, and the flatterers of the empress have affirmed that, in a short reign, one hundred thousand Paulicians were extirpated by the sword, the gibbet, or the flames. Her guilt or merit has perhaps been stretched beyond the measure of truth: but if the account be allowed, it must be presumed that many simple Iconoclasts were punished under a more odious name; and that some

who were driven from the church, unwillingly took refuge in the bosom of heresy.

C H A P.  
LIV.

The most furious and desperate of rebels are the sectaries of a religion long persecuted, and at length provoked. In an holy cause they are no longer susceptible of fear or remorse: the justice of their arms hardens them against the feelings of humanity; and they revenge their fathers wrongs on the children of their tyrants. Such have been the Hussites of Bohemia and the Calvinists of France, and such, in the ninth century, were the Paulicians of Armenia and the adjacent provinces". They were first awakened to the massacre of a governor and bishop, who exercised the Imperial mandate of converting or destroying the heretics; and the deepest recesses of mount Argæus protected their independence and revenge. A more dangerous and consuming flame was kindled by the persecution of Theodora, and the revolt of Carbeas, a valiant Paulician, who commanded the guards of the general of the East. His father had been impaled by the Catholic inquisitors; and religion, or at least nature, might justify his desertion and revenge. Five thousand of his brethren were united by the same motives; they renounced the allegiance of anti-christian Rome; a Saracen emir introduced Carbeas to the caliph; and the commander of the faithful extended his sceptre to the implacable enemy of the Greeks. In the mountains between Siwas and Trebizond he founded or fortified the city of Tephrike", which is still occupied by a fierce and licentious

Revolt of the  
Paulicians,  
A. D.  
845—880.

They fortify  
Tephrike.

CHAP.  
LIV.

people, and the neighbouring hills were covered with the Paulician fugitives, who now reconciled the use of the Bible and the sword. During more than thirty years, Asia was afflicted by the calamities of foreign and domestic war: in their hostile inroads the disciples of St. Paul were joined with those of Mahomet; and the peaceful Christians, the aged parent and tender virgin, who were delivered into barbarous servitude, might justly accuse the intolerant spirit of their sovereign. So urgent was the mischief, so intolerable the shame, that even the dissolute Michael, the son of Theodora, was compelled to march in person against the Paulicians: he was defeated under the walls of Samosata; and the Roman emperor fled before the heretics whom his mother had condemned to the flames. The Saracens fought under the same banners, but the victory was ascribed to Carbeas; and the captive generals, with more than an hundred tribunes, were either released by his avarice, or tortured by his fanaticism. The valour and ambition of Chrysocheir<sup>1</sup>, his successor, embraced a wider circle of rapine and revenge. In alliance with his faithful Moslems, he boldly penetrated into the heart of Asia; the troops of the frontier and the palace were repeatedly overthrown; the edicts of persecution were answered by the pillage of Nice and Nicomedia, of Ancyra and Ephesus; nor could the apostle St. John protect from violation his city and sepulchre. The cathedral of Ephesus was turned into a stable for mules and horses; and the Paulicians vied with

and pillage  
Asia Minor.

the Saracens in their contempt and abhorrence of images and relics. It is not unpleasing to observe the triumph of rebellion over the same despotism which has disdained the prayers of an injured people. The emperor Basil, the Macedonian, was reduced to sue for peace, to offer a ransom for the captives, and to request, in the language of moderation and charity, that Chrysocheir would spare his fellow-christians; and content himself with a royal donative of gold and silver and silk garments. "If the emperor," replied the insolent fanatic, "be desirous of peace, let him abdicate the East, and reign without molestation in the West. If he refuse, the servants of the Lord will precipitate him from the throne." The reluctant Basil suspended the treaty, accepted the defiance, and led his army into the land of heresy, which he wasted with fire and sword. The open country of the Paulicians was exposed to the same calamities which they had inflicted; but when he had explored the strength of Tephrike, the multitude of the Barbarians, and the ample magazines of arms and provisions, he desisted with a sigh from the hopeless siege. On his return to Constantinople he laboured, by the foundation of convents and churches, to secure the aid of his celestial patrons, of Michael the archangel and the prophet Elijah; and it was his daily prayer that he might live to transpierce, with three arrows, the head of his impious adversary. Beyond his expectations, the wish was accomplished: after a successful inroad, Chrysocheir was surprised

C H A P. and slain in his retreat; and the rebel's head was  
 I.IV. triumphantly presented at the foot of the throne.

Their de-  
 cline.

On the reception of this welcome trophy, Basil instantly called for his bow, discharged three arrows with unerring aim, and accepted the applause of the court, who hailed the victory of the royal archer. With Chrysocheir, the glory of the Paulicians faded and withered<sup>22</sup>; on the second expedition of the emperor, the impregnable Tephrike was deserted by the heretics, who sued for mercy or escaped to the borders. The city was ruined, but the spirit of independence survived in the mountains: the Paulicians defended, above a century, their religion and liberty, infested the Roman limits, and maintained their perpetual alliance with the enemies of the empire and the gospel.

Their trans-  
 plantation  
 from Arme-  
 nia to  
 Thrace.

About the middle of the eighth century, Constantine, surnamed Copronymus by the worshippers of images, had made an expedition into Armenia, and found, in the cities of Melitene and Theodosiopolis, a great number of Paulicians, his kindred heretics. As a favour or punishment, he transplanted them from the banks of the Euphrates to Constantinople and Thrace; and by this emigration their doctrine was introduced and diffused in Europe<sup>23</sup>. If the sectaries of the metropolis were soon mingled with the promiscuous mass, those of the country struck a deep root in a foreign soil. The Paulicians of Thrace resisted the storms of persecution, maintained a secret correspondence with their Armenian brethren, and gave aid and comfort to

their preachers, who solicited, not without success, the infant faith of the Bulgarians<sup>22</sup>. In the tenth century, they were restored and multiplied by a more powerful colony, which John Zimisces<sup>23</sup> transported from the Chalybian hills to the vallies of mount Hæmus. The Oriental clergy, who would have preferred the destruction, impatiently sighed for the absence, of the Manichæans: the warlike emperor had felt and esteemed their valour; their attachment to the Saracens was pregnant with mischief; but, on the side of the Danube, against the Barbarians of Scythia, their service might be useful, and their loss would be desirable. Their exile in a distant land was softened by a free toleration: the Paulicians held the city of Philipopolis and the keys of Thrace; the Catholics were their subjects; the Jacobite emigrants their associates: they occupied a line of villages and castles in Macedonia and Epirus; and many native Bulgarians were associated to the communion of arms and heresy. As long as they were awed by power and treated with moderation, their voluntary bands were distinguished in the armies of the empire; and the courage of these *dogs*, ever greedy of war, ever thirsty of human blood, is noticed with astonishment, and almost with reproach, by the pusillanimous Greeks. The same spirit rendered them arrogant and contumacious: they were easily provoked by caprice or injury; and their privileges were often violated by the faithless bigotry of the government and clergy. In the midst of the Norman war, two thousand

## 76 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. five hundred Manichæans deserted the standard  
 LIV. of Alexius Comnenus<sup>22</sup>, and retired to their native homes. He dissembled till the moment of revenge; invited the chiefs to a friendly conference; and punished the innocent and guilty by imprisonment, confiscation, and baptism. In an interval of peace, the emperor undertook the pious office of reconciling them to the church and state: his winter-quarters were fixed at Philippopolis; and the thirteenth apostle, as he is styled by his pious daughter, consumed whole days and nights in theological controversy. His arguments were fortified, their obstinacy was melted, by the honours and rewards which he bestowed on the most eminent profelytes; and a new city, surrounded with gardens, enriched with immunities, and dignified with his own name, was founded by Alexius, for the residence of his vulgar converts. The important station of Philippopolis was wrested from their hands; the contumacious leaders were secured in a dungeon, or banished from their country; and their lives were spared by the prudence, rather than the mercy, of an emperor, at whose command a poor and solitary heretic was burnt alive before the church of St. Sophia<sup>23</sup>. But the proud hope of eradicating the prejudices of a nation was speedily overturned by the invincible zeal of the Paulicians, who ceased to dissemble or refused to obey. After the departure and death of Alexius, they soon resumed their civil and religious laws. In the beginning of the thirteenth century, their pope or primate (a mani-



fest corruption) resided on the confines of Bulgaria, Croatia, and Dalmatia, and governed, by his vicars, the filial congregations of Italy and France<sup>26</sup>. From that æra, a minute scrutiny might prolong and perpetuate the chain of tradition. At the end of the last age, the sect or colony still inhabited the vallies of mount Hæmus, where their ignorance and poverty were more frequently tormented by the Greek clergy than by the Turkish government. The modern Paulicians have lost all memory of their origin; and their religion is disgraced by the worship of the cross, and the practice of bloody sacrifice, which some captives have imported from the wilds of Tartary<sup>27</sup>.

C H A P.  
LIV.

In the West, the first teachers of the Manichæan theology had been repulsed by the people or suppressed by the prince. The favour and success of the Paulicians in the eleventh and twelfth centuries must be imputed to the strong, though secret, discontent which armed the most pious Christians against the church of Rome. Her avarice was oppressive, her despotism odious: less degenerate perhaps than the Greeks in the worship of saints and images, her innovations were more rapid and scandalous: she had rigorously defined and imposed the doctrine of transubstantiation: the lives of the Latin clergy were more corrupt, and the Eastern bishops might pass for the successors of the apostles, if they were compared with the lordly prelates, who wielded by turns the crosier, the sceptre, and the sword. Three different roads might introduce the Paulicians into the heart of

Their introduction into Italy and France.

C H A P. Europe. After the conversion of Hungary, the  
 LIV. pilgrims who visited Jerusalem might safely follow the course of the Danube: in their journey and return they passed through Philippopolis; and the sectaries, disguising their name and heresy, might accompany the French or German caravans to their respective countries. The trade and dominion of Venice pervaded the coast of the Adriatic, and the hospitable republic opened her bosom to foreigners of every climate and religion. Under the Byzantine standard, the Paulicians were often transported to the Greek provinces of Italy and Sicily; in peace and war they freely conversed with strangers and natives, and their opinions were silently propagated in Rome, Milan, and the kingdoms beyond the Alps". It was soon discovered, that many thousand Catholics of every rank, and of either sex, had embraced the Manichæan heresy; and the flames which consumed twelve canons of Orleans, was the first act and signal of persecution. The Bulgarians", a name so innocent in its origin, so odious in its application, spread their branches over the face of Europe. United in common hatred of idolatry and Rome, they were connected by a form of episcopal and presbyterian government; their various sects were discriminated by some fainter or darker shades of theology; but they generally agreed in the two principles, the contempt of the old testament, and the denial of the body of Christ, either on the cross or in the Eucharist. A confession of simple worship and blameless manners is extorted

from their enemies; and so high was their standard of perfection, that the encreasing congregations were divided into two classes of disciples, of those who practised, and of those who aspired. It was in the country of the Albigeois", in the southern provinces of France, that the Paulicians were most deeply implanted; and the same vicissitudes of martyrdom and revenge which had been displayed in the neighbourhood of the Euphrates, were repeated in the thirteenth century on the banks of the Rhône. The laws of the Eastern emperors were revived by Frederic the second. The insurgents of Tephric were represented by the barons and cities of Languedoc: Pope Innocent III. surpassed the sanguinary fame of Theodora. It was in cruelty alone that her soldiers could equal the heroes of the Crusades, and the cruelty of her priests was far excelled by the founders of the inquisition"; an office more adapted to confirm, than to refute, the belief of an evil principle. The visible assemblies of the Paulicians, or Albigeois, were extirpated by fire and sword; and the bleeding remnant escaped by flight, concealment, or catholic conformity. But the invincible spirit which they had kindled still lived and breathed in the Western world. In the state, in the church, and even in the cloister, a latent succession was preserved of the disciples of St. Paul; who protested against the tyranny of Rome, embraced the bible as the rule of faith; and purified their creed from all the visions of the Gnostic theology. The struggles of Wickliff in

C H A P.  
LIV.

Persecution  
of the Albi-  
geois,  
A. D. 1200,  
&c.

- 6 H A P. England, of Hufs in Bohemia, were premature  
 LIV. and ineffectual; but the names of Zuinglius,  
 Luther, and Calvin, are pronounced with grati-  
 tude as the deliverers of nations.

Character  
 and conse-  
 quences of  
 the reforma-  
 tion.

A philosopher, who calculates the degree of their merit and the value of their reformation, will prudently ask from what articles of faith, *above or against* our reason, they have enfranchised the Christians; for such enfranchisement is doubtless a benefit so far as it may be compatible with truth and piety. After a fair discussion we shall rather be surpris'd by the timidity, than scandalised by the freedom, of our first reformers". With the Jews, they adopted the belief and defence of all the Hebrew scriptures, with all their prodigies, from the garden of Eden to the visions of the prophet Daniel; and they were bound, like the Catholics, to justify against the Jews the abolition of a divine law. In the great mysteries of the Trinity and Incarnation the reformers were severely orthodox: they freely adopted the theology of the four, or the six first councils; and with the Athanasian creed, they pronounced the eternal damnation of all who did not believe the Catholic faith. Transubstantiation, the invisible change of the bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ, is a tenet that may defy the power of argument and pleasantry; but instead of consulting the evidence of their senses, of their sight, their feeling, and their taste, the first protestants were entangled in their own scruples, and awed by the words of Jesus in  
 the

the institution of the sacrament. Luther maintained a *corporeal*, and Calvin a *real*, presence of Christ in the eucharist; and the opinion of Zuinglius, that it is no more than a spiritual communion, a simple memorial, has slowly prevailed in the reformed churches". But the loss of one mystery was amply compensated by the stupendous doctrines of original sin, redemption, faith, grace, and predestination, which have been strained from the epistles of St. Paul. These subtle questions had most assuredly been prepared by the fathers and schoolmen; but the final improvement and popular use may be attributed to the first reformers, who enforced them as the absolute and essential terms of salvation. Hitherto the weight of supernatural belief inclines against the Protestants; and many a sober Christian would rather admit that a wafer is God, than that God is a cruel and capricious tyrant.

Yet the services of Luther and his rivals are solid and important; and the philosopher must own his obligations to these fearless enthusiasts". I. By their hands the lofty fabric of superstition, from the abuse of indulgences to the intercession of the Virgin, has been levelled with the ground. Myriads of both sexes of the monastic profession were restored to the liberty and labours of social life. An hierarchy of saints and angels, of imperfect and subordinate deities, were stripped of their temporal power, and reduced to the enjoyment of celestial happiness: their images and relics were banished from the church; and the

## 82 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. credulity of the people was no longer nourished  
 LIV. with the daily repetition of miracles and visions. The imitation of Paganism was supplied by a pure and spiritual worship of prayer and thanksgiving, the most worthy of man, the least unworthy of the Deity. It only remains to observe, whether such sublime simplicity be consistent with popular devotion; whether the vulgar, in the absence of all visible objects, will not be inflamed by enthusiasm, or insensibly subside in languor and indifference. II. The chain of authority was broken, which restrains the bigot from thinking as he pleases, and the slave from speaking as he thinks: the popes, fathers, and councils, were no longer the supreme and infallible judges of the world; and each Christian was taught to acknowledge no law but the scriptures, no interpreter but his own conscience. This freedom however was the consequence, rather than the design, of the reformation. The patriot reformers were ambitious of succeeding the tyrants whom they had dethroned. They imposed with equal rigour their creeds and confessions; they asserted the right of the magistrate to punish heretics with death. The pious or personal animosity of Calvin proscribed in Servetus "the guilt of his own rebellion"; and the flames of Smithfield, in which he was afterwards consumed, had been kindled for the Anabaptists by the zeal of Cranmer". The nature of the tyger was the same, but he was gradually deprived of his teeth and fangs. A spiritual and temporal kingdom was possessed by

the Roman pontiff: the Protestant doctors were subjects of an humble rank, without revenue or jurisdiction. *His* decrees were consecrated by the antiquity of the Catholic church: *their* arguments and disputes were submitted to the people; and their appeal to private judgment was accepted beyond their wishes, by curiosity and enthusiasm. Since the days of Luther and Calvin, a secret reformation has been silently working in the bosom of the reformed churches; many weeds of prejudice were eradicated; and the disciples of Erasmus " diffused a spirit of freedom and moderation. The liberty of conscience has been claimed as a common benefit, an inalienable right ": the free governments of Holland " and England " introduced the practice of toleration; and the narrow allowance of the laws has been enlarged by the prudence and humanity of the times. In the exercise, the mind has understood the limits, of its powers, and the words and shadows that might amuse the child can no longer satisfy his manly reason. The volumes of controversy are overspread with cobwebs: the doctrine of a Protestant church is far removed from the knowledge or belief of its private members; and the forms of orthodoxy, the articles of faith, are subscribed with a sigh or a smile by the modern clergy. Yet the friends of Christianity are alarmed at the boundless impulse of enquiry and scepticism. The predictions of the Catholics are accomplished: the web of mystery is unravelled by the Arminians, Arians, and

## 84 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAPTER. Socinians, whose numbers must not be computed  
LIV. from their separate congregations. And the pillars  
of revelation are shaken by those men who  
preserve the name without the substance of reli-  
gion, who indulge the licence without the temper  
of philosophy \*.



## CHAP. LV.

*The Bulgarians. — Origin, Migrations, and Settlement of the Hungarians. — Their Inroads in the East and West. — The Monarchy of Russia. — Geography and Trade. — Wars of the Russians against the Greek Empire. — Conversion of the Barbarians.*

UNDER the reign of Constantine the grandson of Heraclius, the ancient barrier of the Danube, so often violated and so often restored, was irretrievably swept away by a new deluge of Barbarians. Their progress was favoured by the caliphs, their unknown and accidental auxiliaries: the Roman legions were occupied in Asia; and after the loss of Syria, Egypt, and Africa, the Cæsars were twice reduced to the danger and disgrace of defending their capital against the Saracens. If in the account of this interesting people, I have deviated from the strict and original line of my undertaking, the merit of the subject will hide my transgression or solicit my excuse. In the East, in the West, in war, in religion, in science, in their prosperity, and in their decay, the Arabians press themselves on our curiosity: the first overthrow of the church and empire of the Greeks may be imputed to

CHAP.  
LV.

CHAP. their arms; and the disciples of Mahomet still  
 IV. hold the civil and religious sceptre of the Oriental world. But the same labour would be unworthily bestowed on the swarms of savages, who, between the seventh and the twelfth century, descended from the plains of Scythia, in transient inroad or perpetual emigration<sup>1</sup>. Their names are uncouth, their origins doubtful, their actions obscure; their superstition was blind, their valour brutal, and the uniformity of their public and private lives was neither softened by innocence nor refined by policy. The majesty of the Byzantine throne repelled and survived their disorderly attacks; the greater part of these Barbarians has disappeared without leaving any memorial of their existence, and the despicable remnant continues, and may long continue, to groan under the dominion of a foreign tyrant. From the antiquities of, I. *Bulgarians*, II. *Hungarians*, and, III. *Russians*, I shall content myself with selecting such facts as yet deserve to be remembered. The conquests of the, IV. *NORMANS*, and the monarchy of the, V. *TURKS*, will naturally terminate in the memorable Crusades to the Holy Land, and the double fall of the city and empire of Constantine.

Emigration  
 of the Bul-  
 garians,  
 A. D. 680,  
 &c.

In his march to Italy, Theodoric<sup>2</sup> the Ostrogoth had trampled on the arms of the Bulgarians. After this defeat the name and the nation are lost during a century and an half; and it may be suspected that the same or a similar appellation was revived by strange colonies from the Bory-

sthenes, the Tanais, or the Volga. A king of the ancient Bulgaria<sup>1</sup> bequeathed to his five sons a last lesson of moderation and concord. It was received as youth has ever received the counsels of age and experience: the five princes buried their father; divided his subjects and cattle; forgot his advice; separated from each other; and wandered in quest of fortune, till we find the most adventurous in the heart of Italy, under the protection of the exarch of Ravenna<sup>2</sup>. But the stream of emigration was directed or impelled towards the capital. The modern Bulgaria, along the southern banks of the Danube, was stamped with the name and image which it has retained to the present hour: the new conquerors successively acquired, by war or treaty, the Roman provinces of Dardania, Thessaly, and the two Epirus<sup>3</sup>; the ecclesiastical supremacy was translated from the native city of Justinian; and, in their prosperous age, the obscure town of Lychnidus, or Achrída, was honoured with the throne of a king and a patriarch<sup>4</sup>. The unquestionable evidence of language attests the descent of the Bulgarians from the original stock of the Slavonian, or more properly Slavonian, race<sup>5</sup>; and the kindred bands of Servians, Bosnians, Rascians, Croatians, Walachians<sup>6</sup>, &c. followed either the standard or the example of the leading tribe. From the Euxine to the Adriatic, in the state of captives, or subjects, or allies, or enemies, of the Greek empire, they overspread the land; and the national appellation of the SLAVES<sup>7</sup> has

CHAP. been degraded by chance or malice from the  
 LV. signification, of glory to that of servitude".  
 Croats or Slavonians Among these colonies, the Chrobatians", or  
 of Dalmatia, Croats, who now attend the motions of an  
 A. D. 900, Austrian army, are the descendants of a mighty  
 &c. people, the conquerors and sovereigns of Dalma-  
 tia. The maritime cities, and of these the infant  
 republic of Ragusa, implored the aid and instruc-  
 tions of the Byzantine court: they were advised  
 by the magnanimous Basil to reserve a small  
 acknowledgment of their fidelity to the Roman  
 empire, and to appease, by an annual tribute,  
 the wrath of these irresistible Barbarians. The  
 kingdom of Croatia was shared by eleven *Zoupan*s,  
 or feudatory lords; and their united forces were  
 numbered at sixty thousand horse and one hundred  
 thousand foot. A long sea-coast, indented with  
 capacious harbours, covered with a string of  
 islands, and almost in sight of the Italian shores,  
 disposed both the natives and strangers to the  
 practice of navigation. The boats or brigantines  
 of the Croats were constructed after the fashion  
 of the old Liburnians: one hundred and eighty  
 vessels may excite the idea of a respectable navy;  
 but our seamen will smile at the allowance of  
 ten, or twenty, or forty, men for each of these  
 ships of war. They were gradually converted to  
 the more honourable service of commerce; yet  
 the Slavonian pirates were still frequent and  
 dangerous; and it was not before the close of  
 the tenth century that the freedom and sove-  
 reignty of the Gulf were effectually vindicated

by the Venetian republic ". The ancestors of these Dalmatian kings were equally removed from the use and abuse of navigation: they dwelt in the White Croatia, in the inland regions of Silesia and Little Poland, thirty days journey, according to the Greek computation, from the sea of darkness.

CHAP.  
LV.

The glory of the Bulgarians " was confined to a narrow scope both of time and place. In the ninth and tenth centuries, they reigned to the south of the Danube; but the more powerful nations that had followed their emigration, repelled all return to the north and all progress to the West. Yet, in the obscure catalogue of their exploits, they might boast an honour which had hitherto been appropriated to the Goths; that of slaying in battle one of the successors of Augustus and Constantine. The emperor Nicephorus had lost his fame in the Arabian, he lost his life in the Slavonian, war. In his first operations he advanced with boldness and success into the centre of Bulgaria, and burnt the *royal court*, which was probably no more than an edifice and village of timber. But, while he searched the spoil and refused all offers of treaty, his enemies collected their spirits and their forces: the passes of retreat were insuperably barred; and the trembling Nicephorus was heard to exclaim: " Alas, alas! " unless we could assume the wings of birds, we " cannot hope to escape." Two days he waited his fate in the inactivity of despair; but, on the morning of the third, the Bulgarians surprised the

First king-  
dom of the  
Bulgarians.  
A. D.  
640—1017.

CHAP. camp, and the Roman prince, with the great  
 LV. officers of the empire, were slaughtered in their  
 A. D. 811. tents. The body of Valens had been saved from  
 insult; but the head of Nicephorus was exposed  
 on a spear, and his skull, enshased with gold,  
 was often replenished in the feasts of victory. The  
 Greeks bewailed the dishonour of the throne; but  
 they acknowledged the just punishment of avarice  
 and cruelty. This savage cup was deeply tinged  
 with the manners of the Scythian wilderness; but  
 they were softened before the end of the same  
 century by a peaceful intercourse with the Greeks,  
 the possession of a cultivated region, and the  
 introduction of the Christian worship. The nobles  
 of Bulgaria were educated in the schools and  
 palace of Constantinople; and Simeon<sup>1</sup>, a youth  
 of the royal line, was instructed in the rhetoric  
 of Demosthenes and the logic of Aristotle. He  
 relinquished the profession of a monk for that of  
 a king and warrior; and in his reign, of more  
 than forty years, Bulgaria assumed a rank among  
 the civilized powers of the earth. The Greeks,  
 whom he repeatedly attacked, derived a faint  
 consolation from indulging themselves in the  
 reproaches of perfidy and sacrilege. They purchased  
 the aid of the Pagan Turks; but Simeon, in a  
 second battle, redeemed the loss of the first, at a  
 time when it was esteemed a victory to elude the  
 arms of that formidable nation. The Servians  
 were overthrown, made captive, and dispersed;  
 and those who visited the country before their  
 restoration could discover no more than fifty

A. D.

888.—927.

or 932.

vagrants, without women or children, who extorted a precarious subsistence from the chase. On classic ground, on the banks of the Achelous, the Greeks were defeated; their horn was broken by the strength of the Barbaric Hercules". He formed the siege of Constantinople; and, in a personal conference with the emperor, Simeon imposed the conditions of peace. They met with the most jealous precautions: the royal galley was drawn close to an artificial and well-fortified platform; and the majesty of the purple was emulated by the pomp of the Bulgarian. "Are you a Christian," said the humble Romanus, "it is your duty to abstain from the blood of your fellow-Christians. Has the thirst of riches seduced you from the blessings of peace; sheath your sword, open your hand, and I will satiate the utmost measure of your desires." The reconciliation was sealed by a domestic alliance; the freedom of trade was granted or restored; the first honours of the court were secured to the friends of Bulgaria; above the ambassadors of enemies or strangers"; and her princes were dignified with the high and invidious title of *Basileus*, or emperor. But this friendship was soon disturbed: after the death of Simeon the nations were again in arms; his feeble successors were divided and extinguished; and, in the beginning of the eleventh century, the second Basil, who was born in the purple, deserved the appellation of conqueror of the Bulgarians. His avarice was in some measure gratified by a treasure of four hundred thousand

A. D. 950,  
\*c.

- 6 H A P. pounds sterling (ten thousand pound weight of  
 LV. gold), which he found in the palace of Lychnidus. His cruelty inflicted a cool and exquisite vengeance on fifteen thousand captives who had been guilty of the defence of their country. They were deprived of sight, but to one of each hundred a single eye was left, that he might conduct his blind century to the presence of their king. Their king is said to have expired of grief and horror; the nation was awed by this terrible example; the Bulgarians were swept away from their settlements, and circumscribed within a narrow province; the surviving chiefs bequeathed to their children the advice of patience and the duty of revenge.

Emigration  
 of the Turks  
 or Hunga-  
 rians,  
 A. D. 884.

II. When the black swarm of Hungarians first hung over Europe, about nine hundred years after the Christian æra, they were mistaken by fear and superstition for the Gog and Magog of the scriptures, the signs and forerunners of the end of the world<sup>17</sup>. Since the introduction of letters, they have explored their own antiquities with a strong and laudable impulse of patriotic curiosity<sup>18</sup>. Their rational criticism can no longer be amused with a vain pedigree of Attila and the Huns; but they complain that their primitive records have perished in the Tartar war; that the truth or fiction of their rustic songs is long since forgotten; and that the fragments of a rude chronicle<sup>19</sup> must be painfully reconciled with the contemporary though foreign intelligence of the Imperial geographer<sup>20</sup>. *Magiar* is the national



and oriental denomination of the Hungarians; but, among the tribes of Scythia, they are distinguished by the Greeks under the proper and peculiar name of *Turks*, as the descendants of that mighty people who had conquered and reigned from China to the Volga. The Pannonian colony preserved a correspondence of trade and amity with the eastern Turks on the confines of Persia; and after a separation of three hundred and fifty years, the missionaries of the king of Hungary discovered and visited their ancient country near the banks of the Volga. They were hospitably entertained by a people of Pagans and Savages who still bore the name of Hungarians; conversed in their native tongue, recollected a tradition of their long-lost brethren, and listened with amazement to the marvellous tale of their new kingdom and religion. The zeal of conversion was animated by the interest of consanguinity; and one of the greatest of their princes had formed the generous, though fruitless design, of replenishing the solitude of Pannonia by this domestic colony from the heart of Tartary<sup>11</sup>. From this primitive country, they were driven to the west by the tide of war and emigration, by the weight of the more distant tribes, who at the same time were fugitives and conquerors. Reason or fortune directed their course towards the frontiers of the Roman empire; they halted in the usual stations along the banks of the great rivers; and in the territories of Moscow, Kiow, and Moldavia, some vestiges have been discovered of their temporary residence. In

CHAP.

LV.

this long and various peregrination, they could not always escape the dominion of the stronger; and the purity of their blood was improved or sullied by the mixture of a foreign race: from a motive of compulsion or choice, several tribes of the Chazars were associated to the standard of their ancient vassals; introduced the use of a second language; and obtained by their superior renown the most honourable place in the front of battle. The military force of the Turks and their allies marched in seven equal and artificial divisions; each division was formed of thirty thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven warriors, and the proportion of women, children, and servants, supposes and requires at least a million of emigrants. Their public counsels were directed by seven *vayvods* or hereditary chiefs, but the experience of discord and weakness recommended the more simple and vigorous administration of a single person. The sceptre which had been declined by the modest Lebedias, was granted to the birth or merit of Almus and his son Arpad, and the authority of the supreme khan of the Chazars confirmed the engagement of the prince and people; of the people to obey his commands, of the prince to consult their happiness and glory.

Their Fennic  
origin.

With this narrative we might be reasonably content, if the penetration of modern learning had not opened a new and larger prospect of the antiquities of nations. The Hungarian language stands alone, and as it were insulated, among the Slavonian dialects; but it bears a close and clear

affinity to the idioms of the Fennic race", of an obsolete and savage race, which formerly occupied the northern regions of Asia and Europe. The genuine appellation of *Ugri* or *Igours* is found on the western confines of China"; their migration to the banks of the Irtysh is attested by Tartar evidence"; a similar name and language are detected in the southern parts of Siberia"; and the remains of the Fennic tribes are widely, though thinly, scattered from the sources of the Ob to the shores of Lapland". The consanguinity of the Hungarians and Laplanders would display the powerful energy of climate on the children of a common parent; the lively contrast between the bold adventurers, who are intoxicated with the wines of the Danube, and the wretched fugitives who are immersed beneath the snows of the polar circle. Arms and freedom have ever been the ruling; though too often the unsuccessful, passion of the Hungarians, who are endowed by nature with a vigorous constitution of soul and body". Extreme cold has diminished the stature and congealed the faculties of the Laplanders, and the Arctic tribes, alone among the sons of men, are ignorant of war, and unconscious of human blood; an happy ignorance, if reason and virtue were the guardians of their peace"!.

It is the observation of the Imperial author of the *Tactics*", that all the Scythian hords resembled each other in their pastoral and military life; that they all practised the same means of subsistence, and employed the same instruments of destruction,

*Tactics and manners of the Hungarians and Bulgarians, A. D. 1004, &c.*

CHAP. But, he adds, that the two nations of Bulgarians  
 LV. and Hungarians were superior to their brethren,  
 and similar to each other, in the improvements,  
 however rude, of their discipline and government;  
 their visible likeness determines Leo to confound  
 his friends and enemies in one common descrip-  
 tion; and the picture may be heightened by  
 some strokes from their contemporaries of the  
 tenth century. Except the merit and fame of  
 military prowess, all that is valued by mankind  
 appeared vile and contemptible to these Barbarians,  
 whose native fierceness was stimulated by the  
 consciousness of numbers and freedom. The tents  
 of the Hungarians were of leather, their garments  
 of fur; they shaved their hair and scarified their  
 faces: in speech they were slow, in action prompt,  
 in treaty perfidious; and they shared the common  
 reproach of Barbarians, too ignorant to conceive  
 the importance of truth, too proud to deny or  
 palliate the breach of their most solemn engage-  
 ments. Their simplicity has been praised; yet  
 they abstained only from the luxury they had  
 never known; whatever they saw, they coveted;  
 their desires were insatiate, and their sole industry  
 was the hand of violence and rapine. By the  
 definition of a pastoral nation, I have recalled a  
 long description of the œconomy, the warfare,  
 and the government that prevail in that stage of  
 society; I may add, that to fishing as well as to  
 the chase, the Hungarians were indebted for a  
 part of their subsistence, and since they *seldom*  
 cultivated the ground, they must, at least in their  
 new

new settlements, have sometimes practised a flight and unskilful husbandry. In their emigrations, perhaps in their expeditions, the host was accompanied by thousands of sheep and oxen, who increased the cloud of formidable dust, and afforded a constant and wholesome supply of milk and animal food. A plentiful command of forage was the first care of the general, and if the flocks and herds were secure of their pastures, the hardy warrior was alike insensible of danger and fatigue. The confusion of men and cattle that overspread the country exposed their camp to a nocturnal surprise, had not a still wider circuit been occupied by their light cavalry, perpetually in motion to discover and delay the approach of the enemy. After some experience of the Roman tactics, they adopted the use of the sword and spear, the helmet of the foldier, and the iron breast-plate of his steed: but their native and deadly weapon was the Tartar bow: from the earliest infancy, their children and servants were exercised in the double science of archery and horsemanship; their arm was strong; their aim was sure; and in the most rapid career, they were taught to throw themselves backwards, and to shoot a volley of arrows into the air. In open combat, in secret ambush, in flight, or pursuit, they were equally formidable: an appearance of order was maintained in the foremost ranks, but their charge was driven forwards by the impatient pressure of succeeding crowds. They pursued, headlong and rash, with loosened reins and horrid outcries,

CHAP. but if they fled, with real or dissembled fear, the  
 LV. ardour of a pursuing foe was checked and chastised by the same habits of irregular speed and sudden evolution. In the abuse of victory, they astonished Europe, yet smarting from the wounds of the Saracen and the Dane: mercy they rarely asked, and more rarely bestowed; both sexes were accused as equally inaccessible to pity, and their appetite for raw flesh might countenance the popular tale; that they drank the blood and feasted on the hearts of the slain. Yet the Hungarians were not devoid of those principles of justice and humanity, which nature has implanted in every bosom. The licence of public and private injuries was restrained by laws and punishments; and in the security of an open camp, theft is the most tempting and most dangerous offence. Among the Barbarians, there were many, whose spontaneous virtue supplied their laws and corrected their manners, who performed the duties, and sympathised with the affections, of social life.

Establishment and inroads of the Hungarians, A. D. 889.

After a long pilgrimage of flight or victory, the Turkish hords approached the common limits of the French and Byzantine empires. Their first conquests and final settlements extended on either side of the Danube above Vienna, below Belgrade, and beyond the measure of the Roman province of Pannonia, or the modern kingdom of Hungary<sup>10</sup>. That ample and fertile land was loosely occupied by the Moravians, a Slavonian name and tribe, which were driven by the invaders

Into the compass of a narrow province. Charlemagne had stretched a vague and nominal empire as far as the edge of Transylvania; but, after the failure of his legitimate line, the dukes of Moravia forgot their obedience and tribute to the monarchs of Oriental France. The bastard Arnulph was provoked to invite the arms of the Turks; they rushed through the real or figurative wall, which his indiscretion had thrown open; and the king of Germany has been justly reproached as a traitor to the civil and ecclesiastical society of the Christians. During the life of Arnulph, the Hungarians were checked by gratitude or fear; but in the infancy of his son Lewis they discovered and invaded Bavaria; and such was their Scythian speed, that in a single day a circuit of fifty miles was stript and consumed. In the battle of Augsburgh the Christians maintained their advantage till the seventh hour of the day: they were deceived and vanquished by the flying stratagems of the Turkish cavalry. The conflagration spread over the provinces of Bavaria, Swabia, and Franconia; and the Hungarians promoted the reign of anarchy, by forcing the stoutest barons to discipline their vassals and fortify their castles. The origin of walled towns is ascribed to this calamitous period; nor could any distance be secure against an enemy, who, almost at the same instant, laid in ashes the Helvetian monastery of St. Gall, and the city of Bremen, on the shores of the northern ocean. Above thirty years the Germanic empire of

A. D. 900,  
&c.

**C H A P.** kingdom was subject to the ignominy of tribute;  
**LV.** and resistance was disarmed by the menace, the

serious and effectual menace, of dragging the women and children into captivity, and of slaughtering the males above the age of ten years. I have neither power nor inclination to follow the Hungarians beyond the Rhine; but I must observe with surprise, that the southern provinces of France were blasted by the tempest, and that Spain, behind her Pyrenees, was astonished at the approach of these formidable strangers".

**A. D. 900.** The vicinity of Italy had tempted their early inroads; but, from their camp on the Brenta, they beheld with some terror the apparent strength and populousness of the new-discovered country. They requested leave to retire; their request was proudly rejected by the Italian king; and the lives of twenty thousand Christians paid the forfeit of his obstinacy and rashness. Among the cities of the west, the royal Pavia was conspicuous in fame and splendour; and the pre-eminence of Rome itself was only derived from the relics of the apostles. The Hungarians appeared; Pavia was in flames; forty-three churches were consumed; and, after the massacre of the people, they spared about two hundred wretches, who had gathered some bushels of gold and silver (a vague exaggeration) from the smoking ruins of their country.

**A. D. 924.** In these annual excursions from the Alps to the neighbourhood of Rome and Capua, the churches, that yet escaped, resounded with a fearful litany:



“ O save and deliver us from the arrows of the  
 “ Hungarians ! ” But the faints were deaf or  
 inexorable; and the torrent rolled forwards, till  
 it was stopped by the extreme land of Calabria ”.  
 A composition was offered and accepted for the  
 head of each Italian subject; and ten bushels of  
 silver were poured forth in the Turkish camp. But  
 falsehood is the natural antagonist of violence;  
 and the robbers were defrauded both in the  
 numbers of the assessment and the standard of  
 the metal. On the side of the East the Hungarians  
 were opposed in doubtful conflict by the equal  
 arms of the Bulgarians, whose faith forbade an  
 alliance with the Pagans, and whose situation  
 formed the barrier of the Byzantine empire. The  
 barrier was overturned; the emperor of Constantinople beheld the waving banners of the Turks;  
 and one of their boldest warriors presumed to  
 strike a battle-axe into the golden gate. The arts  
 and treasures of the Greeks diverted the assault;  
 but the Hungarians might boast in their retreat,  
 that they had imposed a tribute on the spirit of  
 Bulgaria and the majesty of the Cæsars ”. The  
 remote and rapid operations of the same campaign, appear to magnify the power and numbers  
 of the Turks; but their courage is most deserving  
 of praise, since a light troop of three or  
 four hundred horse would often attempt and  
 execute the most daring inroads to the gates  
 of Thessalonica and Constantinople. At this  
 disastrous æra of the ninth and tenth centuries,  
 Europe was afflicted by a triple scourge from

C H A P.  
 LV.

A. D. 924.

CHAP. the North, the East, and the South: the Norman,  
 LV, the Hungarian, and the Saracen, sometimes trod  
 the same ground of desolation; and these savage  
 foes might have been compared by Homer to  
 the two lions growling over the carcase of a  
 mangled stag ".

Victory of  
 Henry the  
 Fowler,  
 A. D. 935.

The deliverance of Germany and Christendom  
 was atchieved by the Saxon princes, Henry  
 the Fowler and Otho the Great, who, in two  
 memorable battles, for ever broke the power of  
 the Hungarians ". The valiant Henry was  
 roused from a bed of sickness by the invasion of  
 his country: but his mind was vigorous and his  
 prudence successful. " My companions," said he  
 on the morning of the combat, " maintain your  
 " ranks, receive on your bucklers the first arrows  
 " of the Pagans, and prevent their second dis-  
 " charge by the equal and rapid career of your  
 " lances." They obeyed and conquered: and  
 the historical picture of the castle of Merseburgh,  
 expressed the features, or at least the character,  
 of Henry, who, in an age of ignorance, entrusted  
 to the finer arts the perpetuity of his name ".  
 At the end of twenty years, the children of the  
 Turks who had fallen by his sword invaded the  
 empire of his son; and their force is defined, in  
 the lowest estimate, at one hundred thousand  
 horse. They were invited by domestic faction;  
 the gates of Germany were treacherously unlocked,  
 and they spread far beyond the Rhine and the  
 Meuse, into the heart of Flanders. But the vigour  
 and prudence of Otho dispelled the conspiracy;

of Otho the  
 Great,  
 A. D. 955.

the princes were made sensible, that unless they were true to each other, their religion and country were irrecoverably lost; and the national powers were reviewed in the plains of Augsburgh. They marched and fought in eight legions, according to the division of provinces and tribes; the first, second, and third, were composed of Bavarians; the fourth of Franconians; the fifth of Saxons, under the immediate command of the monarch; the sixth and seventh consisted of Swabians; and the eighth legion, of a thousand Bohemians, closed the rear of the host. The resources of discipline and valour were fortified by the arts of superstition, which, on this occasion, may deserve the epithets of generous and salutary. The soldiers were purified with a fast; the camp was blessed with the relics of saints and martyrs; and the Christian hero girded on his side the sword of Constantine, grasped the invincible spear of Charlemagne, and waved the banner of St. Maurice, the præfect of the Thebæan legion. But his firmest confidence was placed in the holy lance<sup>1</sup>, whose point was fashioned of the nails of the cross, and which his father had extorted from the king of Burgundy, by the threats of war and the gift of a province. The Hungarians were expected in the front; they secretly passed the Lech, a river of Bavaria that falls into the Danube; turned the rear of the Christian army; plundered the baggage, and disordered the legions of Bohemia<sup>1</sup> and Swabia. The battle was restored by the Franconians,

- CHAP. whose duke, the valiant Conrad, was pierced  
 LV. with an arrow as he rested from his fatigues: the Saxons fought under the eyes of their king; and his victory surpassed, in merit and importance, the triumphs of the last two hundred years. The loss of the Hungarians was still greater in the flight than in the action; they were encompassed by the rivers of Bavaria; and their past cruelties excluded them from the hope of mercy. Three captive princes were hanged at Ratisbon, the multitude of prisoners was slain or mutilated; and the fugitives, who presumed to appear in the face of their country, were condemned to everlasting poverty and disgrace". Yet the spirit of the nation was humbled, and the most accessible passes of Hungary were fortified with a ditch and rampart. Adversity suggested the counsels of moderation and peace: the robbers of the West acquiesced in a sedentary life; and the next generation was taught by a discerning prince, that far more might be gained by multiplying and exchanging the produce of a fruitful soil. The native race, the Turkish or Fennic blood, was mingled with new colonies of Scythian or Sclavonian origin"; many thousands of robust and industrious captives had been imported from all the countries of Europe"; and after the marriage of Geisa with a Bavarian princess, he bestowed honours and estates on the nobles of Germany". The son of Geisa was invested with the regal title, and the house of Arpad reigned three hundred years in the
- A. D. 572.

kingdom of Hungary. But the freeborn Barbarians were not dazzled by the lustre of the diadem, and the people asserted their indefeatable right of choosing, deposing, and punishing the hereditary servant of the state. C H A P.  
LV.

III. The name of RUSSIANS " was first divulged, in the ninth century, by an embassy from Theophilus, emperor of the East, to the emperor of the West, Lewis, the son of Charlemagne. The Greeks were accompanied by the envoys of the great duke, or chagan, or czar, of the Russians. In their journey to Constantinople, they had traversed many hostile nations; and they hoped to escape the dangers of their return by requesting the French monarch to transport them by sea to their native country. A closer examination detected their origin: they were the brethren of the Swedes and Normans, whose name was already odious and formidable in France; and it might justly be apprehended that these Russian strangers were not the messengers of peace, but the emissaries of war. They were detained, while the Greeks were dismissed; and Lewis expected a more satisfactory account, that he might obey the laws of hospitality or prudence, according to the interest of both empires ". This Scandinavian origin of the people, or at least the princes, of Russia, may be confirmed and illustrated by the national annals " and the general history of the North. The Normans, who had so long been concealed by a veil of impenetrable darkness, suddenly

Origin of the Russian monarchy.  
A. D. 839.

C H A P. burst forth in the spirit of naval and military  
 LV. enterprize. The vast, and, as it is said, the

populous, regions of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, were crowded with independent chieftains and desperate adventurers, who sighed in the laziness of peace, and smiled in the agonies of death. Piracy was the exercise, the trade, the glory, and the virtue, of the Scandinavian youth. Impatient of a bleak climate and narrow limits, they started from the banquet, grasped their arms, sounded their horn, ascended their vessels, and explored every coast that promised either spoil or settlement. The Baltic was the first scene of their naval achievements; they visited the eastern shores, the silent residence of Fennic and Slavonian tribes, and the primitive Russians of the lake Ladoga paid a tribute, the skins of white squirrels, to these strangers, whom they saluted with the title of *Varangians* or Corsairs. Their superiority in arms, discipline, and renown, commanded the fear and reverence of the natives. In their wars against the more inland savages, the Varangians condescended to serve as friends and auxiliaries, and gradually, by choice or conquest, obtained the dominion of a people whom they were qualified to protect. Their tyranny was expelled, their valour was again recalled, till at length, Ruric, a Scandinavian chief, became the father of a dynasty which reigned above seven hundred years. His brothers extended his influence: the example of service and usurpation was imitated by his

A. D. 862.

companions in the southern provinces of Russia; and their establishments, by the usual methods of war and assassination, were cemented into the fabric of a powerful monarchy.

C H A P.

LV.

As long as the descendants of Ruric were considered as aliens and conquerors, they ruled by the sword of the Varangians, distributed estates and subjects to their faithful captains, and supplied their numbers with fresh streams of adventurers from the Baltic coast". But when the Scandinavian chiefs had struck a deep and permanent root into the soil, they mingled with the Russians in blood, religion, and language, and the first Waladimir had the merit of delivering his country from these foreign mercenaries. They had seated him on the throne; his riches were insufficient to satisfy their demands; but they listened to his pleasing advice, that they should seek, not a more grateful, but a more wealthy, master; that they should embark for Greece, where, instead of the skins of squirrels, silk and gold would be the recompence of their service. At the same time the Russian prince admonished his Byzantine ally to disperse and employ, to recompense and restrain, these impetuous children of the North. Contemporary writers have recorded the introduction, name, and character, of the *Varangians*: each day they rose in confidence and esteem; the whole body was assembled at Constantinople to perform the duty of guards; and their strength was recruited by a numerous band of their countrymen from

The Varan-  
gians of Con-  
stantinople.

CHAP. the island of Thule. On this occasion, the vague  
 LV. appellation of Thule is applied to England; and the new Varangians were a colony of English and Danes who fled from the yoke of the Norman conqueror. The habits of pilgrimage and piracy had approximated the countries of the earth; these exiles were entertained in the Byzantine court; and they preserved, till the last age of the empire, the inheritance of spotless loyalty, and the use of the Danish or English tongue. With their broad and double-edged battle-axes on their shoulders, they attended the Greek emperor to the temple, the senate, and the hippodrome; he slept and feasted under their trusty guard; and the keys of the palace, the treasury, and the capital, were held by the firm and faithful hands of the Varangians."

Geography  
 and trade of  
 Russia,  
 A. D. 950.

In the tenth century, the geography of Scythia was extended far beyond the limits of ancient knowledge; and the monarchy of the Russians obtains a vast and conspicuous place in the map of Constantine". The sons of Ruric were masters of the spacious province of Wolodomir, or Moscow; and, if they were confined on that side by the hords of the East, their western frontier in those early days was enlarged to the Baltic sea and the country of the Prussians. Their northern reign ascended above the sixtieth degree of latitude, over the Hyperborean regions, which fancy had peopled with monsters, or clouded with eternal darkness. To the south they followed the course of the Borysthenes, and



approached with that river the neighbourhood of the Euxine sea. The tribes that dwelt, or wandered, in this ample circuit were obedient to the same conqueror, and insensibly blended into the same nation. The language of Russia is a dialect of the Slavonian; but, in the tenth century, these two modes of speech were different from each other; and, as the Slavonian prevailed in the South, it may be presumed that the original Russians of the North, the primitive subjects of the Varangian chief, were a portion of the Fennic race. With the emigration, union, or dissolution, of the wandering tribes, the loose and indefinite picture of the Scythian desert has continually shifted. But the most ancient map of Russia affords some places which still retain their name and position; and the two capitals, Novogorod " and Kiow ", are coeval with the first age of the monarchy. Novogorod had not yet deserved the epithet of great, nor the alliance of the Hanseatic league, which diffused the streams of opulence and the principles of freedom. Kiow could not yet boast of three hundred churches, an innumerable people, and a degree of greatness and splendour, which was compared with Constantinople by those who had never seen the residence of the Cæsars. In their origin, the two cities were no more than camps or fairs, the most convenient stations in which the Barbarians might assemble for the occasional business of war or trade. Yet even these assemblies announce some progress in the

- CHAP. arts of society; a new breed of cattle was im-  
 LV. ported from the southern provinces; and the  
 spirit of commercial enterprise pervaded the sea  
 and land from the Baltic to the Euxine, from  
 the mouth of the Oder to the port of Constanti-  
 nople. In the days of idolatry and barbarism,  
 the Slavonic city of Julin was frequented and  
 enriched by the Normans, who had prudently  
 secured a free mart of purchase and exchange".  
 From this harbour, at the entrance of the Oder,  
 the corsair, or merchant, sailed in forty-three  
 days to the eastern shores of the Baltic, the most  
 distant nations were intermingled, and the holy  
 groves of Curland are said to have been decorated  
 with Grecian and Spanish gold". Between the  
 sea and Novogorod an easy intercourse was dis-  
 covered; in the summer, through a gulf, a lake,  
 and a navigable river; in the winter season,  
 over the hard and level surface of boundless  
 snows. From the neighbourhood of that city,  
 the Russians descended the streams that fall into  
 the Borysthènes; their canoes, of a single tree,  
 were laden with slaves of every age, furs of  
 every species, the spoil of their bee-hives, and  
 the hides of their cattle; and the whole produce  
 of the North was collected and discharged in the  
 magazines of Kiow. The month of June was  
 the ordinary season of the departure of the fleet:  
 the timber of the canoes was framed into the  
 oars and benches of more solid and capacious  
 boats; and they proceeded without obstacle down  
 the Borysthènes, as far as the seven or thirteen

ridges of rocks, which traverse the bed, and precipitate the waters, of the river. At the more shallow falls it was sufficient to lighten the vessels; but the deeper cataracts were impassable; and the mariners, who dragged their vessels and their slaves six miles over land, were exposed in this toilsome journey to the robbers of the desert". At the first island below the falls, the Russians celebrated the festival of their escape; at a second, near the mouth of the river, they repaired their shattered vessels for the longer and more perilous voyage of the Black Sea. If they steered along the coast, the Danube was accessible; with a fair wind they could reach in thirty-six or forty hours the opposite shores of Anatolia; and Constantinople admitted the annual visit of the strangers of the North. They returned at the stated season with a rich cargo of corn, wine, and oil, the manufactures of Greece, and the spices of India. Some of their countrymen resided in the capital and provinces; and the national treaties protected the persons, effects, and privileges, of the Russian merchant".

But the same communication which had been opened for the benefit, was soon abused for the injury, of mankind. In a period of one hundred and ninety years, the Russians made four attempts to plunder the treasures of Constantinople: the event was various, but the motive, the means, and the object, were the same in these naval expeditions". The Russian traders had seen the magnificence and tasted the luxury of

Naval expeditions of the Russians against Constantinople.

- CHAP. the city of the Cæsars. A marvellous tale, and  
 LV. a scanty supply, excited the desires of their savage  
 countrymen: they envied the gifts of nature  
 which their climate denied; they coveted the  
 works of art which they were too lazy to imitate  
 and too indigent to purchase: the Varangian  
 princes unfurled the banners of piratical adventure,  
 and their bravest soldiers were drawn from the  
 nations that dwelt in the northern isles of the  
 ocean". The image of their naval armaments  
 was revived in the last century, in the fleets of  
 the Cossacks, which issued from the Borysthènes,  
 to navigate the same seas, for a similar pur-  
 pose". The Greek appellation of *monoxyla*, or  
 single canoes, might be justly applied to the bot-  
 tom of their vessels. It was scooped out of the  
 long stem of a beech or willow, but the slight  
 and narrow foundation was raised and continued  
 on either side with planks, till it attained the  
 length of sixty, and the height of about twelve,  
 feet. These boats were built without a deck,  
 but with two rudders and a mast; to move with  
 sails and oars; and to contain from forty to  
 seventy men, with their arms, and provisions  
 of fresh water and salt fish. The first trial of the  
 Russians was made with two hundred boats;  
 but when the national force was exerted, they  
 might arm against Constantinople a thousand or  
 twelve hundred vessels. Their fleet was not  
 much inferior to the royal navy of Agamemnon,  
 but it was magnified in the eyes of fear to ten  
 or fifteen times the real proportion of its strength:  
 and

and numbers. Had the Greek emperors been endowed with foresight to discern, and vigour to prevent, perhaps they might have sealed with a maritime force the mouth of the Borysthenes. Their indolence abandoned the coast of Anatolia to the calamities of a piratical war, which, after an interval of six hundred years, again infested the Euxine; but as long as the capital was respected, the sufferings of a distant province escaped the notice both of the prince and the historian. The storm which had swept along from the Phasis and Trebizond, at length burst on the Bosphorus of Thrace; a streight of fifteen miles, in which the rude vessels of the Russian might have been stopped and destroyed by a more skilful adversary. In their first enterprise " under the princes of Kiow, they passed without opposition, and occupied the port of Constantinople in the absence of the emperor Michael, the son of Theophilus. Through a crowd of perils, he landed at the palace-stairs, and immediately repaired to a church of the Virgin Mary ". By the advice of the patriarch, her garment, a precious relic, was drawn from the sanctuary and dipped in the sea; and a seasonable tempest, which determined the retreat of the Russians, was devoutly ascribed to the mother of God ". The silence of the Greeks may inspire some doubt of the truth, or at least of the importance, of the second attempt by Oleg the guardian of the sons of Ruric ". A strong barrier of arms and fortifications

The first,  
A. D. 865.

The second,  
A. D. 903.

C H A P.  
LV.

The third,  
A. D. 541.

defended the Bosphorus: they were eluded by the usual expedient of drawing the boats over the isthmus; and this simple operation is described in the national chronicles, as if the Russian fleet had sailed over dry land with a brisk and favourable gale. The leader of the third armament, Igor, the son of Ruric, had chosen a moment of weakness and decay, when the naval powers of the empire were employed against the Saracens. But if courage be not wanting, the instruments of defence are seldom deficient. Fifteen broken and decayed galleys were boldly launched against the enemy; but instead of the single tube of Greek fire usually planted on the prow, the sides and stern of each vessel were abundantly supplied with that liquid combustible. The engineers were dextrous; the weather was propitious; many thousand Russians, who chose rather to be drowned than burnt, leaped into the sea; and those who escaped to the Thracian shore were inhumanly slaughtered by the peasants and soldiers. Yet one third of the canoes escaped into shallow water; and the next spring Igor was again prepared to retrieve his disgrace and claim his revenge". After a long peace, Jaroslaus, the great-grandson of Igor, resumed the same project of a naval invasion. A fleet, under the command of his son, was repulsed at the entrance of the Bosphorus by the same artificial flames. But in the rashness of pursuit the vanguard of the Greeks was encompassed by an irresistible multitude of boats and men; their provision of

The fourth,  
A. D. 1043.

fire was probably exhausted; and twenty-four galleys were either taken, sunk, or destroyed".

C H A P.

I.V.

Yet, the threats or calamities of a Russian war were more frequently diverted by treaty than by arms. In these naval hostilities, every disadvantage was on the side of the

Negotiations  
and prop-  
hecy.

Greeks: their savage enemy afforded no mercy; his poverty promised no spoil; his impenetrable retreat deprived the conqueror of the hopes of revenge; and the pride or weakness of empire indulged an opinion, that no honour could be gained or lost in the intercourse with Barbarians. At first their demands were high and inadmissible, three pounds of gold for each soldier or mariner of the fleet: the Russian youth adhered to the design of conquest and glory; but the counsels of moderation were recommended by the hoary sages. "Be content," they said, "with the liberal offers of Cæsar, is it not far better to obtain without a combat, the possession of gold, silver, silks, and all the objects of our desires? Are we sure of victory? Can we conclude a treaty with the sea? We do not tread on the land; we float on the abyss of water, and a common death hangs over our heads". The memory of these Arctic fleets that seemed to descend from the Polar circle, left a deep impression of terror on the Imperial city. By the vulgar of every rank, it was asserted and believed, that an equestrian statue in the square of Taurus, was secretly inscribed with a prophecy, how the Russians, in the last days,

CHAP. should become masters of Constantinople“. In  
 LV. our own time, a Russian armament, instead of sailing from the Borysthenes, has circumnavigated the continent of Europe; and the Turkish capital has been threatened by a squadron of strong and lofty ships of war, each of which, with its naval science and thundering artillery, could have sunk or scattered an hundred canoes such as those of their ancestors. Perhaps the present generation may yet behold the accomplishment of the prediction, of a rare prediction, of which the style is unambiguous and the date unquestionable.

Reign of  
 Swatoflaus,  
 A. D.  
 955—973.

By land the Russians were less formidable than by sea; and as they fought for the most part on foot, their irregular legions must often have been broken and overthrown by the cavalry of the Scythian hords. Yet their growing towns, however slight and imperfect, presented a shelter to the subject and a barrier to the enemy: the monarchy of Kiow, till a fatal partition, assumed the dominion of the North; and the nations from the Volga to the Danube were subdued or repelled by the arms of Swatoflaus“, the son of Igor, the son of Oleg, the son of Ruric. The vigour of his mind and body was fortified by the hardships of a military and savage life. Wrapt in a bear-skin, Swatoflaus usually slept on the ground, his head reclining on a saddle; his diet was coarse and frugal, and, like the heroes of Homer“, his meat (it was often horseflesh) was broiled or



roasted on the coals. The exercise of war gave stability and discipline to his army; and it may be presumed, that no soldier was permitted to transcend the luxury of his chief. By an embassy from Nicephorus, the Greek emperor, he was moved to undertake the conquest of Bulgaria, and a gift of fifteen hundred pounds of gold was laid at his feet to defray the expence, or reward the toils, of the expedition. An army of sixty thousand men was assembled and embarked; they sailed from the Borysthenes to the Danube; their landing was effected on the Mærian shore, and, after a sharp encounter, the swords of the Russians prevailed against the arrows of the Bulgarian horse. The vanquished king sunk into the grave; his children were made captive; and his dominions, as far as mount Hæmus, were subdued or ravaged by the northern invaders. But instead of relinquishing his prey, and performing his engagements, the Varangian prince was more disposed to advance than to retire; and, had his ambition been crowned with success, the seat of empire in that early period might have been transferred to a more temperate and fruitful climate. Swatoslaus enjoyed and acknowledged the advantages of his new position, in which he could unite, by exchange or rapine, the various productions of the earth. By an easy navigation he might draw from Russia the native commodities of furs, wax, and hydromel: Hungary supplied him with a breed of horses and the spoils of the West; and Greece abounded

CHAP. with gold, silver, and the foreign luxuries,  
 LV. which his poverty had affected to disdain. The  
 bands of Patzinacites, Chozars, and Turks, re-  
 paired to the standard of victory; and the am-  
 bassador of Nicephorus betrayed his trust, as-  
 sumed the purple, and promised to share with  
 his new allies the treasures of the Eastern world.  
 From the banks of the Danube the Russian  
 prince pursued his march as far as Adrianople;  
 a formal summons to evacuate the Roman pro-  
 vince was dismissed with contempt; and Swatof-  
 laus fiercely replied, that Constantinople might  
 soon expect the presence of an enemy and a  
 master.

His defeat  
 by John Zi-  
 misces,  
 A. D.  
 970—973.

Nicephorus could no longer expel the mischief  
 which he had introduced; but his throne and  
 wife were inherited by John Zimisces\*, who, in  
 a diminutive body, possessed the spirit and abili-  
 ties of an hero. The first victory of his lieuten-  
 ants deprived the Russians of their foreign al-  
 lies, twenty thousand of whom were either de-  
 stroyed by the sword, or provoked to revolt, or  
 tempted to desert. Thrace was delivered, but  
 seventy thousand Barbarians were still in arms;  
 and the legions that had been recalled from the  
 new conquests of Syria, prepared, with the  
 return of the spring, to march under the ban-  
 ners of a warlike prince, who declared himself  
 the friend and avenger of the injured Bulgaria.  
 The passes of mount Hæmus had been left  
 unguarded; they were instantly occupied; the  
 Roman vanguard was formed of the *inmortals* (a

proud imitation of the Persian style); the emperor led the main body of ten thousand five hundred foot; and the rest of his forces followed in slow and cautious array with the baggage and military engines. The first exploit of Zimisces was the reduction of Marcianopolis, or Peristh-laba<sup>70</sup>, in two days: the trumpets sounded; the walls were scaled; eight thousand five hundred Russians were put to the sword; and the sons of the Bulgarian king were rescued from an ignominious prison, and invested with a nominal diadem. After these repeated losses, Swatoslaus retired to the strong post of Drisra, on the banks of the Danube, and was pursued by an enemy who alternately employed the arms of celerity and delay. The Byzantine gallies ascended the river; the legions completed a line of circumvallation; and the Russian prince was encompassed, assaulted, and famished, in the fortifications of the camp and city. Many deeds of valour were performed; several desperate sallies were attempted; nor was it till after a siege of sixty-five days that Swatoslaus yielded to his adverse fortune. The liberal terms which he obtained announce the prudence of the victor, who respected the valour, and apprehended the despair, of an unconquered mind. The great duke of Russia bound himself by solemn imprecations to relinquish all hostile designs; a safe passage was opened for his return; the liberty of trade and navigation was restored; a measure of corn was distributed to each of his soldiers; and the allow-

ANCE of twenty-two thousand measures attests the loss and the remnant of the Barbarians. After a painful voyage, they again reached the mouth of the Borysthenes; but their provisions were exhausted; the season was unfavourable; they passed the winter on the ice; and, before they could prosecute their march, Swatoslaus was surprised and oppressed by the neighbouring tribes, with whom the Greeks entertained a perpetual and useful correspondence<sup>71</sup>. Far different was the return of Zimisces, who was received in his capital like Camillus or Marius, the saviours of ancient Rome. But the merit of the victory was attributed by the pious emperor to the mother of God; and the image of the Virgin Mary, with the divine infant in her arms, was placed on a triumphal car, adorned with the spoils of war and the ensigns of Bulgarian royalty. Zimisces made his public entry on horseback; the diadem on his head, a crown of laurel in his hand; and Constantinople was astonished to applaud the martial virtues of her sovereign<sup>72</sup>.

Conversion  
of Russia,  
A. D. 864.

Photius of Constantinople, a patriarch whose ambition was equal to his curiosity, congratulates himself and the Greek church on the conversion of the Russians<sup>73</sup>. Those fierce and bloody Barbarians had been persuaded by the voice of reason and religion, to acknowledge Jesus for their God, the Christian missionaries for their teachers, and the Romans for their friends and brethren. His triumph was transient and premature. In the various fortune of their

piratical adventures, some Russian chiefs might allow themselves to be sprinkled with the waters of baptism; and a Greek bishop with the name of metropolitan, might administer the sacraments in the church of Kiow, to a congregation of slaves and natives. But the seed of the Gospel was sown on a barren soil: many were the apostates, the converts were few; and the baptism of Olga may be fixed as the æra of Russian Christianity". A female, perhaps of the basest origin, who could revenge the death, and assume the sceptre, of her husband Igor, must have been endowed with those active virtues which command the fear and obedience of Barbarians. In a moment of foreign and domestic peace, she sailed from Kiow to Constantinople; and the emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus has described with minute diligence the ceremonial of her reception in his capital and palace. The steps, the titles, the salutations, the banquet, the presents, were exquisitely adjusted, to gratify the vanity of the stranger, with due reverence to the superior majesty of the purple". In the sacrament of baptism, she received the venerable name of the empress Helena; and her conversion might be preceded or followed by her uncle, two interpreters, sixteen damsels, of an higher, and eighteen of a lower rank, twenty-two domestics or ministers, and forty-four Russian merchants; who composed the retinue of the great princess Olga. After her return to Kiow and Novogorod, she firmly persisted in her new religion; but her labours in the

C H A P.

LV.

Baptism of  
Olga.

A. D. 955.

CHAP. propagation of the Gospel were not crowned  
 LV. with success; and both her family and nation  
 adhered with obstinacy or indifference to the gods  
 of their fathers. Her son Swatostlaus was apprehensive of the scorn and ridicule of his companions; and her grandson Wolodomir devoted his youthful zeal to multiply and decorate the monuments of ancient worship. The savage deities of the North were still propitiated with human sacrifices: in the choice of the victim, a citizen was preferred to a stranger; a Christian to an idolater; and the father, who defended his son from the sacerdotal knife, was involved in the same doom by the rage of a fanatic tumult. Yet the lessons and example of the pious Olga had made a deep, though secret, impression on the minds of the prince and people: the Greek missionaries continued to preach, to dispute, and to baptise; and the ambassadors or merchants of Russia compared the idolatry of the woods with the elegant superstition of Constantinople. They had gazed with admiration on the dome of St. Sophia; the lively pictures of saints and martyrs, the riches of the altar, the number and vestments of the priests, the pomp and order of the ceremonies; they were edified by the alternate succession of devout silence and harmonious song; nor was it difficult to persuade them, that a choir of angels descended each day from heaven to join in the devotion, of the Christians". But the conversion of Wolodomir was determined or hastened by his desire of a Roman bride. At

of Wolodomir,  
 A. D. 988.

the same time, and in the city of Cherfon, the rites of baptism and marriage were celebrated by the Christian pontiff: the city he restored to the emperor Basil, the brother of his spouse; but the brazen gates were transported, as it is said, to Novogorod, and erected before the first church as a trophy of his victory and faith". At his despotic command, Peroun, the god of thunder, whom he had so long adored, was dragged through the streets of Kiow; and twelve sturdy Barbarians battered with clubs, the misshapen image, which was indignantly cast into the waters of the Borysthenes. The edict of Wolodomir had proclaimed, that all who should refuse the rites of baptism would be treated as the enemies of God and their prince; and the rivers were instantly filled with many thousands of obedient Russians, who acquiesced in the truth and excellence of a doctrine which had been embraced by the great duke and his boyars. In the next generation, the relics of paganism were finally extirpated; but as the two brothers of Wolodomir had died without baptism, their bones were taken from the grave, and sanctified by an irregular and posthumous sacrament.

In the ninth, tenth, and eleventh centuries of Christianity of the North, the Christian æra, the reign of the gospel and of the church, was extended over Bulgaria, Hungary, Bohemia, Saxony, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Poland, and Russia". The triumphs of apostolic zeal were repeated in the iron age of Christianity; and the northern and eastern regions

A. D.  
800—1100.

CHAP. of Europe submitted to a religion, more different  
 LV. in theory than in practice, from the worship of  
 their native idols. A laudable ambition excited  
 the monks, both of Germany and Greece, to  
 visit the tents and huts of the Barbarians: poverty,  
 hardships, and dangers, were the lot of the first  
 missionaries; their courage was active and patient;  
 their motive pure and meritorious; their present  
 reward consisted in the testimony of their consci-  
 ence and the respect of a grateful people; but the  
 fruitful harvest of their toils was inherited and  
 enjoyed by the proud and wealthy prelates of  
 succeeding times. The first conversions were free  
 and spontaneous: an holy life and an eloquent  
 tongue were the only arms of the missionaries;  
 but the domestic fables of the Pagans were silenced  
 by the miracles and visions of the strangers; and  
 the favourable temper of the chiefs was accelerated  
 by the dictates of vanity and interest. The leaders  
 of nations, who were saluted with the titles of  
 kings and saints", held it lawful and pious to  
 impose the Catholic faith on their subjects and  
 neighbours: the coast of the Baltic, from Holstein  
 to the gulf of Finland; was invaded under the  
 standard of the cross; and the reign of idolatry  
 was closed by the conversion of Lithuania in the  
 fourteenth century. Yet truth and candour must  
 acknowledge, that the conversion of the North  
 imparted many temporal benefits both to the old  
 and the new Christians. The rage of war, in-  
 herent to the human species, could not be healed  
 by the evangelic precepts of charity and peace;



and the ambition of Catholic princes has renewed in every age the calamities of hostile contention. But the admission of the Barbarians into the pale of civil and ecclesiastical society delivered Europe from the depredations, by sea and land, of the Normans, the Hungarians, and the Russians, who learned to spare their brethren and cultivate their possessions". The establishment of law and order was promoted by the influence of the clergy; and the rudiments of art and science were introduced into the savage countries of the globe. The liberal piety of the Russian princes engaged in their service the most skilful of the Greeks, to decorate the cities and instruct the inhabitants: the dome and the paintings of St. Sophia were rudely copied in the churches of Kiow and Novogorod: the writings of the fathers were translated into the Sclavonic idiom; and three hundred noble youths were invited or compelled to attend the lessons of the college of Jaroslaus. It should appear that Russia might have derived an early and rapid improvement from her peculiar connection with the church and state of Constantinople, which in that age so justly despised the ignorance of the Latins. But the Byzantine nation was servile, solitary, and verging to an hasty decline: after the fall of Kiow, the navigation of the Borysthenes was forgotten, the great princes of Wologdomir and Moscow were separated from the sea and Christendom; and the divided monarchy was oppressed by the ignominy and blindness of

- CHAP. Tartar servitude". The Slavonic and Scandinavian kingdoms, which had been converted by the Latin missionaries, were exposed, it is true, to the spiritual jurisdiction and temporal claims of the popes"; but they were united, in language and religious worship, with each other, and with Rome; they imbibed the free and generous spirit of the European republic, and gradually shared the light of knowledge which arose on the western world.

## CHAP. LVI.

*The Saracens, Franks, and Greeks, in Italy. — First Adventures and Settlement of the Normans. — Character and Conquests of Robert Guiscard, Duke of Apulia. — Deliverance of Sicily by his Brother Roger. — Victories of Robert over the Emperors of the East and West. — Roger, King of Sicily, invades Africa and Greece. — The Emperor Manuel Comnenus. — Wars of the Greeks and Normans. — Extinction of the Normans.*

THE three great nations of the world; the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Franks, encountered each other on the theatre of Italy'. The southern provinces, which now compose the kingdom of Naples, were subject, for the most part, to the Lombard dukes and princes of Beneventum<sup>2</sup>; so powerful in war, that they checked for a moment the genius of Charlemagne; so liberal in peace, that they maintained in their capital an academy of thirty-two philosophers and grammarians. The division of this flourishing state produced the rival principalities of Benevento, Salerno, and Capua; and the thoughtless ambition or revenge of the competitors invited the Saracens to the ruin of their common inheritance. During a calamitous period of two hundred years, Italy was exposed to a repetition of wounds, which the invaders were not

CHAP.  
LVI.

Consist of  
the Saracens,  
Latins, and  
Greeks, in  
Italy,

A. D.  
840—1017.

CHAP. LVI. capable of healing by the union and tranquillity of a perfect conquest. Their frequent and almost annual squadrons issued from the port of Palermo, and were entertained with too much indulgence by the Christians of Naples: the more formidable fleets were prepared on the African coast; and even the Arabs of Andalusia were sometimes tempted to assist or oppose the Moslems of an adverse sect. In the revolution of human events, a new ambuscade was concealed in the Caudine forks, the fields of Cannæ were bedewed a second time with the blood of the Africans, and the sovereign of Rome again attacked or defended the walls of Capua and Tarentum. A colony of Saracens had been planted at Bari, which commands the entrance of the Adriatic Gulf; and their impartial depredations provoked the resentment, and conciliated the union, of the two emperors. An offensive alliance was concluded between Basil the Macedonian, the first of his race, and Lewis, the great-grandson of Charlemagne; and each party supplied the deficiencies of his associate. It would have been imprudent in the Byzantine monarch to transport his stationary troops of Asia to an Italian campaign; and the Latin arms would have been insufficient, if his superior navy had not occupied the mouth of the Gulf. The fortress of Bari was invested by the infantry of the Franks, and by the cavalry and galleys of the Greeks; and, after a defence of four years, the Arabian emir submitted to the clemency of Lewis, who commanded

commanded in person the operations of the siege. C H A P.  
 This important conquest had been atchieved by LVI.  
 the concord of the East and West; but their Conquest of  
 recent amity was soon embittered by the mutual Bari,  
 complaints of jealousy and pride. The Greeks A. D. 871.  
 assumed as their own the merit of the conquest  
 and the pomp of the triumph; extolled the great-  
 ness of their powers, and affected to deride  
 the intemperance and sloth of the handful of  
 Barbarians who appeared under the banners of  
 the Carlovingian prince. His reply is expressed  
 with the eloquence of indignation and truth:  
 “ We confess the magnitude of your prepara-  
 “ tions,” says the great grandson of Charlemagne.  
 “ Your armies were indeed as numerous as a  
 “ cloud of summer locusts, who darken the day,  
 “ flap their wings, and, after a short flight,  
 “ tumble weary and breathless to the ground.  
 “ Like them, ye sunk after a feeble effort; ye  
 “ were vanquished by your own cowardice;  
 “ and withdrew from the scene of action to in-  
 “ jure and despoil our Christian subjects of the  
 “ Slavonian coast. We were few in number,  
 “ and why were we few? because, after a  
 “ tedious expectation of your arrival, I had dis-  
 “ missed my host, and retained only a chosen  
 “ band of warriors to continue the blockade of  
 “ the city. If they indulged their hospitable  
 “ feasts in the face of danger and death, did  
 “ these feasts abate the vigour of their enterprise?  
 “ Is it by your fasting, that the walls of Bari  
 “ have been overturned? Did not these valiant

CHAP.

LVI.

“ Franks, diminished as they were by languor  
 “ and fatigue, intercept and vanquish the three  
 “ most powerful emirs of the Saracens? and did  
 “ not their defeat precipitate the fall of the city?  
 “ Bari is now fallen; Tarentum trembles; Cala-  
 “ bria will be delivered; and, if we command  
 “ the sea, the island of Sicily may be rescued  
 “ from the hands of the infidels. My brother (a  
 “ name most offensive to the vanity of the Greeks),  
 “ accelerate your naval succours, respect your  
 “ allies, and distrust your flatterers.”

New pro-  
 vince of the  
 Greeks in  
 Italy.  
 A. D. 890.

These lofty hopes were soon extinguished by the death of Lewis, and the decay of the Carolingian house; and whoever might deserve the honour, the Greek emperors, Basil, and his son Leo, secured the advantage, of the reduction of Bari. The Italians of Apulia and Calabria were persuaded or compelled to acknowledge their supremacy, and an ideal line from mount Garganus to the bay of Salerno, leaves the far greater part of the kingdom of Naples under the dominion of the Eastern empire. Beyond that line, the dukes or republics of Amalphi<sup>1</sup> and Naples, who had never forfeited their voluntary allegiance, rejoiced in the neighbourhood of their lawful sovereign; and Amalphi was enriched by supplying Europe with the produce and manufactures of Asia. But the Lombard princes of Benevento, Salerno, and Capua<sup>2</sup>, were reluctantly torn from the communion of the Latin world, and too often violated their oaths of servitude and tribute. The city of Bari rose to

dignity and wealth, as the metropolis of the new theme or province of Lombardy; the title of patrician, and afterwards the singular name of *Catapan*, was assigned to the supreme governor; and the policy both of the church and state was modelled in exact subordination to the throne of Constantinople. As long as the sceptre was disputed by the princes of Italy; their efforts were feeble and adverse; and the Greeks resisted or eluded the forces of Germany, which descended from the Alps under the Imperial standard of the Othos. The first and greatest of those Saxon princes was compelled to relinquish the siege of Bari: the second, after the loss of his stoutest bishops and barons, escaped with honour from the bloody field of Crotona. On that day the scale of war was turned against the Franks by the valour of the Saracens. These corsairs had indeed been driven by the Byzantine fleets from the fortresses and coasts of Italy; but a sense of interest was more prevalent than superstition or resentment; and the caliph of Egypt had transported forty thousand Moslems to the aid of his Christian ally. The successors of Basil amused themselves with the belief, that the conquest of Lombardy had been achieved; and was still preserved, by the justice of their laws, the virtues of their ministers, and the gratitude of a people whom they had rescued from anarchy and oppression. A series of rebellions might dare a ray of truth into the palace of Constantinople; and the illusions of flattery were dispelled by

Defeat of  
Otho III.  
A. D. 937

C H A P. the easy and rapid success of the Norman ad-  
 LVI. venturers.

Anecdotes.

The revolution of human affairs had produced in Apulia and Calabria, a melancholy contrast between the age of Pythagoras and the tenth century of the Christian æra. At the former period, the coast of Great Greece (as it was then styled) was planted with free and opulent cities: these cities were peopled with soldiers, artists, and philosophers; and the military strength of Tarentum, Sybaris, or Crotona, was not inferior to that of a powerful kingdom. At the second æra, these once flourishing provinces were clouded with ignorance, impoverished by tyranny, and depopulated by Barbarian war; nor can we severely accuse the exaggeration of a contemporary, that a fair and ample district was reduced to the same desolation which had covered the earth after the general deluge\*. Among the hostilities of the Arabs, the Franks, and the Greeks, in the southern Italy, I shall select two or three anecdotes expressive of their national manners. 1. It was the amusement of the Saracens to profane, as well as to pillage, the monasteries and churches. At the siege of Salerno, a Musulman chief spread his couch on the communion-table, and on that altar sacrificed each night the virginity of a Christian nun. As he wrestled with a reluctant maid, a beam in the roof was accidentally or dextrously thrown down on his head; and the death of the lustful emir was imputed to the wrath of Christ, which was at

A. D. 873.



length awakened to the defence of his faithful spouse ". 2. The Saracens besieged the cities of Beneventum and Capua; after a vain appeal to the successors of Charlemagne, the Lombards implored the clemency and aid of the Greek emperor ". A fearless citizen dropt from the walls, passed the intrenchments, accomplished his commission, and fell into the hands of the Barbarians, as he was returning with the welcome news. They commanded him to assist their enterprise, and deceive his countrymen with the assurance that wealth and honours should be the reward of his falsehood, and that his sincerity would be punished with immediate death. He affected to yield, but as soon as he was conducted within hearing of the Christians on the rampart, " Friends and brethren," he cried with a loud voice, " be bold and patient, maintain the city; " your sovereign is informed of your distress, " and your deliverers are at hand. I know my " doom, and commit my wife and children to " your gratitude. " The rage of the Arabs confirmed his evidence; and the self-devoted patriot was transpierced with an hundred spears. He deserves to live in the memory of the virtuous, but the repetition of the same story in ancient and modern times, may sprinkle some doubts on the reality of this generous deed ". 3. The recital of the third incident may provoke a smile amidst the horrors of war. Theobald, marquis of Camerino and Spoleto "; supported the rebels of Beneventum; and his wanton cruelty was not

C H A P.

LVI.

A. D. 874.

A. D. 930.

CHAP. incompatible in that age with the character of  
 LVI. an hero, His captives of the Greek nation or  
 party, were castrated without mercy, and the  
 outrage was aggravated by a cruel jest, that he  
 wished to present the emperor with a supply of  
 eunuchs, the most precious ornaments of the  
 Byzantine court. The garrison of a castle had  
 been defeated in a sally, and the prisoners were  
 sentenced to the customary operation. But the  
 sacrifice was disturbed by the intrusion of a  
 frantic female, who, with bleeding cheeks, dishevel-  
 led hair, and importunate clamours, compelled  
 the marquis to listen to her complaint. "Is it  
 thus," she cried, "ye magnanimous heroes,  
 that ye wage war against women, against  
 women who have never injured ye, and whose  
 only arms are the distaff and the loom?"  
 Theobald denied the charge, and protested,  
 that, since the Amazons, he had never heard  
 of a female war. "And how," she furiously  
 exclaimed, "can you attack us more directly,  
 how can you wound us in a more vital part,  
 than by robbing our husbands of what we  
 most dearly cherish, the source of our joys  
 and the hope of our posterity? The plunder  
 of our flocks and herds I have endured without  
 a murmur, but this fatal injury, this irreparable  
 loss, subdues my patience, and calls aloud on  
 the justice of heaven and earth." A general  
 laugh applauded her eloquence; the savage  
 Franks, inaccessible to pity, were moved by  
 her ridiculous, yet rational, despair; and with

the deliverance of the captives, she obtained the restitution of her effects. As she returned in triumph to the castle, she was overtaken by a messenger, to enquire, in the name of Theobald, what punishment should be inflicted on her husband, were he again taken in arms? "Should such," she answered without hesitation, "be his guilt and misfortune, he has eyes, and a nose, and hands, and feet. These are his own, and these he may deserve to forfeit by his personal offences. But let my lord be pleased to spare what his little handmaid presumes to claim as her peculiar and lawful property."

The establishment of the Normans in the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily<sup>11</sup>; is an event most romantic in its origin, and in its consequences most important both to Italy and the Eastern empire. The broken provinces of the Greeks, Lombards, and Saracens, were exposed to every invader, and every sea and land were invaded by the adventurous spirit of the Scandinavian pirates. After a long indulgence of rapine and slaughter, a fair and ample territory was accepted, occupied, and named, by the Normans of France; they renounced their gods for the God of the Christians<sup>12</sup>; and the dukes of Normandy acknowledged themselves the vassals of the successors of Charlemagne and Capet. The savage fierceness which they had brought from the snowy mountains of Norway, was refined, without being corrupted, in a warmer climate, the companions of Rollo insensibly mingled with

CHAP.  
LVI.

Origin of the  
Normans in  
Italy,  
A. D. 1016.

CHAP. the natives; they imbibed the manners, lan-  
 LVI. guage", and gallantry, of the French nation; and, in a martial age, the Normans might claim the palm of valour and glorious achievements. Of the fashionable superstitions, they embraced with ardour the pilgrimages of Rome, Italy, and the Holy Land. In this active devotion, their minds and bodies were invigorated by exercise: danger was the incentive, novelty the recompence: and the prospect of the world was decorated by wonder, credulity, and ambitious hope. They confederated for their mutual defence; and the robbers of the Alps who had been allured by the garb of a pilgrim, were often chastised by the arm of a warrior. In one of these pious visits to the cavern of mount Garganus in Apulia, which had been sanctified by the apparition of the archangel Michael", they were accosted by a stranger in the Greek habit, but who soon revealed himself as a rebel, a fugitive, and a mortal foe of the Greek empire. His name was Melo; a noble citizen of Bari, who, after an unsuccessful revolt, was compelled to seek new allies and avengers of his country. The bold appearance of the Normans revived his hopes and solicited his confidence: they listened to the complaints, and still more to the promises, of the patriot. The assurance of wealth demonstrated the justice of his cause; and they viewed as the inheritance of the brave, the fruitful land which was oppressed by effeminate tyrants. On their return to Normandy, they kindled a spark of

enterprize; and a small but intrepid band was freely associated for the deliverance of Apulia. They passed the Alps by separate roads, and in the disguise of pilgrims; but in the neighbourhood of Rome they were saluted by the chief of Bari, who supplied the more indigent with arms and horses, and instantly led them to the field of action. In the first conflict, their valour prevailed; but in the second engagement they were overwhelmed by the numbers and military engines of the Greeks, and indignantly retreated with their faces to the enemy. The unfortunate Melo ended his life, a suppliant at the court of Germany: his Norman followers, excluded from their promised land, wandered among the hills and vallies of Italy, and earned their daily subsistence by the sword. To that formidable sword, the princes of Capua, Beneventum, Salerno, and Naples, alternately appealed in their domestic quarrels; the superior spirit and discipline of the Normans gave victory to the side which they espoused; and their cautious policy observed the balance of power, lest the preponderance of any rival state should render their aid less important and their service less profitable. Their first asylum was a strong camp in the depth of the marshes of Campania; but they were soon endowed by the liberality of the duke of Naples with a more plentiful and permanent seat. Eight miles from his residence, as a bulwark against Capua, the town of Averſa was built and fortified for their use; and they enjoyed as their own, the corn

Foundation  
of Averſa.  
A. D. 1029.

G H A P.  
LVI.

and fruits, the meadows and groves, of that fertile district. The report of their success attracted every year new swarms of pilgrims and soldiers: the poor were urged by necessity; the rich were excited by hope; and the brave and active spirits of Normandy were impatient of ease and ambitious of renown. The independent standard of Aversa afforded shelter and encouragement to the outlaws of the province, to every fugitive who had escaped from the injustice or justice of his superiors; and these foreign associates were quickly assimilated in manners and language to the Gallic colony. The first leader of the Normans was count Rainulf; and in the origin of society, pre-eminence of rank is the reward and the proof of superior merit".

The Nor-  
mans serve  
in Sicily.  
A. D. 1038.

Since the conquest of Sicily by the Arabs, the Grecian emperors had been anxious to regain that valuable possession; but their efforts, however strenuous, had been opposed by the distance and the sea. Their costly armaments, after a gleam of success, added new pages of calamity and disgrace to the Byzantine annals: twenty thousand of their best troops were lost in a single expedition; and the victorious Moslems derided the policy of a nation, which entrusted eunuchs not only with the custody of their women but with the command of their men". After a reign of two hundred years, the Saracens were ruined by their divisions". The emir disclaimed the authority of the king of Tunis; the people rose against the emir; the cities were usurped by the

chiefs; each meaner rebel was independent in his village or castle; and the weaker of two rival brothers implored the friendship of the Christians. In every service of danger the Normans were prompt and useful; and five hundred *knights*, or warriors on horseback, were enrolled by Arduin, the agent and interpreter of the Greeks, under the standard of Maniaces governor of Lombardy. Before their landing, the brothers were reconciled; the union of Sicily and Africa was restored; and the island was guarded to the water's edge. The Normans led the van, and the Arabs of Messina felt the valour of an untried foe. In a second action the emir of Syracuse was unhorsed and transfierced by the *iron arm* of William of Hauteville. In a third engagement his intrepid companions discomfited the host of sixty thousand Saracens, and left the Greeks no more than the labour of the pursuit: a splendid victory; but of which the pen of the historian may divide the merit with the lance of the Normans. It is, however, true that they essentially promoted the success of Maniaces, who reduced thirteen cities and the greater part of Sicily under the obedience of the emperor. But his military fame was sullied by ingratitude and tyranny. In the division of the spoil, the deserts of his brave auxiliaries were forgotten; and neither their avarice nor their pride could brook this injurious treatment. They complained, by the mouth of their interpreter; their complaint was disregarded; their interpreter was scourged; the sufferings were *his*; the

CHAP. insult and resentment belonged to *those* whose  
LVI. sentiments he had delivered. Yet they dissembled  
till they had obtained, or stolen, a safe passage  
to the Italian continent: their brethren of Averfa  
sympathised in their indignation, and the pro-  
vince of Apulia was invaded as the forfeit of the  
debt<sup>22</sup>. Above twenty years after the first emi-  
gration, the Normans took the field with  
no more than seven hundred horse and five  
hundred foot; and after the recall of the Byzan-  
tine legions<sup>23</sup> from the Sicilian war, their  
numbers are magnified to the amount of three-  
score thousand men. Their herald proposed the  
option of battle or retreat; "of battle," was  
the unanimous cry of the Normans; and one of  
their stoutest warriors, with a stroke of his fist,  
felled to the ground the horse of the Greek  
messenger. He was dismissed with a fresh horse;  
the insult was concealed from the Imperial troops;  
but in two successive battles they were more  
fatally instructed of the prowess of their adver-  
saries. In the plains of Cannæ, the Asiatics fled  
before the adventurers of France; the duke of  
Lombardy was made prisoner; the Apulians  
acquiesced in a new dominion; and the four  
places of Bari, Otranto, Brundisium, and Taren-  
tum, were alone saved in the shipwreck of the  
Grecian fortunes. From this æra we may date the  
establishment of the Norman power, which soon  
eclipsed the infant colony of Averfa. Twelve  
counts<sup>24</sup> were chosen by the popular suffrage;  
and age, birth, and merit, were the motives of

Their con-  
quest of Apu-  
lia,

A. D.

1040—1043.



their choice. The tributes of their peculiar districts were appropriated to their use; and each count erected a fortress in the midst of his lands, and at the head of his vassals. In the centre of the province, the common habitation of Melphi was reserved as the metropolis and citadel of the republic; an house and separate quarter was allotted to each of the twelve counts; and the national concerns were regulated by this military senate. The first of his peers, their president and general, was entitled count of Apulia; and this dignity was conferred on William of the iron arm, who, in the language of the age, is styled a lion in battle, a lamb in society, and an angel in council". The manners of his countrymen are fairly delineated by a contemporary and national historian ". "The Normans," says Malaterra, "are a cunning and revengeful people; eloquence and dissimulation appear to be their hereditary qualities: they can stoop to flatter; but unless they are curbed by the restraint of law, they indulge the licentiousness of nature and passion. Their princes affect the praise of popular munificence; the people observe the medium, or rather blend the extremes, of avarice and prodigality; and, in their eager thirst of wealth and dominion, they despise whatever they possess, and hope whatever they desire. Arms and horses, the luxury of dress, the exercises of hunting and hawking", are the delight of the Normans; but, on pressing occasions, they can endure with incredible patience the inclemency of every climate, and the toil and abstinence of a military life". "

Character of  
the Normans.

CHAPTER. The Normans of Apulia were seated on the

LVI. verge of the two empires; and, according to  
 Oppression of, the policy of the hour, they accepted the investiture of their lands from the sovereigns of Germany or Constantinople. But the firmest title of these adventurers was the right of conquest: they neither loved nor trusted; they were neither trusted nor beloved: the contempt of the princes was mixed with fear, and the fear of the natives was mingled with hatred and resentment. Every object of desire, an horse; a woman, a garden, tempted and gratified the rapaciousness of the strangers<sup>19</sup>; and the avarice of their chiefs was only coloured by the more specious names of ambition and glory. The twelve counts were sometimes joined in a league of injustice: in their domestic quarrels they disputed the spoils of the people: the virtues of William were buried in his grave; and Drogo, his brother and successor, was better qualified to lead the valour, than to restrain the violence, of his peers. Under the reign of Constantine Monomachus, the policy, rather than benevolence, of the Byzantine court attempted to relieve Italy from this adherent mischief, more grievous than a flight of Barbarians<sup>20</sup>; and Argyrus, the son of Melo, was invested for this purpose with the most lofty titles<sup>21</sup> and the most ample commission. The memory of his father might recommend him to the Normans; and he had already engaged their voluntary service to quell the revolt of Maniaces, and to avenge their own and the public

injury. It was the design of Constantine to transplant this warlike colony from the Italian provinces to the Persian war; and the son of Melo distributed among the chiefs the gold and manufactures of Greece, as the first fruits of the Imperial bounty. But his arts were baffled by the sense and spirit of the conquerors of Apulia: his gifts, or at least his proposals, were rejected; and they unanimously refused to relinquish their possessions and their hopes for the distant prospect of Asiatic fortune. After the means of persuasion had failed, Argyrus resolved to compel or to destroy: the Latin powers were solicited against the common enemy; and an offensive alliance was formed of the pope, and the two emperors of the East and West. The throne of St. Peter was occupied by Leo the ninth, a simple saint<sup>1</sup>, of a temper most apt to deceive himself and the world, and whose venerable character would consecrate with the name of piety, the measures least compatible with the practice of religion. His humanity was affected by the complaints, perhaps the calumnies, of an injured people: the impious Normans had interrupted the payment of tithes; and the temporal sword might be lawfully unsheathed against the sacrilegious robbers, who were deaf to the censures of the church. As a German of noble birth and royal kindred, Leo had free access to the court and confidence of the emperor Henry the third; and in search of arms and allies, his ardent zeal transported him from Apulia to Saxony, from the Elbe to the Tiber. During

C H A P.

LVI.

League of  
the pope and  
the two em-  
pires.

A. D.

1049—1054.

CHAP. these hostile preparations, Argyrus indulged  
 LVI. himself in the use of secret and guilty weapons:  
 a crowd of Normans became the victims of public  
 A. D. 1051. or private revenge; and the valiant Drogo was  
 murdered in a church. But his spirit survived in  
 his brother Humphrey, the third count of Apu-  
 lia. The assassins were chastised; and the son  
 of Melo, overthrown and wounded, was driven  
 from the field to hide his shame behind the walls  
 of Bari, and to await the tardy succour of his  
 allies.

Expedition  
 of pope  
 Leo IX.  
 against the  
 Normans,  
 A. D. 1053.

But the power of Constantine was distracted  
 by a Turkish war; the mind of Henry was feeble  
 and irresolute; and the pope, instead of repassing  
 the Alps with a German army, was accompanied  
 only by a guard of seven hundred Swabians and  
 some volunteers of Lorraine. In his long pro-  
 gress from Mantua to Beneventum, a vile and  
 promiscuous multitude of Italians was enlisted  
 under the holy standard<sup>11</sup>: the priest and the  
 robber slept in the same tent; the pikes and cro-  
 ses were intermingled in the front; and the mar-  
 tial saint repeated the lessons of his youth in the  
 order of march, of encampment, and of combat.  
 The Normans of Apulia could muster in the field  
 no more than three thousand horse, with an  
 handful of infantry: the defection of the natives  
 intercepted their provisions and retreat; and their  
 spirit, incapable of fear, was chilled for a mo-  
 ment by superstitious awe. On the hostile ap-  
 proach of Leo, they knelt without disgrace or  
 reluctance before their spiritual father. But the  
 pope

pope was inexorable; his lofty Germans affected  
 to deride the diminutive stature of their adver-  
 saries; and the Normans were informed that  
 death or exile was their only alternative. Flight  
 they disdained, and, as many of them had been  
 three days without tasting food, they embraced  
 the assurance of a more easy and honourable death.  
 They climbed the hill of Civitella, descended  
 into the plain, and charged in three divisions the  
 army of the pope. On the left, and in the cen-  
 tre, Richard count of Averfa, and Robert the  
 famous Guiscard, attacked, broke, routed, and  
 pursued the Italian multitudes, who fought with-  
 out discipline and fled without shame. A harder  
 trial was reserved for the valour of count  
 Humphrey, who led the cavalry of the right  
 wing. The Germans have been described  
 as unskilful in the management of the horse  
 and lance: but on foot they formed a strong and  
 impenetrable phalanx; and neither man, nor steed,  
 nor armour, could resist the weight of their long  
 and two-handed swords. After a severe con-  
 flict, they were encompassed by the squadrons  
 returning from the pursuit; and died in their  
 ranks with the esteem of their foes, and the  
 satisfaction of revenge. The gates of Civitella  
 were shut against the flying pope, and he was  
 overtaken by the pious conquerors, who kissed  
 his feet to implore his blessing and the absolution  
 of their sinful victory. The soldiers beheld in  
 their enemy and captive, the vicar of Christ;  
 and, though we may suppose the policy of the

His defeat  
 and captivity,  
 June 18.

CHAP.  
LVI.

Origin of the  
papal investitures to the  
Normans.

chiefs, it is probable that they were infected by the popular superstition. In the calm of retirement, the well-meaning pope deplored the effusion of Christian blood, which must be imputed to his account: he felt, that he had been the author of sin and scandal; and as his undertaking had failed, the indecency of his military character was universally condemned<sup>11</sup>. With these dispositions, he listened to the offers of a beneficial treaty; deserted an alliance which he had preached as the cause of God; and ratified the past and future conquests of the Normans. By whatever hand they had been usurped, the provinces of Apulia and Calabria were a part of the donation of Constantine and the patrimony of St. Peter: the grant and the acceptance confirmed the mutual claims of the pontiff and the adventurers. They promised to support each other with spiritual and temporal arms; a tribute or quit-rent of twelve-pence was afterwards stipulated for every plough-land; and since this memorable transaction; the kingdom of Naples has remained above seven hundred years a fief of the Holy See<sup>12</sup>.

Birth and  
character of  
Robert Guiscard.

A. D.  
1020—1085.

The pedigree of Robert Guiscard<sup>13</sup> is variously deduced from the peasants and the dukes of Normandy: from the peasants, by the pride and ignorance of a Grecian princess<sup>14</sup>; from the dukes, by the ignorance and flattery of the Italian subjects<sup>15</sup>. His genuine descent may be ascribed to the second or middle order of private nobility<sup>16</sup>. He sprang from a race of *valvassors*

or *bannerets*, of the diocese of Coutances, in the lower Normandy: the castle of Hauteville was their honourable seat; his father Tancred was conspicuous in the court and army of the duke; and his military service was furnished by ten soldiers or knights. Two marriages, of a rank not unworthy of his own, made him the father of twelve sons, who were educated at home by the impartial tenderness of his second wife. But a narrow patrimony was insufficient for this numerous and daring progeny; they saw around the neighbourhood the mischiefs of poverty and discord, and resolved to seek in foreign wars a more glorious inheritance. Two only remained to perpetuate the race, and cherish their father's age: their ten brothers, as they successively attained the vigour of manhood, departed from the castle, passed the Alps, and joined the Apulian camp of the Normans. The elder were prompted by native spirit; their success encouraged their younger brethren; and the three first in seniority, William, Drogo, and Humphrey, deserved to be the chiefs of their nation and the founders of the new republic. Robert was the eldest of the seven sons of the second marriage; and even the reluctant praise of his foes has endowed him with the heroic qualities of a soldier and a statesman. His lofty stature surpassed the tallest of his army: his limbs were cast in the true proportion of strength and gracefulness; and to the decline of life, he maintained the patient vigour of health and the commanding dignity of his form. His complexion was ruddy, his

CHAPTER  
LVI

shoulders were broad, his hair and beard were long and of a flaxen colour, his eyes sparkled with fire, and his voice, like that of Achilles, could impress obedience and terror amidst the tumult of battle. In the ruder ages of chivalry, such qualifications are not below the notice of the poet or historian: they may observe that Robert, at once, and with equal dexterity, could wield in the right-hand his sword, his lance in the left; that in the battle of Civitella, he was thrice unhorsed; and that in the close of that memorable day he was adjudged to have borne away the price of valour from the warriors of the two armies". His boundless ambition was founded on the consciousness of superior worth: in the pursuit of greatness, he was never arrested by the scruples of justice, and seldom moved by the feelings of humanity: though not insensible of fame, the choice of open or clandestine means was determined only by his present advantage. The surname of *Guiscard*" was applied to this master of political wisdom, which is too often confounded with the practice of dissimulation and deceit; and Robert is praised by the Apulian poet for excelling the cunning of Ulysses and the eloquence of Cicero. Yet these arts were disguised by an appearance of military frankness: in his highest fortune, he was accessible and courteous to his fellow-soldiers; and while he indulged the prejudices of his new subjects, he affected in his dress and manners to maintain the ancient fashion of his country. He grasped with



a rapacious, that he might distribute with a liberal hand: his primitive indigence had taught the habits of frugality; the gain of a merchant was not below his attention; and his prisoners were tortured with slow and unfeeling cruelty to force a discovery of their secret treasure. According to the Greeks, he departed from Normandy with only five followers on horseback and thirty on foot; yet even this allowance appears too bountiful; the sixth son of Tancred of Hauteville passed the Alps as a pilgrim; and his first military band was levied among the adventurers of Italy. His brothers and countrymen had divided the fertile lands of Apulia; but they guarded their shares with the jealousy of avarice: the aspiring youth was driven forwards to the mountains of Calabria, and in his first exploits against the Greeks and the natives, it is not easy to discriminate the hero from the robber. To surprise a castle or a convent, to ensnare a wealthy citizen, to plunder the adjacent villages for necessary food, were the obscure labours which formed and exercised the powers of his mind and body. The volunteers of Normandy adhered to his standard; and, under his command, the peasants of Calabria assumed the name and character of Normans.

His ambition  
and success,

A. D.

1054—1080

As the genius of Robert expanded with his fortune, he awakened the jealousy of his elder brother, by whom, in a transient quarrel, his life was threatened and his liberty restrained. After the death of Humphrey, the tender age

CHAP. of his sons excluded them from the command;  
 LVI, they were reduced to a private estate by the  
 ambition of their guardian and uncle; and Guiscard  
 was exalted on a buckler, and saluted count of  
 Apulia and general of the republic. With an  
 encrease of authority and of force, he resumed  
 the conquest of Calabria, and soon aspired to a  
 rank that should raise him for ever above the  
 heads of his equals. By some acts of rapine or  
 sacrilege, he had incurred a papal excommunica-  
 tion: but Nicholas the second was easily per-  
 suaded, that the divisions of friends could ter-  
 minate only in their mutual prejudice; that the  
 Normans were the faithful champions of the Holy  
 See; and it was safer to trust the alliance of a  
 prince than the caprice of an aristocracy. A  
 synod of one hundred bishops was convened at  
 Melphi; and the count interrupted an important  
 enterprize to guard the person and execute the  
 decrees of the Roman pontiff. His gratitude and  
 policy conferred on Robert and his posterity,  
 the ducal title, with the investiture of Apulia,  
 Calabria, and all the lands, both in Italy and  
 Sicily, which his sword could rescue from the  
 schismatic Greeks and the unbelieving Saracens.  
 This apostolic sanction might justify his arms;  
 but the obedience of a free and victorious people  
 could not be transferred without their consent;  
 and Guiscard dissembled his elevation till the  
 ensuing campaign had been illustrated by the  
 conquest of Consenza and Reggio. In the hour  
 of triumph, he assembled his troops, and solicited

the Normans to confirm by their suffrage the judgment of the vicar of Christ: the soldiers hailed with joyful acclamations their valiant duke; and the counts, his former equals, pronounced the oath of fidelity, with hollow smiles and secret indignation. After this inauguration, Robert styled himself, "by the grace of God and St. Peter, duke of Apulia, Calabria, and hereafter of Sicily;" and it was the labour of twenty years to deserve and realize these lofty appellations. Such tardy progress, in a narrow space, may seem unworthy of the abilities of the chief and the spirit of the nation; but the Normans were few in number; their resources were scanty; their service was voluntary and precarious. The bravest designs of the duke were sometimes opposed by the free voice of his parliament of barons: the twelve counts of popular election, conspired against his authority; and against their perfidious uncle, the sons of Humphrey demanded justice and revenge. By his policy and vigour, Guiscard discovered their plots, suppressed their rebellions, and punished the guilty with death or exile: but in these domestic feuds, his years, and the national strength, were unprofitably consumed. After the defeat of his foreign enemies, the Greeks, Lombards, and Saracens, their broken forces retreated to the strong and populous cities of the sea-coast. They excelled in the arts of fortification and defence; the Normans were accustomed to serve on horseback in the field, and their rude attempts could

CHAP.

LVI.

Duke of  
Apulia,  
A. D. 1060

CHAP.  
LVI.

only succeed by the efforts of persevering courage. The resistance of Salerno was maintained above eight months: the siege or blockade of Bari lasted near four years. In these actions the Norman duke was the foremost in every danger; in every fatigue the last and most patient. As he pressed the citadel of Salerno, an huge stone from the rampart shattered one of his military engines; and by a splinter he was wounded in the breast. Before the gates of Bari, he lodged in a miserable hut or barrack, composed of dry branches, and thatched with straw; a perilous station, on all sides open to the inclemency of the winter and the spears of the enemy.

His Italian  
conquests.

The Italian conquests of Robert correspond with the limits of the present kingdom of Naples; and the countries united by his arms have not been dissevered by the revolutions of seven hundred years. The monarchy has been composed of the Greek provinces of Calabria and Apulia, of the Lombard principality of Salerno, the republic of Amalphi, and the inland dependencies of the large and ancient duchy of Beneventum. Three districts only were exempted from the common law of subjection; the first for ever, and the two last till the middle of the succeeding century. The city and immediate territory of Benevento had been transferred, by gift or exchange, from the German emperor to the Roman pontiff; and although this holy land was sometimes invaded, the name of St. Peter was finally more potent than the sword of the Normans.

Their first colony of Averfa subdued and held the state of Capua; and her princes were reduced to beg their bread before the palace of their fathers. The dukes of Naples, the present metropolis, maintained the popular freedom, under the shadow of the Byzantine empire. Among the new acquisitions of Guiscard, the science of Salerno", and the trade of Amalphi", may detain for a moment the curiosity of the reader.

C H A P.  
LVI.

I. Of the learned faculties, jurisprudence implies the previous establishment of laws and property; and theology may perhaps be superseded by the full light of religion and reason. But the savage and the sage must alike implore the assistance of physic; and, if *our* diseases are inflamed by luxury, the mischiefs of blows and wounds would be more frequent in the ruder ages of society. The treasures of Grecian medicine had been communicated to the Arabian colonies of Africa, Spain, and Sicily; and in the intercourse of peace and war, a spark of knowledge had been kindled and cherished at Salerno, an illustrious city, in which the men were honest and the women beautiful". A school, the first that arose in the darkness of Europe, was consecrated to the healing art: the conscience of monks and bishops was reconciled to that salutary and lucrative profession; and a crowd of patients, of the most eminent rank and most distant climates, invited or visited the physicians of Salerno. They were protected by the Norman conquerors; and Guiscard, though bred in arms, could discern

School of  
Salerno.

CHAP. the merit and value of a philosopher. After a  
 LVI. pilgrimage of thirty-nine years, Constantine, an African Christian, returned from Bagdad, a master of the language and learning of the Arabians; and Salerno was enriched by the practice, the lessons, and the writings, of the pupil of Avicenna. The school of medicine has long slept in the name of an university; but her precepts are abridged in a string of aphorisms, bound together in the Leonine verses, or Latin rhymes, of the twelfth century". II. Seven miles to the west of Salerno, and thirty to the south of Naples, the obscure town of Amalphi displayed the power and rewards of industry. The land, however fertile, was of narrow extent; but the sea was accessible and open: the inhabitants first assumed the office of supplying the western world with the manufactures and productions of the East; and this useful traffic was the source of their opulence and freedom. The government was popular, under the administration of a duke and the supremacy of the Greek emperor. Fifty thousand citizens were numbered in the walls of Amalphi; nor was any city more abundantly provided with gold, silver, and the objects of precious luxury. The mariners who swarmed in her port excelled in the theory and practice of navigation and astronomy; and the discovery of the compass, which has opened the globe, is due to their ingenuity or good fortune. Their trade was extended to the coasts, or at least to the commodities, of Africa, Arabia, and India;

Trade of  
Amalphi.

and their settlements in Constantinople, Antioch, Jerusalem, and Alexandria, acquired the privileges of independent colonies<sup>11</sup>. After three hundred years of prosperity, Amalphi was oppressed by the arms of the Normans, and sacked by the jealousy of Pisa; but the poverty of one thousand fishermen is yet dignified by the remains of an arsenal, a cathedral, and the palaces of royal merchants.

CHAP.  
LVI.

Roger, the twelfth and last of the sons of Tancred, had been long detained in Normandy by his own and his father's age. He accepted the welcome summons; hastened to the Apulian camp; and deserved at first the esteem, and afterwards the envy; of his elder brother. Their valour and ambition were equal; but the youth, the beauty, the elegant manners, of Roger, engaged the disinterested love of the soldiers and people. So scanty was his allowance, for himself and forty followers, that he descended from conquest to robbery, and from robbery to domestic theft; and so loose were the notions of property, that, by his own historian, at his special command, he is accused of stealing horses from a stable at Melphi<sup>12</sup>. His spirit emerged from poverty and disgrace: from these base practices he rose to the merit and glory of a holy war; and the invasion of Sicily was seconded by the zeal and policy of his brother Guiscard. After the retreat of the Greeks, the idolaters, a most audacious reproach of the Catholics, had retrieved their losses and possessions; but the

Conquest of  
Sicily by  
count Roger,  
A. D.  
1060—1090

CHAP. LVI. deliverance of the island, so vainly undertaken by the forces of the Eastern empire, was achieved by a small and private band of adventurers". In the first attempt, Roger braved, in an open boat, the real and fabulous dangers of Scylla and Charybdis; landed with only sixty soldiers on a hostile shore; drove the Saracens to the gates of Messina; and safely returned with the spoils of the adjacent country. In the fortress of Trani, his active and patient courage were equally conspicuous. In his old age he related with pleasure, that, by the distress of the siege, himself, and the countess his wife, had been reduced to a single cloak or mantle, which they wore alternately: that in a sally his horse had been slain, and he was dragged away by the Saracens, but that he owed his rescue to his good sword, and had retreated with his saddle on his back, lest the meanest trophy might be left in the hands of the miscreants. In the siege of Trani, three hundred Normans withstood and repulsed the forces of the island. In the field of Ceramio, fifty thousand horse and foot were overthrown by one hundred and thirty-six Christian soldiers, without reckoning St. George, who fought on horseback in the foremost ranks. The captive banners, with four camels, were reserved for the successor of St. Peter; and had these Barbaric spoils been exposed not in the Vatican, but in the Capitol, they might have revived the memory of the Punic triumphs. These insufficient numbers of the Normans most probably denote their knights,



the foldiers of honourable and equeſtrian rank, each of whom was attended by five or fix followers in the field"; yet, with the aid of this interpretation, and after every fair allowance on the ſide of valour, arms, and reputation, the diſcomfiture of ſo many myriads will reduce the prudent reader to the alternative of a miracle or a fable. The Arabs of Sicily derived a frequent and powerful ſuccour from their countrymen of Africa: in the ſiege of Palermo, the Norman cavalry was aſſiſted by the gallies of Piſa; and, in the hour of action, the envy of the two brothers was ſublimed to a generous and invincible emulation. After a war of thirty years", Roger, with the title of great count, obtained the ſovereignty of the largeſt and moſt fruitful iſland of the Mediterranean; and his adminiſtration diſplays a liberal and enlightened mind above the limits of his age and education. The Moſlems were maintained in the free enjoyment of their religion and property": a philoſopher and phyſician of Mazara, of the race of Mahomet, harangued the conqueror, and was invited to court; his geography of the ſeven climates was tranſlated into Latin; and Roger, after a diligent peruſal, preferred the work of the Arabian to the writings of the Grecian Ptolemy". A remnant of Chriſtian natives had promoted the ſucceſs of the Normans: they were rewarded by the triumph of the Croſs. The iſland was reſtored to the juriſdiction of the Roman pontiff; new biſhops were planted in the principal cities; and

CHAP.  
LVI.

the clergy was satisfied by a liberal endowment of churches and monasteries. Yet the Catholic hero asserted the rights of the civil magistrate. Instead of resigning the investiture of benefices, he dextrously applied to his own profit the papal claims: the supremacy of the crown was secured and enlarged, by the singular bull which declares the princes of Sicily hereditary and perpetual legates of the Holy See."

Robert invades the Eastern empire, A. D. 1037.

To Robert Guiscard, the conquest of Sicily was more glorious than beneficial: the possession of Apulia and Calabria was inadequate to his ambition; and he resolved to embrace or create the first occasion of invading, perhaps of subduing, the Roman empire of the East". From his first wife, the partner of his humble fortunes, he had been divorced under the pretence of consanguinity; and her son Bohemond was destined to imitate, rather than to succeed, his illustrious father. The second wife of Guiscard was the daughter of a prince of Salerno; the Lombards acquiesced in the lineal succession of their son Roger; their five daughters were given in honourable nuptials"; and one of them was betrothed in a tender age, to Constantine, a beautiful youth, the son and heir of the emperor Michael". But the throne of Constantinople was shaken by a revolution: the Imperial family of Ducas was confined to the palace or the cloister; and Robert deplored, and repented, the disgrace of his daughter and the expulsion of his ally. A Greek, who styled himself the father of Constantine, soon

appeared at Salerno; and related the adventures of his fall and flight. That unfortunate friend was acknowledged by the duke, and adorned with the pomp and titles of Imperial dignity: in his triumphal progress through Apulia and Calabria, Michael<sup>2</sup> was saluted with the tears and acclamations of the people; and pope Gregory the seventh exhorted the bishops to preach, and the Catholics to fight, in the pious works of his restoration. His conversations with Robert were frequent and familiar, and their mutual promises were justified by the valour of the Normans and the treasures of the East. Yet this Michael, by the confession of the Greeks and Latins, was a pageant and impostor; a monk who had fled from his convent, or a domestic who had served in the palace. The fraud had been contrived by the subtle Guiscard; and he trusted, that after this pretender had given a decent colour to his arms, he would sink, at the nod of the conqueror, into his primitive obscurity. But victory was the only argument that could determine the belief of the Greeks; and the ardour of the Latins was much inferior to their credulity: the Norman veterans wished to enjoy the harvest of their toils, and the unwarlike Italians trembled at the known and unknown dangers of a transmarine expedition. In his new levies, Robert exerted the influence of gifts and promises, the terrors of civil and ecclesiastical authority; and some acts of violence might justify the reproach, that age and infancy were pressed without distinction into the service

of their unrelenting prince. After two years incessant preparations, the land and naval forces were assembled at Otranto, at the heel, or extreme promontory, of Italy; and Robert was accompanied by his wife, who fought by his side, his son Bohemond, and the representative of the emperor Michael. Thirteen hundred knights of Norman race or discipline, formed the sinews of the army, which might be swelled to thirty thousand followers of every denomination. The men, the horses, the arms, the engines, the wooden towers, covered with raw hides, were embarked on board one hundred and fifty vessels: the transports had been built in the ports of Italy, and the galleys were supplied by the alliance of the republic of Ragusa.

Siege of Durazzo,  
A. D. 1081,  
June 17.

At the mouth of the Adriatic gulf, the shores of Italy and Epirus incline towards each other. The space between Brundisium and Durazzo, the Roman passage, is no more than one hundred miles; at the last station of Otranto, it is contracted to fifty; and this narrow distance had suggested to Pyrrhus and Pompey the sublime or extravagant idea of a bridge. Before the general embarkation, the Norman duke dispatched Bohemond with fifteen galleys to seize or threaten the isle of Corfu, to survey the opposite coast, and to secure an harbour in the neighbourhood of Vallona for the landing of the troops. They passed and landed without perceiving an enemy; and this successful experiment displayed the neglect and decay of the naval power of the Greeks. The islands

islands of Epirus and the maritime towns were subdued by the arms or the name of Robert, who led his fleet and army from Corfu (I use the modern appellation) to the siege of Durazzo. That city, the western key of the empire, was guarded by ancient renown, and recent fortifications, by George Palæologus, a patrician, victorious in the Oriental wars, and a numerous garrison of Albanians and Macedonians, who, in every age, have maintained the character of soldiers. In the prosecution of his enterprize, the courage of Guiscard was assailed by every form of danger and mischance. In the most propitious season of the year, as his fleet passed along the coast, a storm of wind and snow unexpectedly arose: the Adriatic was swelled by the raging blast of the south, and a new shipwreck confirmed the old infamy of the Acroceraunian rocks<sup>7</sup>. The sails, the masts, and the oars, were shattered or torn away; the sea and shore were covered with the fragments of vessels, with arms and dead bodies; and the greatest part of the provisions were either drowned or damaged. The ducal galley was laboriously rescued from the waves, and Robert halted seven days on the adjacent cape, to collect the relics of his loss and revive the drooping spirits of his soldiers. The Normans were no longer the bold and experienced mariners who had explored the ocean from Greenland to mount Atlas, and who smiled at the petty dangers of the Mediterranean. They had wept during the tempest; they were alarmed by the hostile approach of the Venetians,

CHAP. who had been solicited by the prayers and promises of the Byzantine court. The first day's action was not disadvantageous to Bohemond, a beardless youth", who led the naval powers of his father. All night the galleys of the republic lay on their anchors in the form of a crescent; and the victory of the second day was decided by the dexterity of their evolutions, the station of their archers, the weight of their javelins, and the borrowed aid of the Greek fire. The Apulian and Ragusian vessels fled to the shore, several were cut from their cables and dragged away by the conqueror; and a sally from the town carried slaughter and dismay to the tents of the Norman duke. A seasonable relief was poured into Durazzo, and as soon as the besiegers had lost the command of the sea, the islands and maritime towns withdrew from the camp the supply of tribute and provision. That camp was soon afflicted with a pestilential disease; five hundred knights perished by an inglorious death; and the list of burials (if all could obtain a decent burial) amounted to ten thousand persons. Under these calamities, the mind of Guiscard alone was firm and invincible: and while he collected new forces from Apulia and Sicily, he battered, or scaled, or sapped, the walls of Durazzo. But his industry and valour were encountered by equal valour and more perfect industry. A moveable turret, of a size and capacity to contain five hundred soldiers, had been rolled forwards to the foot of the rampart: but the descent of the door or drawbridge was

checked by an enormous beam, and the wooden structure was instantly consumed by artificial flames. C H A P. LVI.

While the Roman empire was attacked by the Turks in the East and the Normans in the West, the aged successor of Michael surrendered the sceptre to the hands of Alexius, an illustrious captain, and the founder of the Comnenian dynasty. The princess Anne, his daughter and historian, observes, in her affected style, that even Hercules was unequal to a double combat; and, on this principle, she approves an hasty peace with the Turks, which allowed her father to undertake in person the relief of Durazzo. On his accession, Alexius found the camp without soldiers and the treasury without money; yet such were the vigour and activity of his measures, that in six months he assembled an army of seventy thousand men, and performed a march of five hundred miles. His troops were levied in Europe and Asia, from Peloponefus to the Black Sea; his majesty was displayed in the silver arms and rich trappings of the companies of horse-guards; and the emperor was attended by a train of nobles and princes, some of whom, in rapid succession, had been clothed with the purple, and were indulged by the lenity of the times in a life of affluence and dignity. Their youthful ardour might animate the multitude; but their love of pleasure and contempt of subordination were pregnant with disorder and mischief; and their importunate clamours for speedy and decisive action disconcerted the

The army  
and march of  
the emperor  
Alexius,  
April—September,

CHAP. LVI. prudence of Alexius, who might have surrounded and starved the besieging army. The enumeration of provinces recalls a sad comparison of the past and present limits of the Roman world: the raw levies were drawn together in haste and terror; and the garrisons of Anatolia, or Asia Minor, had been purchased by the evacuation of the cities which were immediately occupied by the Turks. The strength of the Greek army consisted in the Varangians, the Scandinavian guards, whose numbers were recently augmented by a colony of exiles and volunteers from the British island of Thule. Under the yoke of the Norman conqueror, the Danes and English were oppressed and united: a band of adventurous youths resolved to desert a land of slavery; the sea was open to their escape; and, in their long pilgrimage, they visited every coast that afforded any hope of liberty and revenge. They were entertained in the service of the Greek emperor; and their first station was in a new city on the Asiatic shore: but Alexius soon recalled them to the defence of his person and palace; and bequeathed to his successors the inheritance of their faith and valour". The name of a Norman invader revived the memory of their wrongs: they marched with alacrity against the national foe, and panted to regain in Epirus, the glory which they had lost in the battle of Hastings. The Varangians were supported by some companies of Franks or Latins, and the rebels, who had fled to Constantinople from the tyranny of Guiscard, were eager to



signalise their zeal and gratify their revenge. In this emergency the emperor had not disdained the impure aid of the Paulicians or Manichæans of Thrace and Bulgaria; and these heretics united with the patience of martyrdom, the spirit and discipline of active valour". The treaty with the sultan had procured a supply of some thousand Turks; and the arrows of the Scythian horse were opposed to the lances of the Norman cavalry. On the report and distant prospect of these formidable numbers; Robert assembled a council of his principal officers. "You behold," said he, "your danger: it is urgent and inevitable. The hills are covered with arms and standards; and the emperor of the Greeks is accustomed to wars and triumphs. Obedience and union are our only safety; and I am ready to yield the command to a more worthy leader." The vote and acclamation, even of his secret enemies, assured him, in that perilous moment, of their esteem and confidence; and the duke thus continued: "Let us trust in the rewards of victory, and deprive cowardice of the means of escape. Let us burn our vessels and our baggage, and give battle on this spot, as if it were the place of our nativity and our burial." The resolution was unanimously approved; and, without confining himself to his lines, Guiscard awaited in battle-array the nearer approach of the enemy. His rear was covered by a small river; his right wing extended to the sea, his left to the hills: nor was he conscious, perhaps, that on the same

CHAP. ground Cæsar and Pompey had formerly disputed  
 LVI. the empire of the world<sup>72</sup>.

Battle of Du-  
 razzo,  
 A. D. 1081,  
 October 18.

Against the advice of his wisest captains, Alexius resolved to risk the event of a general action; and exhorted the garrison of Durazzo to assist their own deliverance by a well-timed sally from the town. He marched in two columns to surprise the Normans before day-break on two different sides: his light cavalry was scattered over the plain; the archers formed the second line; and the Varangians claimed the honours of the van-guard. In the first onset, the battle-axes of the strangers made a deep and bloody impression on the army of Guiscard, which was now reduced to fifteen thousand men. The Lombards and Calabrians ignominiously turned their backs: they fled towards the river and the sea; but the bridge had been broken down to check the sally of the garrison, and the coast was lined with the Venetian galleys, who played their engines among the disorderly throng. On the verge of ruin, they were saved by the spirit and conduct of their chiefs. Gaita, the wife of Robert, is painted by the Greeks as a warlike Amazon, a second Pallas; less skilful in arts, but not less terrible in arms, than the Athenian goddess<sup>73</sup>: though wounded by an arrow, she stood her ground, and strove, by her exhortation and example, to rally the flying troops<sup>74</sup>. Her female voice was seconded by the more powerful voice and arm of the Norman duke, as calm in action as he was magnanimous in council: "Whither," he cried aloud, "whither do ye fly? Your enemy "is implacable; and death it less grievous than

“servitude.” The moment was decisive: as the Varangians advanced before the line, they discovered the nakedness of their flanks; the main battle of the duke, of eight hundred knights, stood firm and entire; they couched their lances, and the Greeks deplore the furious and irresistible shock of the French cavalry”. Alexius was not deficient in the duties of a soldier, or a general; but he no sooner beheld the slaughter of the Varangians, and the flight of the Turks, than he despised his subjects and despaired of his fortune. The princess Anne, who drops a tear on this melancholy event, is reduced to praise the strength and swiftness of her father’s horse, and his vigorous struggle, when he was almost overthrown by the stroke of a lance, which had shivered the Imperial helmet. His desperate valour broke through a squadron of Franks who opposed his flight; and, after wandering two days and as many nights in the mountains, he found some repose, of body, though not of mind, in the walls of Lychnidus. The victorious Robert, reproached the tardy and feeble pursuit which had suffered the escape of so illustrious a prize; but he consoled his disappointment by the trophies and standards of the field, the wealth and luxury of the Byzantine camp, and the glory of defeating an army five times more numerous than his own. A multitude of Italians had been the victims of their own fears; but only thirty of his knights were slain in this memorable day. In the Roman host, the loss of Greeks, Turks, and English, amounted to five or six

C H A P.

LVI.

C H A P. thousand": the plain of Durazzo was stained with  
 LVI. noble and royal blood; and the end of the impo-  
 tor Michael was more honourable than his life.

Durazzo  
 taken,  
 A. D. 1082,  
 February 8.

It is more than probable that Guiscard was not afflicted by the loss of a costly pageant, which had merited only the contempt and derision of the Greeks. After their defeat, they still persevered in the defence of Durazzo; and a Venetian commander supplied the place of George Palæologus, who had been imprudently called away from his station. The tents of the besiegers were converted into barracks, to sustain the inclemency of the winter; and in answer to the defiance of the garrison, Robert insinuated, that his patience was at least equal to their obstinacy". Perhaps he already trusted to his secret correspondence with a Venetian noble, who sold the city for a rich and honourable marriage. At the dead of night several rope-ladders were dropped from the walls; the light Calabrians ascended in silence; and the Greeks were awakened by the noise and trumpets of the conqueror. Yet they defended the streets three days against an enemy already master of the rampart; and near seven months elapsed between the first investment and the final surrender of the place. From Durazzo, the Norman duke advanced into the heart of Epirus or Albania; traversed the first mountains of Thessaly; surprised three hundred English in the city of Castoria; approached Thessalonica; and made Constantinople tremble. A more pressing duty suspended the prosecution of his ambitious designs. By shipwreck, pestilence,

and the sword ; his army was reduced to a third of the original numbers ; and instead of being recruited from Italy, he was informed, by plaintive epistles, of the mischiefs and dangers which had been produced by his absence : the revolt of the cities and barons of Apulia ; the distress of the pope ; and the approach or invasion of Henry king of Germany. Highly presuming that his person was sufficient for the public safety, he repassed the sea in a single brigantine, and left the remains of the army under the command of his son and the Norman counts, exhorting Bohemond to respect the freedom of his peers, and the counts to obey the authority of their leader. The son of Guiscard trod in the footsteps of his father ; and the two destroyers are compared by the Greeks to the caterpillar and the locust, the last of whom devours whatever has escaped the teeth of the former ". After winning two battles against the emperor, he descended into the plain of Thessaly, and besieged Larissa, the fabulous realm of Achilles ", which contained the treasure and magazines of the Byzantine camp. Yet a just praise must not be refused to the fortitude and prudence of Alexius, who bravely struggled with the calamities of the times. In the poverty of the state, he presumed to borrow the superfluous ornaments of the churches ; the desertion of the Manichæans was supplied by some tribes of Moldavia ; a reinforcement of seven thousand Turks replaced and revenged the loss of their brethren ; and the

C H A P.  
LVI.

Return of  
Robert, and  
actions of  
Bohemond.

CHAP. LVI. Greek soldiers were exercised to ride, to draw the bow, and to the daily practice of ambuscades and evolutions. Alexius had been taught by experience, that the formidable cavalry of the Franks on foot was unfit for action, and almost incapable of motion"; his archers were directed to aim their arrows at the horse rather than the man; and a variety of spikes and snares was scattered over the ground on which he might expect an attack. In the neighbourhood of Larissa the events of war were protracted and balanced. The courage of Bohemond was always conspicuous, and often successful; but his camp was pillaged by a stratagem of the Greeks; the city was impregnable; and the venal or discontented counts deserted his standard, betrayed their trusts, and enlisted in the service of the emperor. Alexius returned to Constantinople with the advantage, rather than the honour, of victory. After evacuating the conquests which he could no longer defend, the son of Guiscard embarked for Italy, and was embraced by a father who esteemed his merit and sympathised in his misfortune.

The emperor  
Henry III.  
invited by the  
Greeks,  
A. D. 1081.

Of the Latin princes, the allies of Alexius and enemies of Robert, the most prompt and powerful was Henry the third or fourth, king of Germany and Italy, and future emperor of the West. The epistle of the Greek monarch to his brother is filled with the warmest professions of friendship, and the most lively desire of strengthening their alliance by every public and

private tie. He congratulates Henry on his success in a just and pious war, and complains that the prosperity of his own empire is disturbed by the audacious enterprises of the Norman Robert. The list of his presents expresses the manners of the age, a radiated crown of gold, a cross set with pearls to hang on the breast, a case of relics, with the names and titles of the saints, a vase of chrystal, a vase of sardonyx, some balm, most probably of Mecca, and one hundred pieces of purple. To these he added a more solid present, of one hundred and forty-four thousand Byzantines of gold, with a farther assurance of two hundred and sixteen thousand, so soon as Henry should have entered in arms the Apulian territories, and confirmed by an oath the league against the common enemy. The German<sup>11</sup>, who was already in Lombardy at the head of an army and a faction, accepted these liberal offers, and marched towards the south: his speed was checked by the sound of the battle of Durazzo; but the influence of his arms or name, in the hasty return of Robert, was a full equivalent for the Grecian bribe. Henry was the sincere adversary of the Normans, the allies and vassals of Gregory the seventh, his implacable foe. The long quarrel of the throne and mitre had been recently kindled by the zeal and ambition of that haughty priest<sup>12</sup>: the king and the pope had degraded each other; and each had seated a rival on the temporal or spiritual throne of his antagonist. After the defeat and death of

his Swabian rebel, Henry descended into Italy to assume the Imperial crown, and to drive from the Vatican the tyrant of the church \*. But the Roman people adhered to the cause of Gregory : their resolution was fortified by supplies of men and money from Apulia ; and the city was thrice ineffectually besieged by the king of Germany. In the fourth year he corrupted, as it is said, with Byzantine gold, the nobles of Rome, whose estates and castles had been ruined by the war. The gates, the bridges, and fifty hostages, were delivered into his hands : the antipope, Clement the third, was consecrated in the Lateran : the grateful pontiff crowned his protector in the Vatican ; and the emperor Henry fixed his residence in the Capitol, as the lawful successor of Augustus and Charlemagne. The ruins of the Septizonium were still defended by the nephew of Gregory : the pope himself was invested in the castle of St. Angelo ; and his last hope was in the courage and fidelity of his Norman vassal. Their friendship had been interrupted by some reciprocal injuries and complaints ; but, on this pressing occasion, Guiscard was urged by the obligation of his oath, by his interest, more potent than oaths, by the love of fame, and his enmity to the two emperors. Unfurling the holy banner, he resolved to fly to the relief of the prince of the apostles : the most numerous of his armies, six thousand horse and thirty thousand foot, was instantly assembled ; and his march from Salerno to Rome was animated by

Besieges

Rome,

A. D.

1081—1084.

A. D. 1084,

March 21,

— 24,

— 31,



the public applause and the promise of the divine C H A P.  
 favour. Henry, invincible in sixty-six battles, LVI.  
 trembled at his approach; recollected some indis-  
 pensable affairs that required his presence in  
 Lombardy; exhorted the Romans to persevere in  
 their allegiance; and hastily retreated three days  
 before the entrance of the Normans. In less than  
 three years, the son of Tancred of Hauteville  
 enjoyed the glory of delivering the pope, and  
 of compelling the two emperors, of the East  
 and West, to fly before his victorious arms".  
 But the triumph of Robert was clouded by the  
 calamities of Rome. By the aid of the friends  
 of Gregory, the walls had been perforated or  
 scaled; but the Imperial faction was still power-  
 ful and active; on the third day, the people  
 rose in a furious tumult; and an hasty word of  
 the conqueror, in his defence or revenge, was  
 the signal of fire and pillage". The Saracens  
 of Sicily, the subjects of Roger, and auxiliaries  
 of his brother, embraced this fair occasion of  
 rifling and profaning the holy city of the Chris-  
 tians: many thousands of the citizens, in the  
 fight, and by the allies, of their spiritual father,  
 were exposed to violation, captivity, or death;  
 and a spacious quarter of the city, from the  
 Lateran to the Coliseum, was consumed by the  
 flames, and devoted to perpetual solitude".  
 From a city, where he was now hated, and  
 might be no longer feared, Gregory retired to  
 end his days in the palace of Salerno. The artful  
 pontiff might flatter the vanity of Guiscard, with

Flies before  
 Robert,  
 May.

CHAP. the hope of a Roman or Imperial crown; but  
LVI. this dangerous measure, which would have in-  
flamed the ambition of the Norman, must for  
ever have alienated the most faithful princes of  
Germany.

Second ex-  
pedition of  
Robert into  
Greece,  
A. D. 1084,  
October.

The deliverer and scourge of Rome might have indulged himself in a season of repose; but in the same year of the flight of the German emperor, the indefatigable Robert resumed the design of his Eastern conquests. The zeal or gratitude of Gregory had promised to his valour the kingdoms of Greece and Asia<sup>1</sup>; his troops were assembled in arms, flushed with success, and eager for action. Their numbers, in the language of Homer, are compared by Anna to a swarm of bees<sup>2</sup>; yet the utmost and moderate limits of the powers of Guiscard have been already defined; they were contained in this second occasion in one hundred and twenty vessels; and as the season was far advanced, the harbour of Brundisium<sup>3</sup> was preferred to the open road of Otranto. Alexius, apprehensive of a second attack, had assiduously laboured to restore the naval forces of the empire; and obtained from the republic of Venice an important succour of thirty-six transports, fourteen galleys, and nine galeots or ships of extraordinary strength and magnitude. Their services were liberally paid by the licence or monopoly of trade, a profitable gift of many shops and houses in the port of Constantinople, and a tribute to St. Mark, the more acceptable, as it was the produce of a

tax on their rivals of Amalphi. By the union of the Greeks and Venetians, the Adriatic was covered with an hostile fleet, but their own neglect, or the vigilance of Robert, the change of a wind, or the shelter of a mist, opened a free passage; and the Norman troops were safely disembarked on the coast of Epirus. With twenty strong and well-appointed gallies, their intrepid duke immediately fought the enemy, and though more accustomed to fight on horseback, he trusted his own life, and the lives of his brother and two sons, to the event of a naval combat. The dominion of the sea was disputed in three engagements, in sight of the isle of Corfu: in the two former, the skill and numbers of the allies were superior; but in the third, the Normans obtained a final and complete victory". The light brigantines of the Greeks were scattered in ignominious flight: the nine castles of the Venetians maintained a more obstinate conflict; seven were sunk, two were taken; two thousand five hundred captives implored in vain the mercy of the victor; and the daughter of Alexius deplores the loss of thirteen thousand of his subjects or allies. The want of experience had been supplied by the genius of Guiscard; and each evening, when he had founded a retreat, he calmly explored the causes of his repulse, and invented new methods how to remedy his own defects, and to baffle the advantages of the enemy. The winter season suspended his progress: with the return of spring he again aspired to the

CHAP. conquest of Constantinople; but, instead of tra-  
 LVI. versing the hills of Epirus, he turned his arms  
 against Greece and the islands, where the spoils  
 would repay the labour, and where the land and  
 sea forces might pursue their joint operations  
 with vigour and effect. But; in the isle of  
 Cephalonia, his projects were fatally blasted by  
 an epidemical disease; Robert himself, in the  
 seventieth year of his age, expired in his tent;  
 and a suspicion of poison was imputed, by public  
 rumour, to his wife, or to the Greek emperor".  
 This premature death might allow a boundless  
 scope for the imagination of his future exploits;  
 and the event sufficiently declares, that the Nor-  
 man greatness was founded on his life". With-  
 out the appearance of an enemy, a victorious  
 army dispersed or retreated in disorder and con-  
 sternation; and Alexius, who had trembled for  
 his empire, rejoiced in his deliverance. The  
 gally which transported the remains of Guiscard  
 was shipwrecked on the Italian shore; but the  
 duke's body was recovered from the sea, and  
 deposited in the sepulchre of Venusia", a place  
 more illustrious for the birth of Horace", than  
 for the burial of the Norman heroes. Roger,  
 his second son and successor, immediately sunk  
 to the humble station of a duke of Apulia: the  
 esteem or partiality of his father left the valiant  
 Bohemond to the inheritance of his sword. The  
 national tranquillity was disturbed by his claims,  
 till the first crusade against the infidels of the

His death,  
 A. D. 1085,  
 July 17.

East opened a more splendid field of glory and conquest".

Of human life, the most glorious or humble prospects are alike and soon bounded by the sepulchre. The male line of Robert Guiscard was extinguished, both in Apulia and at Antioch, in the second generation; but his younger brother became the father of a line of kings; and the son of the great count was endowed with the name, the conquests, and the spirit, of the first Roger". The heir of that Norman adventurer was born in Sicily; and, at the age of only four years, he succeeded to the sovereignty of the island, a lot which reason might envy, could she indulge for a moment the visionary, though virtuous, wish of dominion. Had Roger been content with his fruitful patrimony, an happy and grateful people might have blessed their benefactor; and, if a wise administration could have restored the prosperous times of the Greek colonies", the opulence and power of Sicily alone might have equalled the widest scope that could be acquired and desolated by the sword of war. But the ambition of the great count was ignorant of these noble pursuits; it was gratified by the vulgar means of violence and artifice. He sought to obtain the undivided possession of Palermo, of which one moiety had been ceded to the elder branch; struggled to enlarge his Calabrian limits beyond the measure of former treaties; and impatiently watched the declining health of his cousin William of Apulia, the grandson of Robert. On the first intelligence of his premature death, Roger

CHAP.

LVI.

Reign and  
ambition of  
Roger, great  
count of  
Sicily.

A. D.

1101—1154  
February 26.Duke of  
Apulia.

A. D. 1127.

C H A P. failed from Palermo with seven galleys, cast anchor  
 LVI. in the bay of Salerno, received, after ten days  
 negociation, an oath of fidelity from the Norman  
 capital, commanded the submission of the barons,  
 and extorted a legal investiture from the reluctant  
 popes, who could not long endure either the  
 friendship or enmity of a powerful vassal. The  
 sacred spot of Benevento was respectfully spared,  
 as the patrimony of St. Peter; but the reduction  
 of Capua and Naples completed the design of his  
 uncle Guiscard; and the sole inheritance of the  
 Norman conquests was possessed by the victorious  
 Roger. A conscious superiority of power and  
 merit prompted him to disdain the titles of duke  
 and of count; and the isle of Sicily, with a third  
 perhaps of the continent of Italy might form the  
 basis of a kingdom<sup>111</sup> which would only yield to  
 the monarchies of France and England. The chiefs  
 of the nation who attended his coronation at Paler-  
 mo, might doubtless pronounce under what name  
 he should reign over them; but the example of a  
 Greek tyrant or a Saracen emir were insufficient to  
 justify his regal character; and the nine kings of  
 the Latin world<sup>112</sup> might disclaim their new asso-  
 ciate, unless he were consecrated by the authority  
 of the supreme pontiff. The pride of Anacletus  
 was pleased to confer a title, which the pride of  
 the Norman had stooped to solicit<sup>113</sup>; but his own  
 legitimacy was attacked by the adverse election  
 of Innocent the second, and while Anacletus sat  
 in the Vatican, the successful fugitive was acknow-  
 ledged by the nations of Europe. The infant

First king of  
 Sicily,

A. D. 1130,  
 Dec. 25—

A. D. 1139,  
 July 25.

monarchy of Roger was shaken, and almost overthrown, by the unlucky choice of an ecclesiastical patron; and the sword of Lothaire the second of Germany, the excommunications of Innocent, the fleets of Pisa, and the zeal of St. Bernard, were united for the ruin of the Sicilian robber. After a gallant resistance, the Norman prince was driven from the continent of Italy; a new duke of Apulia was invested by the pope and the emperor, each of whom held one end of the *gonfanon*, or flag-staff, as a token that they asserted their right, and suspended their quarrel. But such jealous friendship was of short and precarious duration: the German armies soon vanished in disease and desertion<sup>144</sup>: the Apulian duke, with all his adherents, was exterminated by a conqueror, who seldom forgave either the dead or the living; like his predecessor Leo the ninth, the feeble though haughty pontiff became the captive and friend of the Normans; and their reconciliation was celebrated by the eloquence of Bernard, who now revered the title and virtues of the king of Sicily.

As a penance for his impious war against the successor of St. Peter, that monarch might have promised to display the banner of the cross, and he accomplished with ardour a vow so propitious to his interest and revenge. The recent injuries of Sicily might provoke a just retaliation on the heads of the Saracens: the Normans, whose blood had been mingled with so many subject streams, were encouraged to remember and emulate the naval trophies of their fathers, and in the maturity of

His conquests  
in Africa,  
A. D.  
1112—1152.

CHAP. their strength they contended with the decline of  
 LVI. an African power. When the Fatimite caliph departed for the conquest of Egypt, he rewarded the real merit and apparent fidelity of his servant Joseph, with a gift of his royal mantle, and forty Arabian horses, his palace with its sumptuous furniture, and the government of the kingdoms of Tunis and Algiers. The Zeirides<sup>1</sup>, the descendants of Joseph, forgot their allegiance and gratitude to a distant benefactor, grasped and abused the fruits of prosperity; and after running the little course of an Oriental dynasty, were now fainting in their own weakness. On the side of the land, they were oppressed by the Almohades, the fanatic princes of Morocco, while the sea-coast was open to the enterprises of the Greeks and Franks, who, before the close of the eleventh century, had extorted a ransom of two hundred thousand pieces of gold. By the first arms of Roger, the island or rock of Malta, which has been since ennobled by a military and religious colony, was inseparably annexed to the crown of Sicily. Tripoly<sup>2</sup>, a strong and maritime city, was the next object of his attack; and the slaughter of the males, the captivity of the females, might be justified by the frequent practice of the Moslems themselves. The capital of the Zeirides was named Africa from the country, and Mahadia<sup>3</sup> from the Arabian founder: it is strongly built on a neck of land, but the imperfection of the harbour is not compensated by the fertility of the adjacent plain. Mahadia was besieged by George the Sicilian



admiral, with a fleet of one hundred and fifty galleys, amply provided with men and the instruments of mischief: the sovereign had fled; the Moorish governor refused to capitulate, declined the last and irresistible assault, and secretly escaping with the Moslem inhabitants, abandoned the place and its treasures to the rapacious Franks. In successive expeditions, the king of Sicily or his lieutenants reduced the cities of Tunis, Safax, Capfia, Bona, and a long tract of the sea-coast<sup>106</sup>; the fortresses were garrisoned, the country was tributary, and a boast, that it held Africa in subjection, might be ascribed with some flattery on the sword of Roger<sup>107</sup>. After his death, that sword was broken; and these transmarine possessions were neglected, evacuated, or lost, under the troubled reign of his successor<sup>108</sup>. The triumphs of Scipio and Belisarius have proved, that the African continent is neither inaccessible nor invincible: yet the great princes and powers of Christendom have repeatedly failed in their armaments against the Moors, who may still glory in the easy conquest and long servitude of Spain.

Since the decease of Robert Guiscard, the Normans had relinquished, above sixty years, their hostile designs against the empire of the East. The policy of Roger solicited a public and private union with the Greek princes, whose alliance would dignify his regal character: he demanded in marriage a daughter of the Comnenian family, and the first steps of the treaty seemed to promise a favourable event. But the contemptuous treatment of his

His invasion  
of Greece,  
A. D. 1145.

- C H A P. LVI. ambassadors exasperated the vanity of the new monarch; and the insolence of the Byzantine court was expiated, according to the laws of nations, by the sufferings of a guiltless people<sup>1</sup>. With a fleet of seventy gallies, George the admiral of Sicily appeared before Corfu: and both the island and city were delivered into his hands by the disaffected inhabitants, who had yet to learn that a siege is still more calamitous than a tribute. In this invasion, of some moment in the annals of commerce, the Normans spread themselves by sea, and over the provinces of Greece; and the venerable age of Athens, Thebes, and Corinth, was violated by rapine and cruelty. Of the wrongs of Athens no memorial remains. The ancient walls, which encompassed without guarding the opulence of Thebes, were scaled by the Latin Christians; but their sole use of the Gospel was to sanctify an oath, that the lawful owners had not secreted any relic of their inheritance or industry. On the approach of the Normans the lower town of Corinth was evacuated: the Greeks retired to the citadel, which was seated on a lofty eminence, abundantly watered by the classic fountain of Pirene; an impregnable fortress, if the want of courage could be balanced by any advantages of art or nature. As soon as the besiegers had surmounted the labour (their sole labour) of climbing the hill; their general, from the commanding eminence, admired his own victory, and testified his gratitude to heaven, by tearing from the altar the precious image of Theodore the tutelary saint. The silk weavers of both sexes, whom

George transported to Sicily, composed the most valuable part of the spoil, and in comparing the skilful industry of the mechanic with the sloth and cowardice of the soldier, he was heard to exclaim, that the distaff and loom were the only weapons which the Greeks were capable of using. The progress of this naval armament was marked by two conspicuous events, the rescue of the king of France, and the insult of the Byzantine capital.

CHAP.  
- LVI.

In his return by sea from an unfortunate crusade, Louis the seventh was intercepted by the Greeks, who basely violated the laws of honour and religion. The fortunate encounter of the Norman fleet delivered the royal captive; and after a free and honourable entertainment in the court of Sicily, Louis continued his journey to Rome and Paris<sup>110</sup>.

His admiral  
delivers  
Louis VII.  
of France:

In the absence of the emperor, Constantinople and the Hellespont were left without defence and without the suspicion of danger. The clergy and people, for the soldiers had followed the standard of Manuel, were astonished and dismayed at the hostile appearance of a line of gallies, which boldly cast anchor in the front of the Imperial city. The forces of the Sicilian admiral were inadequate to the siege or assault of an immense and populous metropolis: but George enjoyed the glory of humbling the Greek arrogance, and of marking the path of conquest to the navies of the West. He landed some soldiers to rifle the fruits of the royal gardens, and pointed with silver, or more probably with fire, the arrows which he discharged against the palace of the Cæsars<sup>111</sup>. This playful outrage of

insults Con-  
stantinople.

The emperor

C H A P.

LVI.

Manuel re-  
pulses the  
Normans.

A. D.

1148, 1149.

the pirates of Sicily, who had surprised an unguarded moment, Manuel affected to despise, while his martial spirit, and the forces of the empire, were awakened to revenge. The Archipelago and Ionian sea were covered with his squadrons and those of Venice, but I know not by what favourable allowance of transports, victuallers, and pinnaces, our reason, or even our fancy, can be reconciled to the stupendous account of fifteen hundred vessels, which is proposed by a Byzantine historian. These operations were directed with prudence and energy: in his homeward voyage, George lost nineteen of his galleys, which were separated and taken: after an obstinate defence, Corfu implored the clemency of her lawful sovereign; nor could a ship, a soldier of the Norman prince, be found, unless as a captive, within the limits of the Eastern empire. The prosperity and the health of Roger were already in a declining state: while he listened in his palace of Palermo to the messengers of victory or defeat, the invincible Manuel, the foremost in every assault, was celebrated by the Greeks and Latins as the Alexander or Hercules of the age.

He reduces  
Apulia and  
Calabria.  
A. D. 1155

A prince of such a temper could not be satisfied with having repelled the insolence of a Barbarian. It was the right and duty, it might be the interest and glory, of Manuel to restore the ancient majesty of the empire, to recover the provinces of Italy and Sicily, and to chastise this pretended king, the grandson of a Norman vassal<sup>111</sup>. The natives of Calabria were still attached to the Greek

language and worship, which had been inexorably proscribed by the Latin clergy: after the loss of her dukes, Apulia was claimed as a servile appendage to the crown of Sicily: the founder of the monarchy had ruled by the sword; and his death had abated the fear, without healing the discontent, of his subjects: the feudal government was always pregnant with the seeds of rebellion; and a nephew of Roger himself invited the enemies of his family and nation. The majesty of the purple, and a series of Hungarian and Turkish wars, prevented Manuel from embarking his person in the Italian expedition. To the brave and noble Palæologus, his lieutenant, the Greek monarch entrusted a fleet and army: the siege of Bari was his first exploit; and, in every operation, gold as well as steel was the instrument of victory. Salerno, and some places along the western coast, maintained their fidelity to the Norman king; but he lost in two campaigns the greater part of his continental possessions; and the modest emperor, disdaining all flattery and falsehood, was content with the reduction of three hundred cities or villages of Apulia and Calabria, whose names and titles were inscribed on all the walls of the palace. The prejudices of the Latins were gratified by a genuine or fictitious donation, under the seal of the German Cæsars<sup>1155</sup>; but the successor of Constantine soon renounced this ignominious pretence, claimed the indefeasible dominion of Italy, and professed his design of chasing the Barbarians beyond the Alps. By the artful speeches, liberal gifts,

C H A P.  
LVI.

His design of  
acquiring  
Italy and the  
Western em-  
pire,

A. D.  
1155—1174,  
&c.

## 186. THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. and unbounded promises, of their Eastern ally,  
LVI. the free cities were encouraged to persevere in their generous struggle against the despotism of Frederic Barbarossa: the walls of Milan were rebuilt by the contributions of Manuel; and he poured, says the historian, a river of gold into the bosom of Ancona, whose attachment to the Greeks was fortified by the jealous enmity of the Venetians<sup>114</sup>. The situation and trade of Ancona rendered it an important garrison in the heart of Italy: it was twice besieged by the arms of Frederic; the Imperial forces were twice repulsed by the spirit of freedom; that spirit was animated by the ambassador of Constantinople; and the most intrepid patriots, the most faithful servants were rewarded by the wealth and honours of the Byzantine court<sup>115</sup>. The pride of Manuel disdained and rejected a Barbarian colleague; his ambition was excited by the hope of stripping the purple from the German usurpers, and of establishing, in the West, as in the East, his lawful title of sole emperor of the Romans. With this view, he solicited the alliance of the people and the bishop of Rome. Several of the nobles embraced the cause of the Greek monarch; the splendid nuptials of his niece with Odo Frangipani, secured the support of that powerful family<sup>116</sup>, and his royal standard or image was entertained with due reverence in the ancient metropolis<sup>117</sup>. During the quarrel between Frederic and Alexander the third, the pope twice received in the Vatican the ambassadors of Constantinople. They flattered his

piety by the long-promised union of the two churches, tempted the avarice of his venal court, and exhorted the Roman pontiff to seize the just provocation, the favourable moment, to humble the savage insolence of the Alemanni, and to acknowledge the true representative of Constantine and Augustus<sup>118</sup>.

But these Italian conquests, this universal reign, soon escaped from the hand of the Greek emperor. His first demands were eluded by the prudence of Alexander the third, who paused on this deep and momentous revolution<sup>119</sup>; nor could the pope be seduced by a personal dispute to renounce the perpetual inheritance of the Latin name. After his re-union with Frederic, he spoke a more peremptory language, confirmed the acts of his predecessors, excommunicated the adherents of Manuel, and pronounced the final separation of the churches, or at least the empires, of Constantinople and Rome<sup>120</sup>. The free cities of Lombardy no longer remembered their foreign benefactor, and without preserving the friendship of Ancona, he soon incurred the enmity of Venice<sup>121</sup>. By his own avarice or the complaints of his subjects, the Greek emperor was provoked to arrest the persons, and confiscate the effects, of the Venetian merchants. This violation of the public faith exasperated a free and commercial people: one hundred gallies were launched and armed in as many days; they swept the coasts of Dalmatia and Greece; but after some mutual wounds, the war was terminated by an agreement, inglorious to

Failure of  
his designs.

## 188 THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. the empire, insufficient for the republic; and a  
LVI. complete vengeance of these and of fresh injuries, was reserved for the succeeding generation. The lieutenant of Manuel had informed his sovereign that he was strong enough to quell any domestic revolt of Apulia and Calabria; but that his forces were inadequate to resist the impending attack of the king of Sicily. His prophecy was soon verified: the death of Palæologus devolved the command on several chiefs, alike eminent in rank, alike defective in military talents; the Greeks were oppressed by land and sea; and a captive remnant that escaped the swords of the Normans and Saracens, abjured all future hostility against the person or dominions of their conqueror<sup>133</sup>. Yet the king of Sicily esteemed the courage and constancy of Manuel, who had landed a second army on the Italian shore: he respectfully addressed the new Justinian; solicited a peace or truce of thirty years, accepted as a gift, the regal title; and acknowledged himself the military vassal of the Roman empire<sup>134</sup>. The Byzantine Cæsars acquiesced in this shadow of dominion, without expecting, perhaps without desiring, the service of a Norman army; and the truce of thirty years was not disturbed by any hostilities between Sicily and Constantinople. About the end of that period; the throne of Manuel was usurped by an inhuman tyrant, who had deserved the abhorrence of his country and mankind: the sword of William the second, the grandson of Roger, was drawn by a fugitive of the Comnenian race; and the

Peace with  
the Normans,  
A. D. 1156.



subjects of Andronicus might salute the strangers as friends, since they detested their sovereign as the worst of enemies. The Latin historians<sup>114</sup> expatiate on the rapid progress of the four counts who invaded Romania with a fleet and army, and reduced many castles and cities to the obedience of the king of Sicily. The Greeks<sup>115</sup> accuse and magnify the wanton and sacrilegious cruelties that were perpetrated in the sack of Thessalonica the second city of the empire. The former deplore the fate of those invincible but unsuspecting warriors who were destroyed by the arts of a vanquished foe. The latter applaud, in songs of triumph, the repeated victories of their countrymen on the sea of Marmora or Propontis, on the banks of the Strymon, and under the walls of Durazzo. A revolution which punished the crimes of Andronicus, had united against the Franks the zeal and courage of the successful insurgents: ten thousand were slain in battle, and Isaac Angelus, the new emperor, might indulge his vanity or vengeance in the treatment of four thousand captives. Such was the event of the last contest between the Greeks and Normans: before the expiration of twenty years, the rival nations were lost or degraded in foreign servitude; and the successors of Constantine did not long survive to insult the fall of the Sicilian monarchy.

The sceptre of Roger successively devolved to his son and grandson: they might be confounded under the name of William; they are strongly discriminated by the epithets of the *bad* and the

C H A P.

LVI.

Last war of  
the Greeks  
and Nor-  
mans,  
A. D. 1185.

William I.  
the Bad, king  
of Sicily,  
A. D. 1154,  
Feb. 26—

CHAP. *good*: but these epithets, which appear to describe the perfection of vice and virtue, cannot strictly be applied to either of the Norman princes. When he was roused to arms by danger and shame, the first William did not degenerate from the valour of his race; but his temper was slothful; his manners were dissolute; his passions headstrong and mischievous; and the monarch is responsible, not only for his personal vices, but for those of Majo, the great admiral, who abused the confidence, and conspired against the life, of his benefactor. From the Arabian conquest, Sicily had imbibed a deep tincture of Oriental manners; the despotism, the pomp, and even the haram, of a sultan; and a Christian people was oppressed and insulted by the ascendant of the eunuchs, who openly professed, or secretly cherished, the religion of Mahomet. An eloquent historian of the times<sup>136</sup> has delineated the misfortunes of his country<sup>137</sup>: the ambition and fall of the ungrateful Majo; the revolt and punishment of his assassins; the imprisonment and deliverance of the king himself; the private feuds that arose from the public confusion; and the various forms of calamity and discord which afflicted Palermo, the island, and the continent, during the reign of William the first, and the minority of his son. The youth, innocence, and beauty of William the second<sup>138</sup>, endeared him to the nation: the factions were reconciled; the laws were revived; and from the manhood to the premature death of that amiable prince, Sicily enjoyed a short season of peace,

LVI.  
A. D. 1166,  
May 7.

William II.  
the Good,  
A. D. 1166.  
May 7—  
A. D. 1189,  
Nov. 16.

justice, and happiness, whose value was enhanced by the remembrance of the past and the dread of futurity. The legitimate male posterity of Tancred of Hauteville, was extinct in the person of the second William; but his aunt, the daughter of Roger, had married the most powerful prince of the age; and Henry the sixth, the son of Frederic Barbarossa, descended from the Alps, to claim the Imperial crown and the inheritance of his wife. Against the unanimous wish of a free people, this inheritance could only be acquired by arms; and I am pleased to transcribe the style and sense of the historian Falcandus, who writes at the moment and on the spot, with the feelings of a patriot and the prophetic eye of a statesman.

“ Constantia, the daughter of Sicily, nursed from  
 “ her cradle in the pleasures and plenty, and  
 “ educated in the arts and manners, of this for-  
 “ tunate isle, departed long since to enrich the  
 “ Barbarians with our treasures, and now returns,  
 “ with her savage allies, to contaminate the  
 “ beauties of her venerable parent. Already I  
 “ behold the swarms of angry Barbarians: our  
 “ opulent cities, the places flourishing in a long  
 “ peace, are shaken with fear, desolated by slaugh-  
 “ ter, consumed by rapine, and polluted by  
 “ intemperance and lust. I see the massacre or  
 “ captivity of our citizens, the rapes of our vir-  
 “ gins and matrons ”. In this extremity (he in-  
 “ terrogates a friend) how must the Sicilians act?  
 “ By the unanimous election of a king of valour  
 “ and experience, Sicily and Calabria might yet

Lamentation  
of the histo-  
rian Falcandus.

C H A P.

LVI.

“ be preserved ”; for in the levity of the Apulians, ever eager for new revolutions, I can repose neither confidence nor hope ”. Should Calabria be lost, the lofty towers, the numerous youth, and the naval strength, of Messina, might guard the passage against a foreign invader. If the savage Germans coalesce with the pirates of Messina; if they destroy with fire the fruitful region, so often wasted by the fires of mount Ætna, what resource will be left for the interior parts of the island, these noble cities which should never be violated by the hostile footsteps of a Barbarian? Catana has again been overwhelmed by an earthquake: the ancient virtue of Syracuse expires in poverty and solitude; but Palermo is still crowned with a diadem, and her triple walls inclose the active multitudes of Christians and Saracens. If the two nations, under one king, can unite for their common safety, they may rush on the Barbarians with invincible arms. But if the Saracens, fatigued by a repetition of injuries, should now retire and rebel; if they should occupy the castles of the mountains and sea-coast, the unfortunate Christians, exposed to a double attack, and placed as it were between the hammer and the anvil, must resign themselves to hopeless and inevitable servitude. We must not forget, that a priest here prefers his country to his religion; and that the Moslems, whose alliance he seeks, were still numerous and powerful in the state of Sicily.

The

The hopes, or at least the wishes, of Falcandus, were at first gratified by the free and unanimous election of Tancred, the grandson of the first king, whose birth was illegitimate, but whose civil and military virtues shone without a blemish. During four years, the term of his life and reign, he stood in arms on the farthest verge of the Apulian frontier, against the powers of Germany; and the restitution of a royal captive, of Constantia herself, without injury or ransom, may appear to surpass the most liberal measure of policy or reason. After his decease, the kingdom of his widow and infant son fell without a struggle; and Henry pursued his victorious march from Capua to Palermo. The political balance of Italy was destroyed by his success; and if the pope and the free cities had consulted their obvious and real interest, they would have combined the powers of earth and heaven to prevent the dangerous union of the German empire with the kingdom of Sicily. But the subtle policy, for which the Vatican has so often been praised or arraigned, was on this occasion blind and inactive; and if it were true that Celestine the third had kicked away the Imperial crown from the head of the prostrate Henry<sup>117</sup>, such an act of impotent pride could serve only to cancel an obligation and provoke an enemy. The Genoese, who enjoyed a beneficial trade and establishment in Sicily, listened to the promise of his boundless gratitude and speedy departure<sup>118</sup>: their fleet commanded the streights of Messina, and opened

C H A P.

LVI.

Conquest of  
the kingdom  
of Sicily by  
the emperor  
Henry VI.  
A. D. 1174.

CHAP.  
LVI.

the harbour of Palermo, and the first act of his government was to abolish the privileges, and to seize the property, of these imprudent allies. The last hope of Falcandus was defeated by the discord of the Christians and Mahometans: they fought in the capital; several thousands of the latter were slain; but their surviving brethren fortified the mountains, and disturbed above thirty years the peace of the island. By the policy of Frederic the second, sixty thousand Saracens were transplanted to Nocera in Apulia. In their wars against the Roman church, the emperor and his son Mainfroy were strengthened and disgraced by the service of the enemies of Christ; and this national colony maintained their religion and manners in the heart of Italy, till they were extirpated, at the end of the thirteenth century, by the zeal and revenge of the house of Anjou<sup>11</sup>. All the calamities which the prophetic orator had deplored, were surpassed by the cruelty and avarice of the German conqueror. He violated the royal sepulchres, and explored the secret treasures of the palace, Palermo, and the whole kingdom: the pearls and jewels, however precious, might be easily removed; but one hundred and sixty horses were laden with the gold and silver of Sicily<sup>12</sup>. The young king, his mother and sisters, and the nobles of both sexes, were separately confined in the fortresses of the Alps; and, on the slightest rumour of rebellion, the captives were deprived of life, of their eyes, or of the hope of posterity. Constantia herself was

touched with sympathy for the miseries of her country; and the heirs of the Norman line might struggle to check her despotic husband, and to save the patrimony of her new-born son, of an emperor so famous in the next age under the name of Frederic the second. Ten years after this revolution, the French monarchs annexed to their crown the dutchy of Normandy: the sceptre of her ancient dukes had been transmitted, by a grand-daughter of William the Conqueror, to the house of Plantagenet; and the adventurous Normans, who had raised so many trophies in France, England, and Ireland, in Apulia, Sicily, and the East, were lost, either in victory or servitude, among the vanquished nations.

Final ex-  
tinction of  
the Normans  
A. D. 1204,

## CHAP. LVII.

*The Turks of the House of Seljuk. — Their Revolt against Mahmud Conqueror of Hindostan. — Togrul subdues Persia, and protects the Caliphs. — Defeat and Captivity of the Emperor Romanus Diogenes by Alp Arslan. — Power and Magnificence of Malek Shah. — Conquest of Asia Minor and Syria. — State and Oppression of Jerusalem. — Pilgrimages to the holy Sepulchre.*

CHAP.  
LVII.  
THE  
TURKS.

FROM the isle of Sicily, the reader must transport himself beyond the Caspian Sea, to the original seat of the Turks or Turkmans, against whom the first crusade was principally directed. Their Scythian empire of the sixth century was long since dissolved; but the name was still famous among the Greeks and Orientals; and the fragments of the nation, each a powerful and independent people, were scattered over the desert from China to the Oxus and the Danube: the colony of Hungarians was admitted into the republic of Europe, and the thrones of Asia were occupied by slaves and soldiers of Turkish extraction. While Apulia and Sicily were subdued by the Norman lance, a swarm of these northern shepherds overspread the kingdoms of Persia: their princes of the race of Seljuk, erected a



splendid and solid empire from Samarcand to the confines of Greece and Egypt; and the Turks have maintained their dominion in Asia Minor, till the victorious crescent has been planted on the dome of St. Sophia.

One of the greatest of the Turkish princes, was Mamood or Mahmud<sup>1</sup>, the Gaznevide, who reigned in the eastern provinces of Persia, one thousand years after the birth of Christ. His father Sebectagi was the slave of the slave of the slave of the commander of the faithful. But in this descent of servitude, the first degree was merely titular, since it was filled by the sovereign of Transoxiana and Chorasan, who still paid a nominal allegiance to the caliph of Bagdad. The second rank was that of a minister of state, a lieutenant of the Samanides<sup>2</sup>, who broke, by his revolt, the bonds of political slavery. But the third step was a state of real and domestic servitude in the family of that rebel; from which Sebectagi, by his courage and dexterity, ascended to the supreme command of the city and province of Gazna<sup>3</sup>, as the son-in-law and successor of his grateful master. The falling dynasty of the Samanides was at first protected, and at last overthrown, by their servants; and, in the public disorders, the fortune of Mahmud continually encreased. For him, the title of *sultan*<sup>4</sup> was first invented; and his kingdom was enlarged from Transoxiana to the neighbourhood of Ispahan, from the shores of the Caspian to the mouth of the Indus. But the principal source of his fame and riches was the

Mahmud, the  
Gaznevide,  
A. D.  
997—1028.

## CHAP

## LVII.

His twelve  
expeditions  
in Hindo-  
ostan.

holy war which he waged against the Gentoos of Hindoostan. In this foreign narrative I may not consume a page; and a volume would scarcely suffice to recapitulate the battles and sieges of his twelve expeditions. Never was the Musulman hero dismayed by the inclemency of the seasons, the height of the mountains, the breadth of the rivers, the barrenness of the desert, the multitudes of the enemy, or the formidable array of their elephants of war'. The sultan of Gazna surpassed the limits of the conquests of Alexander: after a march of three months, over the hills of Cashmir and Thibet, he reached the famous city of Kinnoge', on the Upper Ganges; and, in a naval combat on one of the branches of the Indus, he fought and vanquished four thousand boats of the natives. Dehli, Lahor, and Multan, were compelled to open their gates: the fertile kingdom of Guzarat attracted his ambition and tempted his stay; and his avarice indulged the fruitless project of discovering the golden and aromatic isles of the Southern Ocean. On the payment of a tribute, the *rajahs* preserved their dominions; the people, their lives and fortunes; but to the religion of Hindoostan, the zealous Musulman was cruel and inexorable: many hundred temples, or pagodas, were levelled with the ground; many thousand idols were demolished; and the servants of the prophet were stimulated and rewarded by the precious materials of which they were composed. The pagoda of Sumnat was situate on the promontory of Guzarat, in the

neighbourhood of Diu, one of the last remaining possessions of the Portuguese. It was endowed with the revenue of two thousand villages; two thousand Brahmins were consecrated to the service of the Deity, whom they washed each morning and evening in water from the distant Ganges: the subordinate ministers consisted of three hundred musicians, three hundred barbers, and five hundred dancing girls, conspicuous for their birth or beauty. Three sides of the temple were protected by the ocean, the narrow isthmus was fortified by a natural or artificial precipice; and the city and adjacent country were peopled by a nation of fanatics. They confessed the sins and the punishment of Kinnoge and Dehli; but if the impious stranger should presume to approach *their* holy precincts, he would surely be overwhelmed by a blast of the Divine vengeance. By this challenge, the faith of Mahmud was animated to a personal trial of the strength of this Indian deity. Fifty thousand of his worshippers were pierced by the spear of the Moslems: the walls were scaled; the sanctuary was profaned; and the conqueror aimed a blow of his iron mace at the head of the idol. The trembling Brahmins are said to have offered ten millions sterling for his ransom; and it was urged by the wisest counselors, that the destruction of a stone image would not change the hearts of the Gentoos; and that such a sum might be dedicated to the relief of the true believers. "Your reasons," replied the Sultan, "are specious and strong; but never in

CHAP. “ the eyes of posterity shall Mahmud appear as  
 LVII. “ a merchant of idols.” He repeated his blows, and a treasure of pearls and rubies, concealed in the belly of the statue, explained in some degree the devout prodigality of the Brahmins. The fragments of the idols were distributed to Gazna, Mecca, and Medina. Bagdad listened to the edifying tale; and Mahmud was saluted by the caliph with the title of guardian of the fortune and faith of Mahomet.

His character.

From the paths of blood, and such is the history of nations, I cannot refuse to turn aside to gather some flowers of science or virtue. The name of Mahmud the Gaznevide is still venerable in the East: his subjects enjoyed the blessings of prosperity and peace; his vices were concealed by the veil of religion; and two familiar examples will testify his justice and magnanimity. I. As he sat in the Divan, an unhappy subject bowed before the throne to accuse the insolence of a Turkish soldier who had driven him from his house and bed. “ Suspend your clamours ” said Mahmud; “ inform me of his next visit, and ourself in person will judge and punish the offender.” The sultan followed his guide, invested the house with his guards, and extinguishing the torches, pronounced the death of the criminal, who had been seized in the act of rapine and adultery. After the execution of his sentence, the lights were rekindled, Mahmud fell prostrate in prayer, and, rising from the ground, demanded some homely fare, which he devoured with the voraciousness of hunger.

The poor man, whose injury he had avenged, was unable to suppress his astonishment and curiosity; and the courteous monarch condescended to explain the motives of this singular behaviour. "I had reason to suspect that none except one of my sons could dare to perpetrate such an outrage; and I extinguished the lights, that my justice might be blind and inexorable. My prayer was a thanksgiving on the discovery of the offender; and so painful was my anxiety, that I had passed three days without food since the first moment of your complaint." II. The sultan of Gazna had declared war against the dynasty of the Bowides, the sovereigns of the western Persia: he was disarmed by an epistle of the sultana mother, and delayed his invasion till the manhood of her son. "During the life of my husband," said the artful regent, "I was ever apprehensive of your ambition: he was a prince and a soldier worthy of your arms. He is now no more; his sceptre has passed to a woman and a child, and you *dare not* attack their infancy and weakness. How inglorious would be your conquest, how shameful your defeat! and yet the event of war is in the hand of the Almighty." Avarice was the only defect that tarnished the illustrious character of Mahmud; and never has that passion been more richly satiated. The Orientals exceed the measure of credibility in the account of millions of gold and silver, such as the avidity of man has never accumulated; in the magnitude of pearls, diamonds,

and rubies, such as have never been produced by the workmanship of nature'. Yet the soil of Hindostan is impregnated with precious minerals; her trade, in every age, has attracted the gold and silver of the world; and her virgin spoils were rifled by the first of the Mahometan conquerors. His behaviour, in the last days of his life, evinces the vanity of these possessions, so laboriously won, so dangerously held, and so inevitably lost. He surveyed the vast and various chambers of the treasury of Gazna; burst into tears; and again closed the doors, without bestowing any portion of the wealth which he could no longer hope to preserve. The following day he reviewed the state of his military force; one hundred thousand foot, fifty-five thousand horse, and thirteen hundred elephants of battle". He again wept the instability of human greatness; and his grief was embittered by the hostile progress of the *Turkmans*, whom he had introduced into the heart of his Persian kingdom.

Manners and  
emigration of  
the Turks, or  
*Turkmans*,  
A. D.  
930—1029.

. In the modern depopulation of Asia, the regular operation of government and agriculture is confined to the neighbourhood of cities; and the distant country is abandoned to the pastoral tribes of Arabs, Curds, and *Turkmans*". Of the last-mentioned people, two considerable branches extend on either side of the Caspian Sea: the western colony can muster forty thousand soldiers; the eastern, less obvious to the traveller, but more strong and populous, has increased to the number of one hundred thousand families. In the

midst of civilized nations, they preserve the manners of the Scythian desert, remove their encampments with the change of seasons, and feed their cattle among the ruins of palaces and temples. Their flocks and herds are their only riches; their tents, either black or white, according to the colour of the banner, are covered with felt, and of a circular form; their winter apparel is a sheep-skin; a robe of cloth or cotton their summer garment: the features of the men are harsh and ferocious; the countenance of their women is soft and pleasing. Their wandering life maintains the spirit and exercise of arms; they fight on horseback; and their courage is displayed in frequent contests with each other and with their neighbours. For the licence of pasture they pay a slight tribute to the sovereign of the land; but the domestic jurisdiction is in the hands of the chiefs and elders. The first emigration of the eastern Turkmans, the most ancient of their race, may be ascribed to the tenth century of the Christian æra<sup>1</sup>. In the decline of the caliphs, and the weakness of their lieutenants, the barrier of the Jaxartes was often violated: in each invasion, after the victory or retreat of their countrymen, some wandering tribe, embracing the Mahometan faith, obtained a free encampment in the spacious plains and pleasant climate of Transoxiana and Carizme. The Turkish slaves who aspired to the throne encouraged these emigrations, which recruited their armies, awed their subjects and rivals, and protected the frontier against the wilder natives of Turkestan: and this policy was abused by Mahmud the Gaznevide

C H A P. beyond the example of former times. He was  
 LVII. admonished of his error by a chief of the race of  
 Seljuk, who dwelt in the territory of Bochara.  
 The sultan had enquired what supply of men he  
 could furnish for military service. "If you send,"  
 replied Ismael, "one of these arrows into our  
 "camp, fifty thousand of your servants will  
 "mount on horseback." "And if that number,"  
 continued Mahmud, "should not be sufficient?"  
 "Send this second arrow to the hord of Balik,"  
 "and you will find fifty thousand more." "But,"  
 said the Gaznevide, dissembling his anxiety, "if  
 "I should stand in need of the whole force of  
 "your kindred tribes?" "Dispatch my bow,"  
 was the last reply of Ismael, "and as it is circulated  
 "around, the summons will be obeyed by two  
 "hundred thousand horse." The apprehension  
 of such formidable friendship induced Mahmud to  
 transport the most obnoxious tribes into the heart  
 of Chorasan, where they would be separated from  
 their brethren by the river Oxus, and inclosed  
 on all sides by the walls of obedient cities. But  
 the face of the country was an object of temptation  
 rather than terror; and the vigour of government  
 was relaxed by the absence and death of the  
 sultan of Gazna. The shepherds were converted  
 into robbers; the bands of robbers were collected  
 into an army of conquerors: as far as Ispahan  
 and the Tigris, Persia was afflicted by their  
 predatory inroads; and the Turkmans were not  
 ashamed or afraid to measure their courage and  
 numbers with the proudest sovereigns of Asia.



Massoud, the son and successor of Mahmud, had too long neglected the advice of his wisest Omrahs. "Your enemies," they repeatedly urged, "were in their origin a swarm of ants; they are now little snakes; and, unless they be instantly crushed, they will acquire the venom and magnitude of serpents." After some alternatives of truce and hostility, after the repulse or partial success of his lieutenants, the sultan marched in person against the Turkmans, who attacked him on all sides with barbarous shouts and irregular onset. "Massoud," says the Persian historian, "plunged singly to oppose the torrent of gleaming arms, exhibiting such acts of gigantic force and valour as never king had before displayed. A few of his friends, roused by his words and actions, and that innate honour which inspires the brave, seconded their lord so well, that wheresoever he turned his fatal sword, the enemies were mowed down, or retreated before him. But now, when victory seemed to blow on his standard, misfortune was active behind it; for when he looked round, he beheld almost his whole army, excepting that body he commanded in person, devouring the paths of flight." The Gaznevide was abandoned by the cowardice or treachery of some generals of Turkish race; and this memorable day of Zende-can founded in Persia the dynasty of the shepherd kings.

They defeat the Gaznevides and subdue Persia, A. D. 1038.

The victorious Turkmans immediately proceeded to the election of a king; and, if the probable

Dynasty of the Seljukians,

CHAP.

LVII.

A. D.

1038—1152

tale of a Latin historian "deserves any credit, they determined by lot the choice of their new master. A number of arrows were successively inscribed with the name of a tribe, a family, and a candidate; they were drawn from the bundle by the hand of a child; and the important prize was obtained by Togrul Beg, the son of Michael, the son of Seljuk, whose surname was immortalised in the greatness of his posterity. The sultan Mahmud, who valued himself on his skill in national genealogy, professed his ignorance of the family of Seljuk; yet the father of that race appears to have been a chief of power and renown". For a daring intrusion into the haram of his prince, Seljuk was banished from Turkestan: with a numerous tribe of his friends and vassals, he passed the Jaxartes, encamped in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, embraced the religion of Mahomet, and acquired the crown of martyrdom in a war against the infidels. His age, of an hundred and seven years, surpassed the life of his son, and Seljuk adopted the care of his two grandsons, Togrul and Jaafar; the eldest of whom, at the age of forty-five, was invested with the title of sultan, in the royal city of Nishabur. The blind determination of chance was justified by the virtues of the successful candidate. It would be superfluous to praise the valour of a Turk; and the ambition of Togrul "was equal to his valour. By his arms, the Gaznevites were expelled from the eastern kingdoms of Persia, and gradually driven to the

Reign and  
character of  
Togrul Beg,

A. D.

1038—1063

banks of the Indus, in search of a softer and more wealthy conquest. In the West he annihilated the dynasty of the Bowides; and the sceptre of Irak passed from the Persian to the Turkish nation. The princes who had felt, or who feared, the Seljukian arrows, bowed their heads in the dust; by the conquest of Aderbijan, or Media, he approached the Roman confines; and the shepherd presumed to dispatch an ambassador or herald to demand the tribute and obedience of the emperor of Constantinople ". In his own dominions, Togrul was the father of his soldiers and people; by a firm and equal administration Persia was relieved from the evils of anarchy; and the same hands which had been imbrued in blood became the guardians of justice and the public peace. The more rustic, perhaps the wisest, portion of the Turkmans " continued to dwell in the tents of their ancestors; and, from the Oxus to the Euphrates, these military colonies were protected and propagated by their native princes. But the Turks of the court and city were refined by business and softened by pleasure: they imitated the dress, language, and manners, of Persia; and the royal palaces of Nishabur and Rei displayed the order and magnificence of a great monarchy. The most deserving of the Arabians and Persians were promoted to the honours of the state; and the whole body of the Turkish nation embraced with fervour and sincerity the religion of Mahomet. The northern swarms of Barbarians, who overspread both Europe and Asia, have been irreconcilably

- C H A P. separated by the consequences of a similar conduct.  
 LVII. Among the Moslems, as among the Christians, their vague and local traditions have yielded to the reason and authority of the prevailing system, to the fame of antiquity, and the consent of nations. But the triumph of the Koran is more pure and meritorious, as it was not assisted by any visible splendour of worship which might allure the Pagans by some resemblance of idolatry. The first of the Seljukian sultans was conspicuous by his zeal and faith: each day he repeated the five prayers which are enjoined to the true believers: of each week, the two first days were consecrated by an extraordinary fast; and in every city a mosch was completed, before Togrul presumed to lay the foundations of a palace<sup>11</sup>.

He delivers  
 the caliph of  
 Bagdad,  
 A. D. 1055.

With the belief of the Koran, the son of Seljuk imbibed a lively reverence for the successor of the prophet. But that sublime character was still disputed by the caliphs of Bagdad and Egypt, and each of the rivals was solicitous to prove his title in the judgment of the strong though illiterate Barbarians. Mahmud the Gaznevide had declared himself in favour of the line of Abbas; and had treated with indignity the robe of honour which was presented by the Fatimite ambassador. Yet the ungrateful Hahemite had changed with the change of fortune; he applauded the victory of Zendican, and named the Seljukian sultan his temporal vicegerent over the Moslem world. As Togrul executed and enlarged this important trust, he was called to the deliverance

of

of the caliph Cayem, and obeyed the holy summons, which gave a new kingdom to his arms<sup>22</sup>. In the palace of Bagdad, the commander of the faithful still slumbered, a venerable phantom. His servant or master, the prince of the Bowides, could no longer protect him from the insolence of meaner tyrants; and the Euphrates and Tigris were oppressed by the revolt of the Turkish and Arabian emirs. The presence of a conqueror was implored as a blessing; and the transient mischiefs of fire and sword were excused as the sharp but salutary remedies which alone could restore the health of the republic. At the head of an irresistible force, the sultan of Persia marched from Hamadan: the proud were crushed, the prostrate were spared; the prince of the Bowides disappeared; the heads of the most obstinate rebels were laid at the feet of Togrul; and he inflicted a lesson of obedience on the people of Mosul and Bagdad. After the chastisement of the guilty, and the restoration of peace; the royal shepherd accepted the reward of his labours; and a solemn comedy represented the triumph of religious prejudice over Barbarian power<sup>23</sup>. The Turkish sultan embarked on the Tigris, landed at the gate of Racca, and made his public entry on horseback. At the palace-gate he respectfully dismounted, and walked on foot, preceded by his emirs without arms. The caliph was seated behind his black veil: the black garment of the Abbassides was cast over his shoulders, and he held in his hand

CHAP.  
LVII.

His investiture.

CHAP.  
LVII.

the staff of the apostle of God. The conqueror of the East kissed the ground, stood some time in a modest posture, and was led towards the throne by the vizir and an interpreter. After Togrul had seated himself on another throne, his commission was publicly read, which declared him the temporal lieutenant of the vicar of the prophet. He was successively invested with seven robes of honour, and presented with seven slaves, the natives of the seven climates of the Arabian empire. His mystic veil was perfumed with musk; two crowns were placed on his head, two scymetars were girded to his side, as the symbols of a double reign over the East and West. After this inauguration, the sultan was prevented from prostrating himself a second time; but he twice kissed the hand of the commander of the faithful, and his titles were proclaimed by the voice of heralds and the applause of the Moslems. In a second visit to Bagdad, the Seljukian prince again rescued the caliph from his enemies; and devoutly, on foot, led the bridle of his mule from the prison to the palace. Their alliance was cemented by the marriage of Togrul's sister with the successor of the prophet. Without reluctance he had introduced a Turkish virgin into his haram; but Cayem proudly refused his daughter to the sultan, disdained to mingle the blood of the Hashemites with the blood of a Scythian shepherd; and protracted the negotiation many months, till the gradual diminution of his revenue admonished him that he was still in the hands of a master. The royal nuptials were

followed by the death of Togrul himself<sup>22</sup>; as he left no children, his nephew Alp Arslan succeeded to the title and prerogatives of sultan; and his name, after that of the caliph, was pronounced in the public prayers of the Moslems. Yet in this revolution, the Abbassides acquired a larger measure of liberty and power. On the throne of Asia, the Turkish monarchs were less jealous of the domestic administration of Bagdad; and the commanders of the faithful were relieved from the ignominious vexations to which they had been exposed by the presence and poverty of the Persian dynasty.

C H A P.

LVII.

and death,  
A. D. 1063.

Since the fall of the caliphs, the discord and degeneracy of the Saracens respected the Asiatic provinces of Rome; which, by the victories of Nicephorus, Zimisces, and Basil, had been extended as far as Antioch and the eastern boundaries of Armenia. Twenty-five years after the death of Basil, his successors were suddenly assaulted by an unknown race of Barbarians, who united the Scythian valour with the fanaticism of new proselytes, and the art and riches of a powerful monarchy<sup>23</sup>. The myriads of Turkish horse overspread a frontier of six hundred miles from Tauris to Arzeroum, and the blood of one hundred and thirty thousand Christians was a grateful sacrifice to the Arabian prophet. Yet the arms of Togrul did not make any deep or lasting impression on the Greek empire. The torrent rolled away from the open country; the sultan retired without glory or success from the

The Turks  
invade the  
Roman empire,  
A. D. 1050.

CHAP. LVII. siege of an Armenian city; the obscure hostilities were continued or suspended with a vicissitude of events; and the bravery of the Macedonian legions renewed the fame of the conqueror of Asia<sup>16</sup>. The name of Alp Arslan, the valiant lion, is expressive of the popular idea of the perfection of man; and the successor of Togrul displayed the fierceness and generosity of the royal animal. He passed the Euphrates at the head of the Turkish cavalry, and entered Cæsarea, the metropolis of Cappadocia, to which he had been attracted by the fame and wealth of the temple of St. Basil. The solid structure resisted the destroyer: but he carried away the doors of the shrine incrusted with gold and pearls, and profaned the relics of the tutelar saint, whose mortal frailties were now covered by the venerable rust of antiquity. The final conquest of Armenia and Georgia was achieved by Alp Arslan. In Armenia, the title of a kingdom, and the spirit of a nation, were annihilated: the artificial fortifications were yielded by the mercenaries of Constantinople; by strangers without faith, veterans without pay or arms, and recruits without experience or discipline. The loss of this important frontier was the news of a day; and the Catholics were neither surprised nor displeased, that a people so deeply infected with the Nestorian and Eutychian errors, had been delivered by Christ and his mother into the hands of the infidels<sup>17</sup>. The woods and vallies of mount Caucasus were more strenuously defended by the native Georgians<sup>18</sup> or Iberians: but the Turkish

Reign of  
Alp Arslan,  
A. D.  
1063—1072.

Conquest of  
Armenia and  
Georgia,  
A. D.  
1055 1068.



sultan and his son Malek were indefatigable in this holy war; their captives were compelled to promise a spiritual as well as temporal obedience; and, instead of their collars and bracelets, an iron horse-shoe, a badge of ignominy, was imposed on the infidels who still adhered to the worship of their fathers. The change, however, was not sincere or universal; and, through ages of servitude, the Georgians have maintained the succession of their princes and bishops. But a race of men, whom nature has cast in her most perfect mould, is degraded by poverty, ignorance, and vice; their profession, and still more their practice, of Christianity is an empty name; and if they have emerged from heresy, it is only because they are too illiterate to remember a metaphysical creed."

The false or genuine magnanimity of Mahmud the Gaznevide, was not imitated by Alp Arslan; and he attacked without scruple the Greek empress Eudocia and her children. His alarming progress compelled her to give herself and her sceptre to the hand of a soldier; and Romanus Diogenes was invested with the Imperial purple. His patriotism, and perhaps his pride, urged him from Constantinople within two months after his accession; and the next campaign he most scandalously took the field during the holy festival of Easter. In the palace, Diogenes was no more than the husband of Eudocia: in the camp, he was the emperor of the Romans, and he sustained that character with feeble resources

The emperor  
Romanus  
Diogenes,  
A. D.  
1068 — 1071.

CHAP.  
LVII.

and invincible courage. By his spirit and success, the soldiers were taught to act, the subjects to hope, and the enemies to fear. The Turks had penetrated into the heart of Phrygia; but the sultan himself had resigned to his emirs the prosecution of the war; and their numerous detachments were scattered over Asia in the security of conquest. Laden with spoil and careless of discipline, they were separately surprised and defeated by the Greeks: the activity of the emperor seemed to multiply his presence; and while they heard of his expedition to Antioch, the enemy felt his sword on the hills of Trebizond. In three laborious campaigns, the Turks were driven beyond the Euphrates: in the fourth and last, Romanus undertook the deliverance of Armenia. The desolation of the land obliged him to transport a supply of two months provisions; and he marched forwards to the siege of Malazkerd<sup>1</sup>, an important fortress in the midway between the modern cities of Arzeroum and Van. His army amounted, at the least, to one hundred thousand men. The troops of Constantinople were reinforced by the disorderly multitudes of Phrygia and Cappadocia; but the real strength was composed of the subjects and allies of Europe, the legions of Macedonia, and the squadrons of Bulgaria; the Uzi, a Moldavian hord, who were themselves of the Turkish race<sup>2</sup>; and, above all, the mercenary and adventurous bands of French and Normans. Their lances were commanded by the valiant Urfel of

Baliol, the kinsman or father of the Scottish kings", and were allowed to excel in the exercise of arms, or, according to the Greek style, in the practice of the Pyrrhic dance. C H A P.  
LVII.

On the report of this bold invasion, which threatened his hereditary dominions, Alp Arslan flew to the scene of action at the head of forty thousand horse". His rapid and skilful evolutions distressed and dismayed the superior numbers of the Greeks; and in the defeat of Basilacius, one of their principal generals, he displayed the first example of his valour and clemency. The imprudence of the emperor had separated his forces after the reduction of Malazkerd. It was in vain that he attempted to recal the mercenary Franks: they refused to obey his summons; he disdained to await their return: the desertion of the Uzi filled his mind with anxiety and suspicion; and against the most salutary advice he rushed forwards to speedy and decisive action. Had he listened to the fair proposals of the sultan, Romanus might have secured a retreat, perhaps a peace; but in these overtures he supposed the fear or weakness of the enemy, and his answer was conceived in the tone of insult and defiance. "If the Barbarian wishes for peace, let him evacuate the ground which he occupies for the encampment of the Romans, and surrender his city and palace of Rei as a pledge of his sincerity." Alp Arslan smiled at the vanity of the demand, but he wept the death of so many faithful Moslems; and, after a devout prayer,

Defeat of the  
Romans,  
A. D. 1071  
August.

CHAP. proclaimed a free permission to all who were  
 LVII, desirous of retiring from the field. With his own hands he tied up his horse's tail, exchanged his bow and arrows for a mace and scymetar, clothed himself in a white garment, perfumed his body with musk, and declared that if he were vanquished, that spot should be the place of his burial". The sultan himself had affected to cast away his missile weapons; but his hopes of victory were placed in the arrows of the Turkish cavalry, whose squadrons were loosely distributed in the form of a crescent. Instead of the successive lines and reserves of the Grecian tactics, Romanus led his army in a single and solid phalanx, and pressed with vigour and impatience the artful and yielding resistance of the Barbarians. In this desultory and fruitless combat he wasted the greater part of a summer's day, till prudence and fatigue compelled him to return to his camp. But a retreat is always perilous in the face of an active foe; and no sooner had the standard been turned to the rear than the phalanx was broken by the base cowardice, or the baser jealousy, of Andronicus, a rival prince, who disgraced his birth and the purple of the Cæsars". The Turkish squadrons poured a cloud of arrows on this moment of confusion and lassitude; and the horns of their formidable crescent were closed in the rear of the Greeks. In the destruction of the army and pillage of the camp, it would be needless to mention the number of the slain or captives. The Byzantine writers deplore the loss

of an inestimable pearl: they forget to mention, C H A P.  
 that in this fatal day the Asiatic provinces of LVII.  
 Rome were irretrievably sacrificed.

As long as a hope survived, Romanus attempted to rally and save the relics of his army. When the centre, the Imperial station, was left naked on all sides, and encompassed by the victorious Turks, he still, with desperate courage, maintained the fight till the close of day, at the head of the brave and faithful subjects who adhered to his standard. They fell around him: his horse was slain, the emperor was wounded; yet he stood alone and intrepid, till he was oppressed and bound by the strength of multitudes. The glory of this illustrious prize was disputed by a slave and a soldier; a slave who had seen him on the throne of Constantinople, and a soldier whose extreme deformity had been excused on the promise of some signal service. Despoiled of his arms, his jewels, and his purple, Romanus spent a dreary and perilous night on the field of battle, amidst a disorderly crowd of the meaner Barbarians. In the morning the royal captive was presented to Alp Arslan, who doubted of his fortune, till the identity of the person was ascertained by the report of his ambassadors, and by the more pathetic evidence of Basilacius, who embraced with tears the feet of his unhappy sovereign. The successor of Constantine, in a plebeian habit, was led into the Turkish divan, and commanded to kiss the ground before the lord of Asia. He reluctantly obeyed; and Alp Arslan, starting from

Captivity  
and delivery  
ance of the  
emperor.

CHAP.  
LVII.

his throne, is said to have planted his foot on the neck of the Roman emperor". But the fact is doubtful; and if, in this moment of insolence, the sultan complied with a national custom, the rest of his conduct has extorted the praise of his bigoted foes, and may afford a lesson to the most civilized ages. He instantly raised the royal captive from the ground; and thrice clasping his hand with tender sympathy, assured him, that his life and dignity should be inviolate in the hands of a prince who had learned to respect the majesty of his equals and the vicissitudes of fortune. From the divan, Romanus was conducted to an adjacent tent, where he was served with pomp and reverence by the officers of the sultan, who, twice each day, seated him in the place of honour at his own table. In a free and familiar conversation of eight days, not a word, not a look, of insult, escaped from the conqueror; but he severely censured the unworthy subjects who had deserted their valiant prince in the hour of danger, and gently admonished his antagonist of some errors which he had committed in the management of the war. In the preliminaries of negotiation, Alp Arslan asked him what treatment he expected to receive, and the calm indifference of the emperor displays the freedom of his mind. "If you are cruel," said he, "you will take my life; if you listen to pride, you will drag me at your chariot-wheels; if you consult your interest, you will accept a ransom, and restore me to my country." "And what," continued the

sultan, " would have been your own behaviour, " had fortune smiled on your arms ?" The reply of the Greek betrays a sentiment, which prudence, and even gratitude, should have taught him to suppress. " Had I vanquished," he fiercely said, " I would have inflicted on thy body many a " stripe." The Turkish conqueror smiled at the insolence of his captive; observed that the Christian law inculcated the love of enemies and forgiveness of injuries; and nobly declared, that he would not imitate an example which he condemned. After mature deliberation, Alp Arslan dictated the terms of liberty and peace, a ransom of a million, an annual tribute of three hundred and sixty thousand pieces of gold", the marriage of the royal children, and the deliverance of all the Moslems who were in the power of the Greeks. Romanus, with a sigh, subscribed this treaty, so disgraceful to the majesty of the empire; he was immediately invested with a Turkish robe of honour; his nobles and patricians were restored to their sovereign; and the sultan, after a courteous embrace, dismissed him with rich presents and a military guard. No sooner did he reach the confines of the empire, than he was informed that the palace and provinces had disclaimed their allegiance to a captive: a sum of two hundred thousand pieces was painfully collected; and the fallen monarch transmitted this part of his ransom, with a sad confession of his impotence and disgrace. The generosity, or perhaps the ambition, of the sultan, prepared to espouse the cause of his

ally; but his designs were prevented by the defeat, imprisonment, and death, of Romanus Diogenes<sup>14</sup>.

Death of  
Alp Arslan,  
A. D. 1072

In the treaty of peace, it does not appear that Alp Arslan extorted any province or city from the captive emperor; and his revenge was satisfied with the trophies of his victory, and the spoils of Anatolia, from Antioch to the Black Sea. The fairest part of Asia was subject to his laws: twelve hundred princes, or the sons of princes, stood before his throne; and two hundred thousand soldiers marched under his banners. The sultan disdained to pursue the fugitive Greeks; but he meditated the more glorious conquest of Turkestan, the original seat of the house of Seljuk. He moved from Bagdad to the banks of the Oxus; a bridge was thrown over the river; and twenty days were consumed in the passage of his troops. But the progress of the great king was retarded by the governor of Berzem; and Joseph the Carizmian presumed to defend his fortress against the powers of the East. When he was produced a captive in the royal tent, the sultan, instead of praising his valour, severely reproached his obstinate folly; and the insolent replies of the rebel provoked a sentence, that he should be fastened to four stakes and left to expire in that painful situation. At this command the desperate Carizmian, drawing a dagger, rushed headlong towards the throne: the guards raised their battle-axes; their zeal was checked by Alp Arslan, the most skillful archer of the age; he drew his bow, but



his foot slipped, the arrow glanced aside, and he received in his breast the dagger of Joseph, who was instantly cut in pieces. The wound was mortal; and the Turkish prince bequeathed a dying admonition to the pride of kings. "In my youth," said Alp Arslan, "I was advised by a sage, to humble myself before God; to distrust my own strength; and never to despise the most contemptible foe. I have neglected these lessons; and my neglect has been deservedly punished. Yesterday, as from an eminence I beheld the numbers, the discipline, and the spirit, of my armies, the earth seemed to tremble under my feet; and I said in my heart, surely thou art the king of the world, the greatest and most invincible of warriors. These armies are no longer mine; and in the confidence of my personal strength, I now fall by the hand of an assassin." Alp Arslan possessed the virtues of a Turk and a Musulman; his voice and stature commanded the reverence of mankind; his face was shaded with long whiskers; and his ample turban was fashioned in the shape of a crown. The remains of the sultan were deposited in the tomb of the Seljukian dynasty, and the passenger might read and meditate this useful inscription: "O YE WHO HAVE SEEN THE GLORY OF ALP ARSLAN EXALTED TO THE HEAVENS, REPAIR TO MARU, AND YOU WILL BEHOLD IT BURIED IN THE DUST!" The annihilation of the inscription, and the tomb itself, more forcibly proclaims the instability of human greatness.

## C H A P.

## LVII.

Reign and  
prosperity of  
Malek Shah,  
A. D.

1072—1092.

During the life of Alp Arslan, his eldest son had been acknowledged as the future sultan of the Turks. On his father's death, the inheritance was disputed by an uncle, a cousin, and a brother: they drew their scymetars, and assembled their followers; and the triple victory of Malek Shah "established his own reputation and the right of primogeniture. In every age, and more especially in Asia, the thirst of power has inspired the same passions and occasioned the same disorders; but, from the long series of civil war, it would not be easy to extract a sentiment more pure and magnanimous than is contained in a saying of the Turkish prince. On the eve of the battle, he performed his devotions at Thous, before the tomb of the Imam Riza. As the sultan rose from the ground, he asked his vizir Nizam, who had knelt beside him, what had been the object of his secret petition, "that your arms may be crowned "with victory," was the prudent, and most probably the sincere answer of the minister. "For "my part," replied the generous Malek, "I "implored the Lord of hosts, that he would take "from me my life and crown, if my brother be "more worthy than myself to reign over the "Moslems." The favourable judgment of heaven was ratified by the caliph; and for the first time, the sacred title of commander of the faithful was communicated to a Barbarian. But this Barbarian, by his personal merit, and the extent of his empire, was the greatest prince of his age. After the settlement of Persia and Syria, he marched at

the head of innumerable armies, to achieve the conquest of Turkestan, which had been undertaken by his father. In his passage of the Oxus, the boatmen, who had been employed in transporting some troops, complained, that their payment was assigned on the revenues of Antioch. The sultan frowned at this preposterous choice; but he smiled at the artful flattery of his vizir. "It was not to postpone their reward, that I selected those remote places, but to leave a memorial to posterity, that under your reign, Antioch and the Oxus were subject to the same sovereign." But this description of his limits was unjust and parsimonious: beyond the Oxus, he reduced to his obedience the cities of Bochara, Carizme, and Samarcand, and crushed each rebellious slave, or independent savage, who dared to resist. Malek passed the Sihon or Jaxartes, the last boundary of Persian civilization: the hords of Turkestan yielded to his supremacy; his name was inserted on the coins, and in the prayers of Cashgar, a Tartar kingdom on the extreme borders of China. From the Chinese frontier, he stretched his immediate jurisdiction or feudatory sway to the west and south, as far as the mountains of Georgia, the neighbourhood of Constantinople, the holy city of Jerusalem, and the spicy groves of Arabia Fœlix. Instead of resigning himself to the luxury of his Haram, the shepherd king, both in peace and war, was in action and in the field. By the perpetual motion of the royal camp, each province was successively blessed with

CHAP. his presence; and he is said to have perambulated  
 LVII. twelve times the wide extent of his dominions, which surpassed the *Asiatic* reign of Cyrus and the caliphs. Of these expeditions, the most pious and splendid was the pilgrimage of Mecca: the freedom and safety of the caravans were protected by his arms; the citizens and pilgrims were enriched by the profusion of his alms; and the desert was cheered by the places of relief and refreshment, which he instituted for the use of his brethren. Hunting was the pleasure, and even the passion, of the sultan, and his train consisted of forty-seven thousand horses; but after the massacre of a Turkish chace, for each piece of game, he bestowed a piece of gold on the poor, a slight atonement, at the expence of the people, for the cost and mischief of the amusement of kings. In the peaceful prosperity of his reign, the cities of Asia were adorned with palaces and hospitals, with moschs and colleges; few departed from his Divan without reward, and none without justice. The language and literature of Persia revived under the house of Seljuk<sup>2</sup>; and if Malek emulated the liberality of a Turk less potent than himself<sup>3</sup>, his palace might resound with the songs of an hundred poets. The sultan bestowed a more serious and learned care on the reformation of the calendar which was effected by a general assembly of the astronomers of the East. By a law of the prophet, the Moslems are confined to the irregular course of the lunar months; in Persia, since the age of Zoroaster, the revolution of the sun  
 has

has been known and celebrated as an annual festival"; but, after the fall of the Magian empire, the intercalation had been neglected; the fractions of minutes and hours were multiplied into days; and the date of the Spring was removed from the sign of Aries to that of Pisces. The reign of Malek was illustrated by the *Gelalgan* era; and all errors, either past or future, were corrected by a computation of time, which surpasses the Julian, and approaches the accuracy of the Gregorian, style".

C H A P.  
LVII.

In a period when Europe was plunged in the deepest Barbarism, the light and splendour of Asia may be ascribed to the docility rather than the knowledge of the Turkish conquerors. An ample share of their wisdom and virtue is due to a Persian vizir, who ruled the empire under the reigns of Alp Arslan and his son. Nizam, one of the most illustrious ministers of the East, was honoured by the caliph as an oracle of religion and science; he was trusted by the sultan as the faithful vicegerent of his power and justice. After an administration of thirty years, the fame of the vizir, his wealth, and even his services, were transformed into crimes. He was overthrown by the insidious arts of a woman and a rival; and his fall was hastened by a rash declaration, that his cap and ink-horn, the badges of his office, were connected by the divine decree with the throne and diadem of the sultan. At the age of ninety-three years, the venerable statesman was dismissed by his master, accused by his enemies, and murdered by a

His death.  
A.D. 1092.

C H A P. fanatic: the last words of Nizam attested his inno-  
 LVII. cence, and the remainder of Malek's life was short  
 and inglorious. From Ispahan, the scene of this  
 disgraceful transaction, the sultan moved to Bag-  
 dad with the design of transplanting the caliph,  
 and of fixing his own residence in the capital of  
 the Moslem world. The feeble successor of Ma-  
 homet obtained a respite of ten days; and before  
 the expiration of the term, the Barbarian was  
 summoned by the angel of death. His ambassadors  
 at Constantinople had asked in marriage a Roman  
 princess; but the proposal was decently eluded;  
 and the daughter of Alexius, who might herself  
 have been the victim, expresses her abhorrence  
 of this unnatural conjunction". The daughter  
 of the sultan was bestowed on the caliph Mostadi,  
 with the imperious condition, that, renouncing  
 the society of his wives and concubines, he should  
 for ever confine himself to this honourable alliance.

Division of  
 the Seljukian  
 empire.

The greatness and unity of the Turkish empire  
 expired in the person of Malek Shah. His vacant  
 throne was disputed by his brother and his four  
 sons; and, after a series of civil wars, the treaty  
 which reconciled the surviving candidates con-  
 firmed a lasting separation in the *Persian* dynasty,  
 the eldest and principal branch of the house of  
 Seljuk. The three younger dynasties were those  
 of *Kermyn*, of *Syria*, and of *Roum*: the first of these  
 commanded an extensive, though obscure", domi-  
 nion on the shores of the Indian ocean": the  
 second expelled the Arabian princes of Aleppo  
 and Damascus; and the third, our peculiar care,

invaded the Roman provinces of Asia Minor. The generous policy of Malek contributed to their elevation; he allowed the princes of his blood, even those whom he had vanquished in the field, to seek new kingdoms worthy of their ambition; nor was he displeased that they should draw away the more ardent spirits, who might have disturbed the tranquillity of his reign. As the supreme head of his family and nation, the great sultan of Persia commanded the obedience and tribute of his royal brethren: the thrones of Kerman and Nice, of Aleppo and Damascus; the Atabeks, and emirs of Syria and Mesopotamia, erected their standards under the shadow of his sceptre; and the hords of Turkmans overspread the plains of the western Asia. After the death of Malek, the bands of union and subordination were relaxed and finally dissolved: the indulgence of the house of Seljuk invested their slaves with the inheritance of kingdoms; and, in the Oriental style, a crowd of princes arose from the dust of their feet.

A prince of the royal line, Cutulmish, the son of Izrail, the son of Seljuk, had fallen in a battle against Alp Arslan; and the humane victor had dropt a tear over his grave. His five sons, strong in arms, ambitious of power, and eager for revenge, unsheathed their scymetars against the son of Alp Arslan. The two armies expected the signal, when the caliph, forgetful of the majesty which secluded him from vulgar eyes, interposed his venerable mediation. "Instead of shedding  
"the blood of your brethren, your brethren

Conquest of  
Asia Minor  
by the Turks  
A. D.  
1074—1094.

- CHAP. " both in descent and faith, unite your forces in  
 LVII. " an holy war against the Greeks, the enemies  
 " of God and his apostle." They listened to his  
 voice; the sultan embraced his rebellious kinsmen;  
 and the eldest, the valiant Soliman, accepted the  
 royal standard, which gave him the free conquest  
 and hereditary command of the provinces of the  
 Roman empire, from Arzeroum to Constanti-  
 nople, and the unknown regions of the West ".  
 Accompanied by his four brothers, he passed the  
 Euphrates: the Turkish camp was soon seated  
 in the neighbourhood of Kutaich in Phrygia; and  
 his flying cavalry laid waste the country as far  
 as the Hellespont and the Black Sea. Since the  
 decline of the empire, the peninsula of Asia  
 Minor had been exposed to the transient, though  
 destructive, inroads of the Persians and Saracens;  
 but the fruits of a lasting conquest were reserved  
 for the Turkish sultan; and his arms were intro-  
 duced by the Greeks, who aspired to reign on  
 the ruins of their country. Since the captivity of  
 Romanus, six years the feeble son of Eudocia  
 had trembled under the weight of the Imperial  
 crown, till the provinces of the East and West  
 were lost in the same month by a double rebel-  
 lion: of either chief Nicephorus was the common  
 name; but the surnames of Bryennius and Boto-  
 niates distinguish the European and Asiatic candi-  
 dates. Their reasons, or rather their promises,  
 were weighed in the divan; and, after some  
 hesitation, Soliman declared himself in favour of  
 Bottoniates, opened a free passage to his troops in



their march from Antioch to Nice, and joined the banner of the crescent to that of the cross. After his ally had ascended the throne of Constantinople, the sultan was hospitably entertained in the suburb of Chrysopolis or Scutari; and a body of two thousand Turks was transported into Europe, to whose dexterity and courage the new emperor was indebted for the defeat and captivity of his rival Bryennius. But the conquest of Europe was dearly purchased by the sacrifice of Asia: Constantinople was deprived of the obedience and revenue of the provinces beyond the Bosphorus and Hellespont; and the regular progress of the Turks, who fortified the passes of the rivers and mountains, left not a hope of their retreat or expulsion. Another candidate implored the aid of the sultan: Melissenus, in his purple robes and red buskins, attended the motions of the Turkish camp; and the desponding cities were tempted by the summons of a Roman prince, who immediately surrendered them into the hands of the Barbarians. These acquisitions were confirmed by a treaty of peace with the emperor Alexius: his fear of Robert compelled him to seek the friendship of Soliman; and it was not till after the sultan's death that he extended as far as Nicomedia, about sixty miles from Constantinople, the eastern boundary of the Roman world. Trebizond alone, defended on either side by the sea and mountains, preserved at the extremity of the Euxine the ancient

## CHAPTER

## LVII

The Selju-  
kian King-  
dom of  
Roum.

character of a Greek colony, and the future destiny of a Christian empire.

Since the first conquests of the caliphs, the establishment of the Turks in Anatolia or Asia Minor was the most deplorable loss which the church and empire had sustained. By the propagation of the Moslem faith, Soliman deserved the name of *Guzi*, a holy champion; and his new kingdom, of the Romans, or of *Roum*, was added to the tables of Oriental geography. It is described as extending from the Euphrates to Constantinople, from the Black Sea to the confines of Syria; pregnant with mines of silver and iron, of allum and copper, fruitful in corn and wine, and productive of cattle and excellent horses<sup>22</sup>. The wealth of Lydia, the arts of the Greeks, the splendour of the Augustan age, existed only in books and ruins, which were equally obscure in the eyes of the Scythian conquerors. Yet, in the present decay, Anatolia still contains *some* wealthy and populous cities; and, under the Byzantine empire, they were far more flourishing in numbers, size, and opulence. By the choice of the sultan, Nice, the metropolis of Bithynia, was preferred for his palace and fortrefs: the seat of the Seljukian dynasty of Roum was planted one hundred miles from Constantinople; and the divinity of Christ was denied and derided in the same temple in which it had been pronounced by the first general synod of the Catholics. The unity of God, and the mission of Mahomet, were preached in the moschs; the Arabian learning

was taught in the schools; the Cadhis judged according to the law of the Koran; the Turkish manners and language prevailed in the cities; and Türkman camps were scattered over the plains and mountains of Anatolia. On the hard conditions of tribute and servitude, the Greek Christians might enjoy the exercise of their religion; but their most holy churches were profaned; their priests and bishops were insulted "; they were compelled to suffer the triumph of the *Pagans*, and the apostacy of their brethren; many thousand children were marked by the knife of circumcision; and many thousand captives were devoted to the service or the pleasures of their masters ". After the loss of Asia, Antioch still maintained her primitive allegiance to Christ and Cæsar; but the solitary province was separated from all Roman aid, and surrounded on all sides by the Mahometan powers. The despair of Philaretus the governor prepared the sacrifice of his religion and loyalty, had not his guilt been prevented by his son, who hastened to the Nicene palace, and offered to deliver this valuable prize into the hands of Soliman. The ambitious sultan mounted on horseback, and in twelve nights (for he reposed in the day) performed a march of six hundred miles. Antioch was oppressed by the speed and secrecy of his enterprise; and the dependent cities, as far as Laodicea and the confines of Aleppo ", obeyed the example of the metropolis. From Laodicea to the Thracian Bosphorus, or arm of St. George,

CHAP. the conquests and reign of Soliman extended  
 LVII. thirty days journey in length, and in breadth  
 about ten or fifteen, between the rocks of Lycia  
 and the Black Sea ". The Turkish ignorance of  
 navigation protected, for a while, the inglorious  
 safety of the emperor; but no sooner had a fleet  
 of two hundred ships been constructed by the  
 hands of the captive Greeks, than Alexius trem-  
 bled behind the walls of his capital. His plaintive  
 epistles were dispersed over Europe, to excite  
 the compassion of the Latins, and to paint the  
 danger, the weakness, and the riches, of the  
 city of Constantine "

State and pil-  
 grimage of  
 Jerusalem,  
 A. D.  
 638—1099.

But the most interesting conquest of the Selju-  
 kian Turks, was that of Jerusalem ", which  
 soon became the theatre of nations. In their  
 capitulation with Omar, the inhabitants had  
 stipulated the assurance of their religion and pro-  
 perty; but the articles were interpreted by a  
 master against whom it was dangerous to dispute;  
 and in the four hundred years of the reign of the  
 caliphs, the political climate of Jerusalem was  
 exposed to the vicissitudes of storms and sun-  
 shine ". By the encrease of profelytes and popu-  
 lation, the Mahometans might excuse their  
 usurpation of three-fourths of the city: but a  
 peculiar quarter was reserved for the patriarch  
 with his clergy and people; a tribute of two  
 pieces of gold was the price of protection; and  
 the sepulchre of Christ, with the church of the  
 Resurrection, was still left in the hands of his  
 votaries. Of these votaries, the most numerous

and respectable portion were strangers to Jerusalem: the pilgrimages to the Holy Land had been stimulated, rather than suppressed, by the conquest of the Arabs; and the enthusiasm which had always prompted these perilous journies, was nourished by the congenial passions of grief and indignation. A crowd of pilgrims from the East and West continued to visit the holy sepulchre, and the adjacent sanctuaries, more especially at the festival of Easter: and the Greeks and Latins, the Nestorians and Jacobites, the Copts and Abyssinians, the Armenians and Georgians, maintained the chapels, the clergy, and the poor of their respective communions. The harmony of prayer in so many various tongues, the worship of so many nations in the common temple of their religion, might have afforded a spectacle of edification and peace; but the zeal of the Christian sects was embittered by hatred and revenge; and in the kingdom of a suffering Messiah, who had pardoned his enemies, they aspired to command and persecute their spiritual brethren. The pre-eminence was asserted by the spirit and numbers of the Franks; and the greatness of Charlemagne "protected both the Latin pilgrims, and the Catholics of the East. The poverty of Carthage, Alexandria, and Jerusalem, were relieved by the alms of that pious emperor; and many monasteries of Palestine were founded or restored by his liberal devotion. Harun Alrashid, the greatest of the Abassides, esteemed in his Christian brother a similar supremacy of genius

CHAP. and power: their friendship was cemented by a  
 LVII. frequent intercourse of gifts and embassies; and the caliph, without resigning the substantial dominion, presented the emperor with the keys, of the holy sepulchre, and perhaps of the city of Jerusalem. In the decline of the Carlovingian monarchy, the republic of Amalphi promoted the interest of trade and religion in the East. Her vessels transported the Latin pilgrims to the coasts of Egypt and Palestine, and deserved, by their useful imports, the favour and alliance of the Fatimite caliphs “: an annual fair was instituted on mount Calvary; and the Italian merchants founded the convent and hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, the cradle of the monastic and military order, which has since reigned in the isles of Rhodes and of Malta. Had the Christian pilgrims been content to revere the tomb of a prophet, the disciples of Mahomet, instead of blaming, would have imitated, their piety: but these rigid *Unitarians* were scandalised by a worship which represents the birth, death, and resurrection, of a God; the Catholic images were branded with the name of idols; and the Moslems smiled with indignation “ at the miraculous flame, which was kindled on the eve of Easter in the holy sepulchre “. This pious fraud, first devised in the ninth century “, was devoutly cherished by the Latin crusaders, and is annually repeated by the clergy of the Greek, Armenian, and Coptic sects “, who impose on the credulous spectators “ for their own benefit, and that of

their tyrants. In every age, a principle of toleration has been fortified by a sense of interest; and the revenue of the prince and his emir was encreased each year, by the expence and tribute of so many thousand strangers.

The revolution which transferred the sceptre from the Abassides to the Fatimites was a benefit, rather than an injury, to the Holy Land. A sovereign resident in Egypt, was more sensible of the importance of Christian trade; and the emirs of Palestine were less remote from the justice and power of the throne. But the third of these Fatimite caliphs was the famous Hakem <sup>Under the Fatimite caliphs,</sup>, a frantic youth, who was delivered by his impiety and despotism from the fear either of God or man; and whose reign was a wild mixture of vice and folly. <sup>A. D. 969—1076.</sup> Regardless of the most ancient customs of Egypt, he imposed on the women an absolute confinement: the restraint excited the clamours of both sexes: their clamours provoked his fury; a part of Old Cairo was delivered to the flames; and the guards and citizens were engaged many days in a bloody conflict. At first the caliph declared himself a zealous Musulman, the founder or benefactor of moschs and colleges: twelve hundred and ninety copies of the koran were transcribed at his expence in letters of gold; and his edict extirpated the vineyards of the upper Egypt. But his vanity was soon flattered by the hope of introducing a new religion; he aspired above the fame of a prophet, and styled himself the visible image of the most high God,

CHAP. LVII. who, after nine apparitions on earth, was at length manifest in his royal person. At the name of Hakem, the lord of the living and the dead, every knee was bent in religious adoration: his mysteries were performed on a mountain near Cairo: sixteen thousand converts had signed his profession of faith; and at the present hour, a free and warlike people, the Druses of mount Libanus, are persuaded of the life and divinity of a madman and tyrant". In his divine character, Hakem hated the Jews and Christians, as the servants of his rivals: while some remains of prejudice or prudence still pleaded in favour of the law of Mahomet. Both in Egypt and Palestine, his cruel and wanton persecution made some martyrs and many apostates: the common rights, and special privileges of the sectaries were equally disregarded; and a general interdict was laid on the devotion of strangers and natives. The temple of the Christian world, the church of the resurrection, was demolished to its foundations; the luminous prodigy of Easter was interrupted, and much profane labour was exhausted to destroy the cave in the rock which properly constitutes the holy sepulchre. At the report of this sacrilege, the nations of Europe were astonished and afflicted: but instead of arming in the defence of the Holy Land, they contented themselves with burning, or banishing, the Jews, as the secret advisers of the impious Barbarian". Yet the calamities of Jerusalem were in some measure alleviated by the inconstancy or repentance of Hakem himself; and

Sacrilege of  
Hakem,  
A. D. 1009.



the royal mandate was sealed for the restitution of the churches, when the tyrant was assassinated by the emissaries of his sister. The succeeding caliphs resumed the maxims of religion and policy; a free toleration was again granted; with the pious aid of the emperor of Constantinople, the holy sepulchre arose from its ruins; and, after a short abstinence, the pilgrims returned with an encrease of appetite to the spiritual feast. In the sea-voyage of Palestine, the dangers were frequent, and the opportunities rare: but the conversion of Hungary opened a safe communication between Germany and Greece. The charity of St. Stephen, the apostle of his kingdom, relieved and conducted his itinerant brethren; and from Belgrade to Antioch, they traversed fifteen hundred miles of a Christian empire. Among the Franks, the zeal of pilgrimage prevailed beyond the example of former times: and the roads were covered with multitudes of either sex, and of every rank, who professed their contempt of life, so soon as they should have kissed the tomb of their Redeemer. Princes and prelates abandoned the care of their dominions; and the numbers of these pious caravans were a prelude to the armies which marched in the ensuing age under the banner of the cross. About thirty years before the first crusade, the archbishop of Mentz, with the bishops of Utrecht, Bamberg, and Ratisbon, undertook this laborious journey from the Rhine to the Jordan; and the multitude of their followers amounted to seven thousand persons. At Constantinople, they were hospitably

Encrease of  
pilgrimages,  
A. D. 1024,  
&c.

**C H A P.** entertained by the emperor; but the ostentation  
**LVII.** of their wealth provoked the assault of the wild  
 Arabs; they drew their swords with scrupulous  
 reluctance, and sustained a siege in the village of  
 Capernaum, till they were rescued by the venal  
 protection of the Fatimite emir. After visiting the  
 holy places, they embarked for Italy, but only a  
 remnant of two thousand arrived in safety in their  
 native land. Ingulphus, a secretary of William the  
 conqueror, was a companion of this pilgrimage:  
 he observes that they sallied from Normandy,  
 thirty stout and well-appointed horsemen; but  
 that they repassed the Alps, twenty miserable  
 palmers, with the staff in their hand, and the wal-  
 let at their back <sup>72</sup>.

Conquest of  
 Jerusalem by  
 the Turks,  
 A. D.  
 1076—1096.

After the defeat of the Romans, the tranquil-  
 lity of the Fatimite caliphs was invaded by the  
 Turks <sup>73</sup>. One of the lieutenants of Malek Shah,  
 Atsiz the Carizmian, marched into Syria at the  
 head of a powerful army, and reduced Damascus  
 by famine and the sword. Hems, and the other  
 cities of the province, acknowledged the caliph  
 of Bagdad and the sultan of Persia; and the vic-  
 torious emir advanced without resistance to the  
 banks of the Nile: the Fatimite was preparing to  
 fly into the heart of Africa; but the negroes of  
 his guard and the inhabitants of Cairo made a  
 desperate sally, and repulsed the Turk from the  
 confines of Egypt. In his retreat, he indulged the  
 licence of slaughter and rapine: the judge and  
 notaries of Jerusalem were invited to his camp;  
 and their execution was followed by the massacre

of three thousand citizens. The cruelty or the defeat of Atsiz was soon punished by the sultan Toucush, the brother of Malek Shah, who, with a higher title and more formidable powers, asserted the dominion of Syria and Palestine. The house of Seljuk reigned about twenty years in Jerusalem<sup>74</sup>; but the hereditary command of the holy city and territory was entrusted or abandoned to the emir Ortok, the chief of a tribe of Turks, whose children, after their expulsion from Palestine, formed two dynasties on the borders of Armenia and Assyria<sup>75</sup>. The Oriental Christians and the Latin pilgrims deplored a revolution, which, instead of the regular government and old alliance of the caliphs imposed on their necks the iron yoke of the strangers of the North<sup>76</sup>. In his court and camp the great sultan had adopted in some degree the arts and manners of Persia; but the body of the Turkish nation, and more especially the pastoral tribes, still breathed the fierceness of the desert. From Nice to Jerusalem, the western countries of Asia were a scene of foreign and domestic hostility; and the shepherds of Palestine, who held a precarious sway on a doubtful frontier, had neither leisure nor capacity to await the slow profits of commercial and religious freedom. The pilgrims who, through innumerable perils, had reached the gates of Jerusalem were the victims of private rapine or public oppression, and often sunk under the pressure of famine and disease, before they were permitted to salute the holy sepulchre. A spirit of native bar-

CHAP.  
LVII.

barism, or recent zeal, prompted the Turkmans to insult the clergy of every sect: the patriarch was dragged by the hair along the pavement, and cast into a dungeon, to extort a ransom from the sympathy of his flock; and the divine worship in the church of the resurrection was often disturbed by the savage rudeness of its masters. The pathetic tale excited the millions of the West to march under the standard of the cross to the relief of the holy land: and yet how trifling is the sum of these accumulated evils, if compared with the single act of the sacrilege of Hakem, which had been so patiently endured by the Latin Christians! A slighter provocation inflamed the more irascible temper of their descendants: a new spirit had arisen of religious chivalry and papal dominion: a nerve was touched of exquisite feeling; and the sensation vibrated to the heart of Europe.

CHAP.

## C H A P. LVIII.

*Origin and Numbers of the First Crusade — Characters of the Latin Princes. — Their March to Constantinople. — Policy of the Greek Emperor Alexius. — Conquest of Nice, Antioch, and Jerusalem, by the Franks. — Deliverance of the Holy Sepulchre. — Godfrey of Bouillon, First King of Jerusalem. — Institutions of the French or Latin Kingdom.*

ABOUT twenty years after the conquest of Jerusalem by the Turks, the holy sepulchre was visited by an hermit of the name of Peter, a native of Amiens, in the province of Picardy in France. His resentment and sympathy were excited by his own injuries and the oppression of the Christian name; he mingled his tears with those of the patriarch, and earnestly enquired, if no hopes of relief could be entertained from the Greek emperors of the East. The patriarch exposed the vices and weakness of the successors of Constantine. "I will rouse," exclaimed the hermit, "the martial nations of Europe in your cause;" and Europe was obedient to the call of the hermit. The astonished patriarch dismissed him with epistles of credit and complaint, and no sooner did he land at Bari, than Peter hastened to kiss the feet of

C H A P.

LVIII.

The first  
crusade,

A. D.

1095—1099

Peter the  
Hermit.

C H A P. the Roman pontiff. His stature was small, his appearance contemptible; but his eye was keen and lively; and he possessed that vehemence of speech, which seldom fails to impart the persuasion of the soul<sup>2</sup>. He was born of a gentleman's family (for we must now adopt a modern idiom), and his military service was under the neighbouring counts of Boulogne, the heroes of the first crusade. But he soon relinquished the sword and the world; and if it be true, that his wife, however noble, was aged and ugly, he might withdraw, with the less reluctance, from her bed to a convent, and at length to an hermitage. In this austere solitude, his body was emaciated, his fancy was inflamed; whatever he wished, he believed; whatever he believed, he *saw* in dreams and revelations. From Jerusalem, the pilgrim returned an accomplished fanatic; but as he excelled in the popular madness of the times, pope Urban the second received him as a prophet, applauded his glorious design, promised to support it in a general council, and encouraged him to proclaim the deliverance of the Holy Land. Invigorated by the approbation of the pontiff, his zealous missionary traversed, with speed and success, the provinces of Italy and France. His diet was abstemious, his prayers long and fervent, and the alms which he received with one hand, he distributed with the other: his head was bare, his feet naked, his meagre body was wrapt in a coarse garment; he bore and displayed a weighty crucifix; and the ass

on which he rode, was sanctified in the public eye by the service of the man of God. He preached to innumerable crowds in the churches, the streets, and the highways: the hermit entered with equal confidence the palace and the cottage; and the people, for all was people, was impetuously moved by his call to repentance and arms. When he painted the sufferings of the natives and pilgrims of Palestine, every heart was melted to compassion; every breast glowed with indignation, when he challenged the warriors of the age to defend their brethren and rescue their Saviour: his ignorance of art and language was compensated by sighs, and tears, and ejaculations; and Peter supplied the deficiency of reason by loud and frequent appeals to Christ and his Mother, to the saints and angels of paradise, with whom he had personally conversed. The most perfect orator of Athens might have envied the success of his eloquence: the rustic enthusiast inspired the passions which he felt, and Christendom expected with impatience the counsels and decrees of the supreme pontiff.

The magnanimous spirit of Gregory the seventh had already embraced the design of arming Europe against Asia; the ardour of his zeal and ambition still breathes in his epistles: from either side of the Alps, fifty thousand Catholics had enlisted under the banner of St. Peter'; and his successor reveals *his* intention of marching at their head against the impious sectaries of Mahomet. But the glory or reproach of executing, though

Urban II.  
in the council of Placeria,  
A. D. 1095.  
March.

C H A P. not in person, this holy enterprife, was reserved  
 LVIII. for Urban the second \*, the most faithful of his  
 disciples. He undertook the conquest of the East,  
 whilst the larger portion of Rome was possessed  
 and fortified by his rival Guibert of Ravenna,  
 who contended with Urban for the name and  
 honours of the pontificate. He attempted to unite  
 the powers of the West, at a time when the  
 princes were separated from the church, and the  
 people from their princes, by the excommu-  
 nication which himself and his predecessors had  
 thundered against the emperor and the king of  
 France. Philip the first, of France, supported  
 with patience the censures which he had pro-  
 voked by his scandalous life and adulterous mar-  
 riage. Henry the fourth, of Germany, asserted  
 the right of investitures, the prerogative of  
 confirming his bishops by the delivery of the  
 ring and crozier. But the emperor's party was  
 crushed in Italy by the arms of the Normans  
 and the countess Mathilda; and the long quarrel  
 had been recently envenomed by the revolt of  
 his son Conrad and the shame of his wife †,  
 who, in the synods of Constance and Placentia,  
 confessed the manifold prostitutions to which she  
 had been exposed by an husband regardless of  
 her honour and his own ‡. So popular was the  
 cause of Urban, so weighty was his influence,  
 that the council which he summoned at Placentia<sup>7</sup>  
 was composed of two hundred bishops of Italy,  
 France, Burgundy, Swabia, and Bavaria. Four  
 thousand of the clergy, and thirty thousand of



the laity, attended this important meeting; and, as the most spacious cathedral would have been inadequate to the multitude, the session of seven days was held in a plain adjacent to the city. The ambassadors of the Greek emperor, Alexius Comnenus, were introduced to plead the distress of their sovereign and the danger of Constantinople, which was divided only by a narrow sea from the victorious Turks, the common enemies of the Christian name. In their suppliant address they flattered the pride of the Latin princes; and, appealing at once to their policy and religion, exhorted them to repel the Barbarians on the confines of Asia, rather than to expect them in the heart of Europe. At the sad tale of the misery and perils of their Eastern brethren the assembly burst into tears: the most eager champions declared their readiness to march; and the Greek ambassadors were dismissed with the assurance of a speedy and powerful succour. The relief of Constantinople was included in the larger and most distant project of the deliverance of Jerusalem; but the prudent Urban adjourned the final decision to a second synod, which he proposed to celebrate in some city of France in the autumn of the same year. The short delay would propagate the flame of enthusiasm; and his firmest hope was in a nation of soldiers\*, still proud of the pre-eminence of their name, and ambitious to emulate their hero Charlemagne\*, who, in the popular romance of Turpin\*\*, had atchieved the conquest of the Holy Land. A

CHAP. latent motive of affection or vanity might influence the choice of Urban : he was himself a native of France, a monk of Clugny, and the first of his countrymen who ascended the throne of St. Peter. The pope had illustrated his family and province; nor is there perhaps a more exquisite gratification than to revisit, in a conspicuous dignity, the humble and laborious scenes of our youth.

Council of  
Clermont,  
A. D. 1095,  
November.

It may occasion some surprise that the Roman pontiff should erect, in the heart of France, the tribunal from whence he hurled his anathemas against the king. But our surprise will vanish so soon as we form a just estimate of a king of France of the eleventh century ". Philip the first was the great-grandson of Hugh Capet the founder of the present race, who, in the decline of Charlemagne's posterity, added the regal title to his patrimonial estates of Paris and Orleans. In this narrow compass, he was possessed of wealth and jurisdiction; but in the rest of France, Hugh and his first descendants were no more than the feudal lords of about sixty dukes and counts, of independent and hereditary power ", who disdained the control of laws and legal assemblies, and whose disregard of their sovereign was revenged by the disobedience of their inferior vassals. At Clermont, in the territories of the count of Auvergne ", the pope might brave with impunity the resentment of Philip; and the council which he convened in that city was not less numerous or respectable than the synod of

Placentia ". Besides his court and council of Roman cardinals, he was supported by thirteen archbishops and two hundred and twenty-five bishops; the number of mitred prelates was computed at four hundred; and the fathers of the church were blessed by the saints, and enlightened by the doctors of the age. From the adjacent kingdoms, a martial train of lords and knights of power and renown, attended the council ", in high expectation of its resolves; and such was the ardour of zeal and curiosity, that the city was filled, and many thousands, in the month of November, erected their tents or huts in the open field. A session of eight days produced some useful or edifying canons for the reformation of manners; a severe censure was pronounced against the licence of private war; the truce of God " was confirmed, a suspension of hostilities during four days of the week; women and priests were placed under the safeguard of the church; and a protection of three years was extended to husbandmen and merchants, the defenceless victims of military rapine. But a law, however venerable be the sanction, cannot suddenly transform the temper of the times; and the benevolent efforts of Urban deserve the less praise, since he laboured to appease some domestic quarrels that he might spread the flames of war from the Atlantic to the Euphrates. From the synod of Placentia, the rumour of his great design had gone forth among the nations: the clergy on their return had preached in every diocese the merit and

CHAP. glory of the deliverance of the Holy Land; and  
 LVIII. when the pope ascended a lofty scaffold in the  
 market-place of Clermont, his eloquence was  
 addressed to a well prepared and impatient au-  
 dience. His topics were obvious, his exhortation  
 was vehement, his success inevitable. The orator  
 was interrupted by the shout of thousands, who  
 with one voice, and in their rustic idiom, ex-  
 claimed aloud, "God wills it, God wills it".  
 "It is indeed the will of God," replied the pope;  
 "and let this memorable word, the inspiration  
 "surely of the Holy Spirit, be for ever adopted  
 "as your cry of battle, to animate the devotion  
 "and courage of the champions of Christ. His  
 "cross is the symbol of your salvation; wear it,  
 "a red, a bloody cross, as an external mark  
 "on your breasts or shoulders, as a pledge of  
 "your sacred and irrevocable engagement." The  
 proposal was joyfully accepted; great numbers  
 both of the clergy and laity impressed on their  
 garments the sign of the cross", and solicited  
 the pope to march at their head. This dangerous  
 honour was declined by the more prudent suc-  
 cessor of Gregory, who alleged the schism  
 of the church, and the duties of his pastoral  
 office, recommending to the faithful, who were  
 disqualified by sex or profession, by age or in-  
 firmity, to aid, with their prayers and alms,  
 the personal service of their robust brethren. The  
 name and powers of his legate he devolved on  
 Adhemar bishop of Puy, the first who had received  
 the cross at his hands. The foremost of the  
 temporal chiefs was Raymond count of Thou-

louse, whose ambassadors in the council excused the absence, and pledged the honour, of their master. After the confession and absolution of their sins, the champions of the cross were dismissed with a superfluous admonition to invite their countrymen and friends; and their departure for the Holy Land was fixed to the festival of the Assumption, the fifteenth of August, of the ensuing year."

So familiar, and as it were so natural to man, Justice of the crusades. is the practice of violence, that our indulgence allows the slightest provocation, the most disputable right, as a sufficient ground of national hostility. But the name and nature of an *holy war* demands a more rigorous scrutiny; nor can we hastily believe, that the servants of the Prince of peace would unsheathe the sword of destruction, unless the motive were pure, the quarrel legitimate, and the necessity inevitable. The policy of an action may be determined from the tardy lessons of experience; but, before we act, our conscience should be satisfied of the justice and propriety of our enterprise. In the age of the crusades, the Christians, both of the East and West, were persuaded of their lawfulness and merit; their arguments are clouded by the perpetual abuse of scripture and rhetoric; but they seem to insist on the right of natural and religious defence, their peculiar title to the Holy Land, and the impiety of their Pagan and Mahometan foes". I. The right of a just defence may fairly include our civil and spiritual allies: it depends on the existence

C H A P. of danger: and that danger must be estimated by  
 LVIII. the two-fold consideration of the malice, and the  
 power, of our enemies. A pernicious tenet has  
 been imputed to the Mahometans, the duty of  
*extirpating* all other religions by the sword. This  
 charge of ignorance and bigotry is refuted by the  
 Koran, by the history of the Musulman conquerors,  
 and by their public and legal toleration of the  
 Christian worship. But it cannot be denied, that  
 the Oriental churches are depressed under their  
 iron yoke; that, in peace and war, they assert a  
 divine and indefeasible claim of universal empire;  
 and that, in their orthodox creed, the unbelieving  
 nations are continually threatened with the loss  
 of religion or liberty. In the eleventh century,  
 the victorious arms of the Turks presented a real  
 and urgent apprehension of these losses. They  
 had subdued in less than thirty years the kingdoms  
 of Asia, as far as Jerusalem and the Hellespont;  
 and the Greek empire tottered on the verge of  
 destruction. Besides an honest sympathy for their  
 brethren, the Latins had a right and interest in  
 the support of Constantinople, the most important  
 barrier of the West; and the privilege of defence  
 must reach to prevent, as well as to repel, an  
 impending assault. But this salutary purpose might  
 have been accomplished by a moderate succour;  
 and our calmer reason must disclaim the innumerable  
 hosts and remote operations, which overwhelmed  
 Asia and depopulated Europe. II. Palestine could  
 add nothing to the strength or safety of the Latins;  
 and fanaticism alone could pretend to justify the

conquest of that distant and narrow province. The Christians affirmed that their inalienable title to the promised land had been sealed by the blood of their divine Saviour: it was their right and duty to rescue their inheritance from the unjust possessors, who profaned his sepulchre, and oppressed the pilgrimage of his disciples. Vainly would it be alleged that the pre-eminence of Jerusalem, and the sanctity of Palestine, have been abolished with the Mosaic law; that the God of the Christians is not a local deity, and that the recovery of Bethlem or Calvary, his cradle or his tomb, will not atone for the violation of the moral precepts of the gospel. Such arguments glance aside from the leaden shield of superstition; and the religious mind will not easily relinquish its hold on the sacred ground of mystery and miracle. III. But the holy wars which have been waged in every climate of the globe, from Egypt to Livonia, and from Peru to Hindostan, require the support of some more general and flexible tenet. It has been often supposed, and sometimes affirmed, that a difference of religion is a worthy cause of hostility; that obstinate unbelievers may be slain or subdued by the champions of the cross; and that grace is the sole fountain of dominion as well as of mercy. Above four hundred years before the first crusade, the eastern and western provinces of the Roman empire had been acquired about the same time, and in the same manner, by the Barbarians of Germany and Arabia. Time and treaties had legitimated the conquests of the

CHAP. *Christian Franks; but in the eyes of their subjects*  
 LVIII. *and neighbours, the Mahometan princes were*  
*still tyrants and usurpers, who, by the arms of*  
*war or rebellion, might be lawfully driven from*  
*their unlawful possession."*

Spiritual mo-  
 tives and in-  
 dulgences.

As the manners of the Christians were relaxed, their discipline of penance<sup>22</sup> was enforced; and with the multiplication of sins, the remedies were multiplied. In the primitive church, a voluntary and open confession prepared the work of atonement. In the middle ages, the bishops and priests interrogated the criminal; compelled him to account for his thoughts, words, and actions; and prescribed the terms of his reconciliation with God. But as this discretionary power might alternately be abused by indulgence and tyranny, a rule of discipline was framed, to inform and regulate the spiritual judges. This mode of legislation was invented by the Greeks; their *penitentials*<sup>23</sup> were translated, or imitated, in the Latin church; and, in the time of Charlemagne, the clergy of every diocese were provided with a code, which they prudently concealed from the knowledge of the vulgar. In this dangerous estimate of crimes and punishments, each case was supposed, each difference was remarked, by the experience or penetration of the monks; some sins are enumerated which innocence could not have suspected, and others which reason cannot believe; and the more ordinary offences of fornication and adultery, of perjury and sacrilege, of rapine and murder, were expiated by a penance, which,



according to the various circumstances, was prolonged from forty days to seven years. During this term of mortification, the patient was healed, the criminal was absolved, by a salutary regimen of fasts and prayers: the disorder of his dress was expressive of grief and remorse; and he humbly abstained from all the business and pleasure of social life. But the rigid execution of these laws would have depopulated the palace, the camp, and the city: the Barbarians of the West believed and trembled; but nature often rebelled against principle; and the magistrate laboured without effect to enforce the jurisdiction of the priest. A literal accomplishment of penance was indeed impracticable; the guilt of adultery was multiplied by daily repetition; that of homicide might involve the massacre of a whole people; each act was separately numbered; and, in those times of anarchy and vice, a modest sinner might easily incur a debt of three hundred years. His insolvency was relieved by a commutation, or *indulgence*: a year of penance was appreciated at twenty-six *solidi* <sup>24</sup> of silver, about four pounds sterling, for the rich; at three *solidi*, or nine shillings, for the indigent: and these alms were soon appropriated to the use of the church, which derived, from the redemption of sins, an inexhaustible source of opulence and dominion. A debt of three hundred years, or twelve hundred pounds, was enough to impoverish a plentiful fortune; the scarcity of gold and silver was supplied by the alienation of land; and the princely donations of Pepin and

- CHAP. Charlemagne are expressly given for the *remedy*  
 LVIII. of their soul. It is a maxim of the civil law, that whosoever cannot pay with his purse, must pay with his body; and the practice of flagellation was adopted by the monks, a cheap, though painful, equivalent. By a fantastic arithmetic, a year of penance was taxed at three thousand lashes<sup>25</sup>; and such was the skill and patience of a famous hermit, St. Dominic of the Iron Cuirass<sup>26</sup>, that in six days he could discharge an entire century, by a whipping of three hundred thousand stripes. His example was followed by many penitents of both sexes; and, as a vicarious sacrifice was accepted, a sturdy disciplinarian might expiate on his own back the sins of his benefactors<sup>27</sup>.
- These compensations of the purse and the person introduced, in the eleventh century, a more honourable mode of satisfaction. The merit of military service against the Saracens of Africa and Spain, had been allowed by the predecessors of Urban the second. In the council of Clermont, that pope proclaimed a *plenary indulgence* to those who should enlist under the banner of the cross; the absolution of *all* their sins, and a full receipt for *all* that might be due of canonical penance<sup>28</sup>. The cold philosophy of modern times is incapable of feeling the impression that was made on a sinful and fanatic world. At the voice of their pastor, the robber, the incendiary, the homicide, arose by thousands to redeem their souls, by repeating on the infidels the same deeds which they had exercised against their Christian brethren; and the

terms of atonement were eagerly embraced by offenders of every rank and denomination. None were pure; none were exempt from the guilt and penalty of sin; and those who were the least amenable to the justice of God and the church, were the best entitled to the temporal and eternal recompence of their pious courage. If they fell, the spirit of the Latin clergy did not hesitate to adorn their tomb with the crown of martyrdom"; and should they survive, they could expect without impatience the delay and encrease of their heavenly reward. They offered their blood to the Son of God, who had laid down his life for their salvation: they took up the cross, and entered with confidence into the way of the Lord. His providence would watch over their safety; perhaps his visible and miraculous power would smoothe the difficulties of their holy enterprise. The cloud and pillar of Jehovah had marched before the Israelites into the promised land. Might not the Christians more reasonably hope that the rivers would open for their passage; that the walls of the strongest cities would fall at the sound of their trumpets; and that the sun would be arrested in his mid-career, to allow them time for the destruction of the infidels?

C H A P.  
LVIII.

Of the chiefs and soldiers who marched to the holy sepulchre, I will dare to affirm, that *all* were prompted by the spirit of enthusiasm; the belief of merit, the hope of reward, and the assurance of divine aid. But I am equally persuaded, that in *many* it was not the sole, that in *some* it

Temporal  
and carnal  
motives.

CHAP. was not the leading, principle of action. The  
 LVIII. use and abuse of religion are feeble to stem, they are strong and irresistible to impel, the stream of national manners. Against the private wars of the Barbarians, their bloody tournaments, licentious loves, and judicial duels, the popes and synods might ineffectually thunder. It is a more easy task to provoke the metaphysical disputes of the Greeks, to drive into the cloister the victims of anarchy or despotism, to sanctify the patience of slaves and cowards, or to assume the merit of the humanity and benevolence of modern Christians. War and exercise were the reigning passions of the Franks or Latins; they were enjoined, as a penance, to gratify those passions, to visit distant lands, and to draw their swords against the nations of the East. Their victory, or even their attempt, would immortalise the names of the intrepid heroes of the cross; and the purest piety could not be insensible to the most splendid prospect of military glory. In the petty quarrels of Europe, they shed the blood of their friends and countrymen, for the acquisition perhaps of a castle or a village. They could march with alacrity against the distant and hostile nations who were devoted to their arms: their fancy already grasped the golden sceptres of Asia; and the conquest of Apulia and Sicily by the Normans might exalt to royalty the hopes of the most private adventurer. Christendom, in her rudest state, must have yielded to the climate and cultivation of the Mahometan countries; and their natural and artificial wealth  
 had

had been magnified by the tales of pilgrims, and the gifts of an imperfect commerce. The vulgar, both the great and small, were taught to believe every wonder, of lands flowing with milk and honey, of mines and treasures, of gold and diamonds, of palaces of marble and jasper, and of odoriferous groves of cinnamon and frankincense. In this earthly paradise, each warrior depended on his sword to carve a plenteous and honourable establishment, which he measured only by the extent of his wishes<sup>10</sup>. Their vassals and soldiers trusted their fortunes to God and their master: the spoils of a Turkish emir might enrich the meanest follower of the camp; and the flavour of the wines, the beauty of the Grecian women<sup>11</sup>, were temptations more adapted to the nature, than to the profession, of the champions of the cross. The love of freedom was a powerful incitement to the multitudes who were oppressed by feudal or ecclesiastical tyranny. Under this holy sign the peasants and burghers, who were attached to the servitude of the glebe, might escape from an haughty lord, and transplant themselves and their families to a land of liberty. The monk might release himself from the discipline of his convent: the debtor might suspend the accumulation of usury, and the pursuit of his creditors; and outlaws and malefactors of every cast might continue to brave the laws and elude the punishment of their crimes<sup>12</sup>.

These motives were potent and numerous: Influence of example. when we have singly computed their weight on

CHAP. the mind of each individual, we must add the  
 LVIII. infinite series, the multiplying powers of example  
 and fashion. The first profelytes became the  
 warmest and most effectual missionaries of the  
 cross: among their friends and countrymen they  
 preached the duty, the merit, and the recom-  
 pence, of their holy vow; and the most reluctant  
 hearers were insensibly drawn within the whirl-  
 pool of persuasion and authority. The martial  
 youths were fired by the reproach or suspicion  
 of cowardice; the opportunity of visiting with  
 an army the sepulchre of Christ, was embraced  
 by the old and infirm, by women and children,  
 who consulted rather their zeal than their strength;  
 and those who in the evening had derided the  
 folly of their companions, were the most eager,  
 the ensuing day, to tread in their footsteps. The  
 ignorance, which magnified the hopes, dimi-  
 nished the perils, of the enterprize. Since the  
 Turkish conquest, the paths of pilgrimage were  
 obliterated; the chiefs themselves had an im-  
 perfect notion of the length of the way and the  
 state of their enemies; and such was the stupidity  
 of the people, that, at the sight of the first  
 city or castle beyond the limits of their know-  
 ledge, they were ready to ask whether that was  
 not the Jerusalem, the term and object of their  
 labours. Yet the more prudent of the crusaders,  
 who were not sure that they should be fed from  
 heaven with a shower of quails or manna, pro-  
 vided themselves with those precious metals,  
 which, in every country, are the representatives

of every commodity. To defray, according to their rank, the expences of the road, princes alienated their provinces, nobles their lands and castles, peasants their cattle and the instruments of husbandry. The value of property was depreciated by the eager competition of multitudes; while the price of arms and horses was raised to an exorbitant height by the wants and impatience of the buyers". Those who remained at home, with sense and money were enriched by the epidemical disease: the sovereigns acquired at a cheap rate the domains of their vassals; and the ecclesiastical purchasers completed the payment by the assurance of their prayers. The cross, which was commonly sewed on the garment, in cloth or silk, was inscribed by some zealots on their skin: an hot iron, or indelible liquor, was applied to perpetuate the mark; and a crafty monk, who shewed the miraculous impression on his breast, was repaid with the popular veneration and the richest benefices of Palestine".

The fifteenth of August had been fixed in the council of Clermont for the departure of the pilgrims: but the day was anticipated by the thoughtless and needy crowd of plebeians; and I shall briefly dispatch the calamities which they inflicted and suffered, before I enter on the more serious and successful enterprise of the chiefs. Early in the spring, from the confines of France and Lorraine, above sixty thousand of the populace of both sexes flocked round the first missionary of the crusade, and pressed him with

Departure of  
the first cru-  
saders.  
A. D. 1096,  
March, May,  
&c.

C H A P. clamorous importunity to lead them to the holy  
 LVIII. sepulchre. The hermit, assuming the character, without the talents or authority, of a general, impelled or obeyed the forward impulse of his votaries along the banks of the Rhine and Danube. Their wants and numbers soon compelled them to separate, and his lieutenant, Walter the Pennylefs, a valiant though needy foldier, conducted a vanguard of pilgrims, whose condition may be determined from the proportion of eight horsemen to fifteen thousand foot. The example and footsteps of Peter were closely pursued by another fanatic, the monk Godescal, whose sermons had swept away fifteen or twenty thousand peasants from the villages of Germany. Their rear was again pressed by an herd of two hundred thousand, the most stupid and savage refuse of the people, who mingled with their devotion a brutal licence of rapine, prostitution, and drunkenness. Some counts and gentlemen, at the head of three thousand horse, attended the motions of the multitude to partake in the spoil; but their genuine leaders (may we credit such folly?) were a goose and a goat, who were carried in the front, and to whom these worthy Christians ascribed an infusion of the divine spirit". Of these, and of other bands of enthusiasts, the first and most easy warfare was against the Jews, the murderers of the Son of God. In the trading cities of the Moselle and the Rhine, their colonies were numerous and rich; and they enjoyed, under the protection of the emperor and



the bishops, the free exercise of their religion <sup>16</sup>. At Verdun, Treves, Mentz, Spires, Worms, many thousands of that unhappy people were pillaged and massacred <sup>17</sup>: nor had they felt a more bloody stroke since the persecution of Hadrian. A remnant was saved by the firmness of their bishops, who accepted a feigned and transient conversion; but the more obstinate Jews opposed their fanaticism to the fanaticism of the Christians, barricaded their houses, and precipitating themselves, their families, and their wealth, into the rivers or the flames, disappointed the malice, or at least the avarice, of their implacable foes.

C H A P.

LVIII.

Between the frontiers of Austria and the seat of the Byzantine monarchy, the crusaders were compelled to traverse an interval of six hundred miles; the wild and desolate countries of Hungary <sup>18</sup> and Bulgaria. The soil is fruitful, and intersected with rivers; but it was then covered with morasses and forests, which spread to a boundless extent, whenever man has ceased to exercise his dominion over the earth. Both nations had imbibed the rudiments of Christianity; the Hungarians were ruled by their native princes; the Bulgarians by a lieutenant of the Greek emperor; but, on the slightest provocation, their ferocious nature was rekindled, and ample provocation was afforded by the disorders of the first pilgrims. Agriculture must have been unskilful and languid among a people, whose cities were built of reeds and timber, which were

Their destruction in Hungary and Asia.  
A. D. 1096.

CHAP. deserted in the summer season for the tents of  
 LVIII. hunters and shepherds. A scanty supply of provisions was rudely demanded, forcibly seized, and greedily consumed; and on the first quarrel, the crusaders gave a loose to indignation and revenge. But their ignorance of the country, of war, and of discipline, exposed them to every snare. The Greek præfect of Bulgaria commanded a regular force; at the trumpet of the Hungarian king, the eighth or the tenth of his martial subjects bent their bows and mounted on horseback; their policy was insidious; and their retaliation on these pious robbers was unrelenting and bloody". About a third of the naked fugitives, and the hermit Peter was of the number, escaped to the Thracian mountains; and the emperor, who respected the pilgrimage and succour of the Latins, conducted them by secure and easy journies to Constantinople, and advised them to await the arrival of their brethren. For a while they remembered their faults and losses; but no sooner were they revived by the hospitable entertainment, than their venom was again inflamed; they stung their benefactor, and neither gardens, nor palaces, nor churches, were safe from their depredations. For his own safety, Alexius allured them to pass over to the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus; but their blind impetuosity soon urged them to desert the station which he had assigned, and to rush headlong against the Turks, who occupied the road of Jerusalem. The hermit, conscious of his shame, had withdrawn from

the camp to Constantinople; and his lieutenant, Walter the Pennylefs, who was worthy of a better command, attempted without fuccefs to introduce fome order and prudence among the herd of favages. They feperated in queft of prey, and themfelves fell an eafy prey to the arts of the fultan. By a rumour that their foremoft companions were rioting in the fpoils of his capital, Soliman tempted the main body to defcend into the plain of Nice; they were overwhelmed by the Turkiſh arrows; and a pyramid of bones “ informed their companions of the place of their defeat. Of the firft cruſaders, three hundred thouſand had already perifhed, before a ſingle city was reſcued from the infidels, before their graver and more noble brethren had completed the preparations of their enterpriſe “.

None of the great ſovereigns of Europe embarked their perſons in the firſt cruſade. The emperor Henry the fourth was not diſpoſed to obey the ſummons of the pope: Philip the firſt of France was occupied by his pleaſures; William Rufus of England by a recent conqueſt; the kings of Spain were engaged in a domeſtic war againſt the Moors; and the northern monarchs of Scotland, Denmark “, Sweden, and Poland, were yet ſtrangers to the paſſions and intereſts of the South. The religious ardour was more ſtrongly felt by the princes of the ſecond order, who held an important place in the feudal ſyſtem. Their ſituation will naturally caſt under four diſtinct heads the review of their names and

C H A P.  
LVIII.

The chiefs of  
the firſt cru-  
ſade.

C H A P. characters; but I may escape some needless repetition, by observing at once, that courage and the exercise of arms are the common attribute

LVIII.

I. Godfrey of  
Bouillon.

of these Christian adventurers. I. The first rank both in war and council is justly due to Godfrey of Bouillon; and happy would it have been for the crusaders, if they had trusted themselves to the sole conduct of that accomplished hero, a worthy representative of Charlemagne, from whom he was descended in the female line. His father was of the noble race of the counts of Boulogne; Brabant, the lower province of Lorraine<sup>4</sup>, was the inheritance of his mother; and by the emperor's bounty, he was himself invested with that ducal title, which has been improperly transferred to his lordship of Bouillon in the Ardennes<sup>5</sup>. In the service of Henry the fourth, he bore the great standard of the empire, and pierced with his lance the breast of Rodolph, the rebel king: Godfrey was the first who ascended the walls of Rome; and his sickness, his vow, perhaps his remorse for bearing arms against the pope, confirmed an early resolution of visiting the holy sepulchre, not as a pilgrim, but a deliverer. His valour was matured by prudence and moderation; his piety, though blind, was sincere; and, in the tumult of a camp, he practised the real and fictitious virtues of a convent. Superior to the private factions of the chiefs, he reserved his enmity for the enemies of Christ; and though he gained a kingdom by the attempt, his pure and disinterested zeal was

acknowledged by his rivals. Godfrey of Bouillon<sup>c H A P.</sup> was accompanied by his two brothers, <sup>LVIII.</sup> by Eustace the elder, who had succeeded to the county of Boulogne, and by the younger, Baldwin, a character of more ambiguous virtue. The duke of Lorraine was alike celebrated on either side of the Rhine: from his birth and education he was equally conversant with the French and Teutonic languages: the barons of France, Germany, and Lorraine, assembled their vassals; and the confederate force that marched under his banner was composed of fourscore thousand foot and about ten thousand horse.

II. In the parliament that was held at Paris, in the king's presence, about two months after the council of Clermont, Hugh count of Vermandois was the most conspicuous of the princes who assumed the cross. But the appellation of *the great* was applied, not so much to his merit or possessions (though neither were contemptible), as to the royal birth of the brother of the king of France<sup>II. Hugh of Vermandois, Robert of Normandy, Robert of Flanders, Stephen of Chartres, &c.</sup>. Robert duke of Normandy was the eldest son of William the Conqueror; but on his father's death he was deprived of the kingdom of England, by his own indolence and the activity of his brother Rufus. The worth of Robert was degraded by an excessive levity and easiness of temper: his cheerfulness seduced him to the indulgence of pleasure; his profuse liberality impoverished the prince and people; his indiscriminate clemency multiplied the number of offenders; and the amiable qualities of a private man

CHAP. LVIII. became the essential defects of a sovereign. For the trifling sum of ten thousand marks he mortgaged Normandy during his absence to the English usurper"; but his engagement and behaviour in the holy war, announced in Robert a reformation of manners, and restored him in some degree to the public esteem. Another Robert was count of Flanders, a royal province, which, in this century, gave three queens to the thrones of France, England, and Denmark: he was surnamed the sword and lance of the Christians; but in the exploits of a soldier, he sometimes forgot the duties of a general. Stephen, count of Chartres, of Blois, and of Troyes, was one of the richest princes of the age; and the number of his castles has been compared to the three hundred and sixty-five days of the year. His mind was improved by literature; and in the council of the chiefs, the eloquent Stephen" was chosen to discharge the office of their president. These four were the principal leaders of the French, the Normans, and the pilgrims of the British isles: but the list of the barons who were possessed of three or four towns, would exceed, says a contemporary, the catalogue of the Trojan war". III. In the south of France, the command was assumed by Adhemar, bishop of Puy, the pope's legate, and by Raymond, count of St. Giles and Tholouse, who added the prouder titles of duke of Narbonne and marquis of Provence. The former was a respectable prelate, alike qualified for this world and the next. The

III. Raymond of Tholouse.

latter was a veteran warrior, who had fought against the Saracens of Spain, and who consecrated his declining age, not only to the deliverance, but to the perpetual service, of the holy sepulchre. His experience and riches gave him a strong ascendant in the Christian camp, whose distress he was often able, and sometimes willing, to relieve. But it was easier for him to extort the praise of the Infidels, than to preserve the love of his subjects and associates. His eminent qualities were clouded by a temper, haughty, envious, and obstinate; and, though he resigned an ample patrimony, for the cause of God, his piety, in the public opinion, was not exempt from avarice and ambition". A mercantile, rather than a martial spirit, prevailed among his *provincials*", a common name, which included the natives of Auvergne and Languedoc", the vassals of the kingdom of Burgundy or Arles. From the adjacent frontier of Spain, he drew a band of hardy adventurers; as he marched through Lombardy, a crowd of Italians flocked to his standard, and his united force consisted of one hundred thousand horse and foot. If Raymond was the first to enlist and the last to depart, the delay may be excused by the greatness of his preparation and the promise of an everlasting farewell. IV. The name of Bohemond, the son of Robert Guiscard, was already famous by his double victory over the Greek emperor: but his father's will had reduced him to the principality of Tarentum, and the remembrance of his

IV. Bohemond and Tancred.

CHAP. Eastern trophies, till he was awakened by the  
 LVIII. rumour and passage of the French pilgrims. It is in the person of this Norman chief that we may seek for the coolest policy and ambition with a small allay of religious fanaticism. His conduct may justify a belief that he had secretly directed the design of the pope, which he affected to second with astonishment and zeal: at the siege of Amalphi, his example and discourse inflamed the passions of a confederate army; he instantly tore his garment to supply crosses for the numerous candidates, and prepared to visit Constantinople and Asia at the head of ten thousand horse and twenty thousand foot. Several princes of the Norman race accompanied this veteran general; and his cousin Tancred "was the partner, rather than the servant, of the war. In the accomplished character of Tancred, we discover all the virtues of a perfect knight", the true spirit of chivalry, which inspired the generous sentiments and social offices of man, far better than the base philosophy, or the baser religion, of the times.

Chivalry. Between the age of Charlemagne and that of the crusades, a revolution had taken place among the Spaniards, the Normans, and the French, which was gradually extended to the rest of Europe. The service of the infantry was degraded to the plebeians; the cavalry formed the strength of the armies, and the honourable name of *miles*, or soldier, was confined to the gentlemen "who served on horseback, and were invested with the



character of knighthood. The dukes and counts, who had usurped the rights of sovereignty, divided the provinces among their faithful barons: the barons distributed among their vassals the fiefs or benefices of their jurisdiction; and these military tenants, the peers of each other and of their lord, composed the noble or equestrian order, which disdained to conceive the peasant or burgher as of the same species with themselves. The dignity of their birth was preserved by pure and equal alliances; their sons alone, who could produce four quarters or lines of ancestry, without spot or reproach, might legally pretend to the honour of knighthood; but a valiant plebeian was sometimes enriched and ennobled by the sword, and became the father of a new race. A single knight could impart, according to his judgment, the character which he received; and the warlike sovereigns of Europe derived more glory from this personal distinction, than from the lustre of their diadem. This ceremony, of which some traces may be found in Tacitus and the woods of Germany“, was in its origin simple and profane; the candidate, after some previous trial, was invested with his sword and spurs; and his cheek or shoulder were touched with a slight blow, as an emblem of the last affront, which it was lawful for him to endure. But superstition mingled in every public and private action of life; in the holy wars, it sanctified the profession of arms; and the order of chivalry was assimilated in its rights and privileges to the sacred orders of

CHAP.  
LVIII.

priesthood. The bath and white garment of the novice, were an indecent copy of the regeneration of baptism: his sword, which he offered on the altar, was blessed by the ministers of religion; his solemn reception was preceded by fasts and vigils; and he was created a knight in the name of God, of St. George, and of St. Michael the archangel. He swore to accomplish the duties of his profession; and education, example, and the public opinion, were the inviolable guardians of his oath. As the champion of God and the ladies (I blush to unite such discordant names), he devoted himself to speak the truth; to maintain the right; to protect the distressed; to practise *courtesy*, a virtue less familiar to the ancients; to pursue the infidels; to despise the allurements of ease and safety; and to vindicate in every perilous adventure the honour of his character. The abuse of the same spirit provoked the illiterate knight to disclaim the arts of industry and peace; to esteem himself the sole judge and avenger of his own injuries; and proudly to neglect the laws of civil society and military discipline. Yet the benefits of this institution, to refine the temper of Barbarians, and to infuse some principles, of faith, justice, and humanity, were strongly felt, and have been often observed. The asperity of national prejudice was softened; and the community of religion and arms spread a similar colour and generous emulation over the face of Christendom. Abroad, in enterprise and pilgrimage, at home in martial exercise, the warriors of every country

were perpetually associated; and impartial taste must prefer a Gothic tournament to the Olympic games of classic antiquity". Instead of the naked spectacles which corrupted the manners of the Greeks, and banished from the stadium the virgins and matrons; the pompous decoration of the lists was crowned with the presence of chaste and high-born beauty, from whose hands the conqueror received the prize of his dexterity and courage. The skill and strength that were exerted in wrestling and boxing, bear a distant and doubtful relation to the merit of a soldier; but the tournaments, as they were invented in France, and eagerly adopted both in the East and West, presented a lively image of the business of the field. The single combats, the general skirmish, the defence of a pass, or castle, were rehearsed as in actual service; and the contest, both in real and mimic war, was decided by the superior management of the horse and lance. The lance was the proper and peculiar weapon of the knight; his horse was of a large and heavy breed; but this charger, till he was roused by the approaching danger, was usually led by an attendant, and he quietly rode a pad or palfrey of a more easy pace. His helmet, and sword, his greaves, and buckler, it would be superfluous to describe; but I may remark, that at the period of the crusades, the armour was less ponderous than in later times; and that, instead of a massy cuirass, his breast was defended by an hauberk or coat of mail. When their long lances were fixed in the rest, the

C H A P. warriors furiously spurred their horses against the  
 LVIII. foe; and the light cavalry of the Turks and Arabs  
 could seldom stand against the direct and impetu-  
 ous weight of their charge. Each knight was  
 attended to the field by his faithful squire, a youth  
 of equal birth and similar hopes; he was followed  
 by his archers and men at arms, and four, or  
 five, or six soldiers, were computed as the furni-  
 ture of a complete *lance*. In the expeditions to  
 the neighbouring kingdoms or the Holy Land,  
 the duties of the feudal tenure no longer subsist-  
 ed; the voluntary service of the knights and their  
 followers was either prompted by zeal or attach-  
 ment, or purchased with rewards and promises;  
 and the numbers of each squadron were measured  
 by the power, the wealth, and the fame of each  
 independent chieftain. They were distinguished  
 by his banner, his armorial coat, and his cry of  
 war; and the most ancient families of Europe  
 must seek in these achievements the origin and  
 proof of their nobility. In this rapid portrait of  
 chivalry, I have been urged to anticipate on the  
 story of the crusades, at once an effect, and a  
 cause, of this memorable institution".

March of the  
 princes to  
 Constanti-  
 nople,  
 A. D. 1096,  
 August 15—  
 A. D. 1097,  
 May.

Such were the troops, and such the leaders,  
 who assumed the cross for the deliverance of the  
 holy sepulchre. As soon as they were relieved  
 by the absence of the plebeian multitude, they  
 encouraged each other, by interviews and mes-  
 sages, to accomplish their vow and hasten their  
 departure. Their wives and sisters were desirous of  
 partaking the danger and merit of the pilgrimage;  
 their

their portable treasures were conveyed in bars of silver and gold; and the princes and barons were attended by their equipage of hounds and hawks to amuse their leisure and to supply their table. The difficulty of procuring subsistence for so many myriads of men and horses, engaged them to separate their forces; their choice or situation determined the road; and it was agreed to meet in the neighbourhood of Constantinople, and from thence to begin their operations against the Turks. From the banks of the Meuse and the Moselle, Godfrey of Bouillon followed the direct way of Germany, Hungary, and Bulgaria: and, as long as he exercised the sole command, every step afforded some proof of his prudence and virtue. On the confines of Hungary he was stopped three weeks by a Christian people, to whom the name, or at least the abuse, of the cross was justly odious. The Hungarians still smarted with the wounds which they had received from the first pilgrims: in their turn they had abused the right of defence and retaliation; and they had reason to apprehend a severe revenge from an hero of the same nation, and who was engaged in the same cause. But, after weighing the motives and the events, the virtuous duke was content to pity the crimes and misfortunes of his worthless brethren; and his twelve deputies, the messengers of peace, requested in his name a free passage and an equal market. To remove their suspicions, Godfrey trusted himself and afterwards his brother, to the faith of Carlo-

CHAP. man king of Hungary, who treated them with a  
 LVIII. simple but hospitable entertainment: the treaty  
 was sanctified by their common gospel; and a  
 proclamation, under pain of death, restrained the  
 animosity and licence of the Latin soldiers. From  
 Austria to Belgrade, they traversed the plains of  
 Hungary, without enduring or offering an injury;  
 and the proximity of Carloman, who hovered on  
 their flanks with his numerous cavalry, was a  
 precaution not less useful for their safety than for  
 his own. They reached the banks of the Save;  
 and no sooner had they passed the river, than  
 the king of Hungary restored the hostages, and  
 saluted their departure with the fairest wishes for  
 the success of their enterprise. With the same  
 conduct and discipline, Godfrey pervaded the  
 woods of Bulgaria and the frontiers of Thrace;  
 and might congratulate himself, that he had al-  
 most reached the first term of his pilgrimage,  
 without drawing his sword against a Christian  
 adversary. After an easy and pleasant journey  
 through Lombardy, from Turin to Aquileia,  
 Raymond and his provincials marched forty days  
 through the savage country of Dalmatia" and  
 Sclavonia. The weather was a perpetual fog; the  
 land was mountainous and desolate; the natives  
 were either fugitive or hostile; loose in their reli-  
 gion and government, they refused to furnish  
 provisions or guides; murdered the stragglers,  
 and exercised by night and day the vigilance of  
 the count, who derived more security from the  
 punishment of some captive robbers than from his

interview and treaty with the prince of Scodra<sup>66</sup>. His march between Durazzo and Constantinople was harassed, without being stopped, by the peasants and foldiers of the Greek emperor; and the same faint and ambiguous hostility was prepared for the remaining chiefs, who passed the Adriatic from the coast of Italy. Bohemond had arms and vessels, and foresight and discipline; and his name was not forgotten in the provinces of Epirus and Thessaly. Whatever obstacles he encountered were surmounted by his military conduct and the valour of Tancred; and if the Norman prince affected to spare the Greeks, he gorged his foldiers with the full plunder of an heretical castle<sup>67</sup>. The nobles of France pressed forwards with the vain and thoughtless ardour of which their nation has been sometimes accused. From the Alps to Apulia the march of Hugh the Great, of the two Roberts, and of Stephen of Chartres, through a wealthy country, and amidst the applauding Catholics, was a devout or triumphant progress: they kissed the feet of the Roman pontiff; and the golden standard of St. Peter was delivered to the brother of the French monarch<sup>68</sup>. But in this visit of piety and pleasure, they neglected to secure the season, and the means, of their embarkation: the winter was insensibly lost; their troops were scattered and corrupted in the towns of Italy. They separately accomplished their passage, regardless of safety or dignity: and within nine months from the feast of the Assumption, the day appointed by Urban, all the Latin princes had reached

CHAP.  
LVIII.

Constantinople. But the count of Vermandois was produced as a captive; his foremost vessels were scattered by a tempest; and his person, against the law of nations, was detained by the lieutenants of Alexius. Yet the arrival of Hugh had been announced by four-and-twenty knights in golden armour, who commanded the emperor to revere the general of the Latin Christians, the brother of the King of kings<sup>41</sup>.

Policy of the  
emperor  
Alexius Com-  
nenus,  
A. D. 1096,  
December—  
A. D. 1097,  
May.

In some Oriental tale I have read the fable of a shepherd, who was ruined by the accomplishment of his own wishes: he had prayed for water; the Ganges was turned into his grounds, and his flock and cottage were swept away by the inundation. Such was the fortune, or at least the apprehension, of the Greek emperor Alexius Comnenus, whose name has already appeared in this history, and whose conduct is so differently represented by his daughter Anne<sup>42</sup>, and by the Latin writers<sup>43</sup>. In the council of Placentia, his ambassadors had solicited a moderate succour, perhaps of ten thousand soldiers: but he was astonished by the approach of so many potent chiefs and fanatic nations. The emperor fluctuated between hope and fear, between timidity and courage; but in the crooked policy which he mistook for wisdom, I cannot believe, I cannot discern, that he maliciously conspired against the life or honour of the French heroes. The promiscuous multitudes of Peter the hermit, were savage beasts, alike destitute of humanity and reason: nor was it possible for Alexius to prevent or



deplore their destruction. The troops of Godfrey and his peers were less contemptible, but not less suspicious, to the Greek emperor. Their motives *might* be pure and pious; but he was equally alarmed by his knowledge of the ambitious Bohemond and his ignorance of the Transalpine chiefs: the courage of the French was blind and headstrong; they might be tempted by the luxury and wealth of Greece, and elated by the view and opinion of their invincible strength; and Jerusalem might be forgotten in the prospect of Constantinople. After a long march and painful abstinence, the troops of Godfrey encamped in the plains of Thrace; they heard with indignation, that their brother, the count of Vermandois, was imprisoned by the Greeks; and their reluctant duke was compelled to indulge them in some freedom of retaliation and rapine. They were appeased by the submission of Alexius; he promised to supply their camp; and as they refused in the midst of winter, to pass the Bosphorus, their quarters were assigned among the gardens and palaces on the shores of that narrow sea. But an incurable jealousy still rankled in the minds of the two nations, who despised each other, as slaves and Barbarians. Ignorance is the ground of suspicion, and suspicion was inflamed into daily provocations: prejudice is blind, hunger is deaf; and Alexius is accused of a design to starve or assault the Latins in a dangerous post, on all sides encompassed with the waters“. Godfrey sounded his trumpets, burst the net,

CHAPTER  
LVIII.

overspread the plain, and insulted the suburbs: but the gates of Constantinople were strongly fortified; the ramparts were lined with archers; and after a doubtful conflict, both parties listened to the voice of peace and religion. The gifts and promises of the emperor insensibly soothed the fierce spirit of the western strangers; as a Christian warrior, he rekindled their zeal for the prosecution of their holy enterprise, which he engaged to second with his troops and treasures. On the return of spring, Godfrey was persuaded to occupy a pleasant and plentiful camp in Asia; and no sooner had he passed the Bosphorus, than the Greek vessels were suddenly recalled to the opposite shore. The same policy was repeated with the succeeding chiefs, who were swayed by the example, and weakened by the departure, of their foremost companions. By his skill and diligence, Alexius prevented the union of any two of the confederate armies at the same moment under the walls of Constantinople; and before the feast of the Pentecost not a Latin pilgrim was left on the coast of Europe.

He obtains  
the homage  
of the cru-  
saders.

The same arms which threatened Europe, might deliver Asia, and repel the Turks from the neighbouring shores of the Bosphorus and Hellespont. The fair provinces from Nice to Antioch were the recent patrimony of the Roman emperor; and his ancient and perpetual claim still embraced the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt. In his enthusiasm, Alexius indulged, or affected, the ambitious hope of leading his new allies to

subvert the thrones of the East: but the calmer dictates of reason and temper dissuaded him from exposing his royal person to the faith of unknown and lawless Barbarians. His prudence, or his pride, was content with extorting from the French princes an oath of homage and fidelity, and a solemn promise, that they would either restore, or hold, their Asiatic conquests, as the humble and loyal vassals of the Roman empire. Their independent spirit was fired at the mention of this foreign and voluntary servitude: they successively yielded to the dextrous application of gifts and flattery; and the first proselytes became the most eloquent and effectual missionaries to multiply the companions of their shame. The pride of Hugh of Vermandois was soothed by the honours of his captivity; and in the brother of the French king, the example of submission was prevalent and weighty. In the mind of Godfrey of Bouillon every human consideration was subordinate to the glory of God and the success of the crusade. He had firmly resisted the temptations of Bohemond and Raymond, who urged the attack and conquest of Constantinople. Alexius esteemed his virtues, deservedly named him the champion of the empire, and dignified his homage with the filial name and the rites of adoption". The hateful Bohemond was received as a true and ancient ally; and if the emperor reminded him of former hostilities, it was only to praise the valour that he had displayed, and the glory that he had

C H A P. acquired, in the fields of Durazzo and Larissa.  
 LVIII. The son of Guiscard was lodged and entertained, and served with Imperial pomp: one day, as he passed through the gallery of the palace, a door was carelessly left open to expose a pile of gold and silver, of silk and gems, of curious and costly furniture, that was heaped in seeming disorder, from the floor to the roof of the chamber. "What conquests," exclaimed the ambitious miser, "might not be achieved by the possession of such a treasure?" "It is your own," replied a Greek attendant who watched the motions of his soul; and Bohemond, after some hesitation, condescended to accept this magnificent present. The Norman was flattered by the assurance of an independent principality, and Alexius eluded, rather than denied, his daring demand of the office of great domestic, or general, of the East. The two Roberts, the son of the conqueror of England, and the kinsman of three queens, bowed in their turn before the Byzantine throne. A private letter of Stephen of Chartres attests his admiration of the emperor, the most excellent and liberal of men, who taught him to believe that he was a favourite, and promised to educate and establish his youngest son. In his southern province, the count of St. Giles and Tholouse faintly recognized the supremacy of the king of France, a prince of a foreign nation and language. At the head of an hundred thousand men, he declared, that he was the soldier and servant of Christ alone,

and that the Greek might be satisfied with an equal treaty of alliance and friendship. His obstinate resistance enhanced the value and the price of his submission; and he shone, says the princess Anne, among the Barbarians, as the sun amidst the stars of heaven. His disgust of the noise and insolence of the French, his suspicions of the designs of Bohemond, the emperor imparted to his faithful Raymond; and that aged statesman might clearly discern, that however false in friendship, he was sincere in his enmity". The spirit of chivalry was last subdued in the person of Tancred; and none could deem themselves dishonoured by the imitation of that gallant knight. He disdained the gold and flattery of the Greek monarch; assaulted in his presence an insolent patrician; escaped to Asia in the habit of a private soldier; and yielded with a sigh to the authority of Bohemond and the interest of the Christian cause. The best and most ostensible reason was the impossibility of passing the sea and accomplishing their vow, without the licence and the vessels of Alexius; but they cherished a secret hope, that as soon as they trod the continent of Asia, their swords would obliterate their shame, and dissolve the engagement, which on his side might not be very faithfully performed. The ceremony of their homage was grateful to a people who had long since considered pride as the substitute of power. High on his throne, the emperor sat mute and immoveable: his majesty was adored by the Latin

CHAP. princes; and they submitted to kiss either his feet  
 LVIII' or his knees, an indignity which their own  
 writers are ashamed to confess and unable to  
 deny".

Influence of  
 the Franks,

Private or public interest suppressed the murmurs of the dukes and counts; but a French baron (he is supposed to be Robert of Paris") presumed to ascend the throne, and to place himself by the side of Alexius. The sage reproof of Baldwin provoked him to exclaim, in his barbarous idiom, "Who is this rustic, that keeps "his seat, while so many valiant captains are "standing round him?" The emperor maintained his silence, dissembled his indignation, and questioned his interpreter concerning the meaning of the words, which he partly suspected from the universal language of gesture and countenance. Before the departure of the pilgrims, he endeavoured to learn the name and condition of the audacious baron. "I am a Frenchman", replied Robert, "of the purest and most ancient "nobility of my country. All that I know is, "that there is a church in my neighbourhood", "the resort of those who are desirous of ap- "proving their valour in single combat. Till "an enemy appears, they address their prayers "to God and his saints. That church I have "frequently visited, but never have I found an "antagonist who dared to accept my defiance." Alexius dismissed the challenger with some prudent advice for his conduct in the Turkish warfare; and history repeats with pleasure this

lively example of the manners of his age and country. CHAP.  
LVIII.

The conquest of Asia was undertaken and atchieved by Alexander, with thirty-five thousand Macedonians and Greeks"; and his best hope was in the strength and discipline of his phalanx of infantry. The principal force of the crusaders consisted in their cavalry; and when that force was mustered in the plains of Bithynia, the knights and their martial attendants on horse back amounted to one hundred thousand fighting men, completely armed with the helmet and coat of mail. The value of these soldiers deserved a strict and authentic account; and the flower of European chivalry might furnish, in a first effort, this formidable body of heavy horse. A part of the infantry might be enrolled for the service of scouts, pioneers, and archers; but the promiscuous crowd were lost in their own disorder; and we depend not on the eyes or knowledge, but on the belief and fancy, of a chaplain of count Baldwin", in the estimate of six hundred thousand pilgrims able to bear arms, besides the priests and monks, the women and children, of the Latin camp. The reader starts; and before he is recovered from his surprise, I shall add, on the same testimony, that if all who took the cross had accomplished their vow, above SIX MILLIONS would have migrated from Europe to Asia. Under this oppression of faith, I derive some relief from a more sagacious and thinking writer", who, after the same review

Their review  
and numbers,  
A. D. 1097,  
May.

CHAP. of the cavalry, accuses the credulity of the priest  
 LVIII. of Chartres, and even doubts whether the *Cisal-*  
*pine* regions (in the geography of a Frenchman)  
 were sufficient to produce and pour forth such  
 incredible multitudes. The coolest scepticism  
 will remember, that of these religious volunteers  
 great numbers never beheld Constantinople and  
 Nice. Of enthusiasm the influence is irregular  
 and transient: many were detained at home by  
 reason or cowardice, by poverty or weakness; and  
 many were repulsed by the obstacles of the way, the  
 more insuperable as they were unforeseen to these  
 ignorant fanatics. The savage countries of Hungary  
 and Bulgaria were whitened with their bones: their  
 vanguard was cut in pieces by the Turkish sultan;  
 and the loss of the first adventure by the sword,  
 or climate, or fatigue, has already been stated  
 at three hundred thousand men. Yet the my-  
 riads that survived, that marched, that pressed  
 forwards on the holy pilgrimage, were a subject  
 of astonishment to themselves and to the Greeks.  
 The copious energy of her language sinks under  
 the efforts of the princess Anne<sup>76</sup>: the images  
 of locusts, of leaves and flowers, of the sands  
 of the sea, or the stars of heaven, imperfectly  
 represent what she had seen and heard; and the  
 daughter of Alexius exclaims, that Europe was  
 loosened from its foundations, and hurled against  
 Asia. The ancient hosts of Darius and Xerxes  
 labour under the same doubt of a vague and in-  
 definite magnitude; but I am inclined to believe,  
 that a larger number has never been contained



within the lines of a single camp than at the siege of Nice, the first operation of the Latin princes. Their motives, their characters, and their arms, have been already displayed. Of their troops, the most numerous portion were natives of France: the Low Countries, the banks of the Rhine, and Apulia, sent a powerful reinforcement: some bands of adventurers were drawn from Spain, Lombardy, and England"; and from the distant bogs and mountains of Ireland or Scotland" issued some naked and savage fanatics, ferocious at home but unwarlike abroad. Had not superstition condemned the sacrilegious prudence of depriving the poorest or weakest Christian of the merit of the pilgrimage, the useless crowd, with mouths, but without hands might have been stationed in the Greek empire, till their companions had opened and secured the way of the Lord. A small remnant of the pilgrims, who passed the Bosphorus, was permitted to visit the holy sepulchre. Their northern constitution was scorched by the rays, and infected by the vapours, of a Syrian sun. They consumed, with heedless prodigality, their stores of water and provision: their numbers exhausted the inland country; the sea was remote, the Greeks were unfriendly, and the Christians of every sect fled before the voracious and cruel rapine of their brethren. In the dire necessity of fannie, they sometimes roasted and devoured the flesh of their infant or adult captives. Among the Turks and Saracens, the idolaters of Europe.

C H A P.  
LVIII.

were rendered more odious by the name and reputation of cannibals: the spies who introduced themselves into the kitchen of Bohemond, were shewn several human bodies turning on the spit; and the artful Norman encouraged a report, which encreased at the same time the abhorrence and the terror of the infidels".

Siege of  
Nice,  
A. D. 1097,  
May 14—  
June 20.

I have expatiated with pleasure on the first steps of the crusaders, as they paint the manners and character of Europe: but I shall abridge the tedious and uniform narrative of their blind achievements, which were performed by strength and are described by ignorance. From their first station in the neighbourhood of Nicomedia, they advanced in successive divisions; passed the contracted limit of the Greek empire; opened a road through the hills, and commenced by the siege of his capital, their pious warfare against the Turkish sultan. His kingdom of Roum extended from the Hellespont to the confines of Syria, and barred the pilgrimage of Jerusalem: his name was Kilidge-Arslan, or Soliman", of the race of Seljuk, and son of the first conqueror; and in the defence of a land which the Turks considered as their own, he deserved the praise of his enemies, by whom alone he is known to posterity. Yielding to the first impulse of the torrent, he deposited his family and treasure in Nice; retired to the mountains with fifty thousand horse; and twice descended to assault the camps or quarters of the Christian besiegers, which formed an imperfect circle of above six miles. The lofty and solid

walls of Nice were covered by a deep ditch, and flanked by three hundred and seventy towers; and on the verge of Christendom, the Moslems were trained in arms and inflamed by religion. Before this city, the French princes occupied their stations, and prosecuted their attacks without correspondence or subordination: emulation prompted their valour; but their valour was sullied by cruelty, and their emulation degenerated into envy and civil discord. In the siege of Nice, the arts and engines of antiquity were employed by the Latins; the mine and the battering-ram, the tortoise, and the belfrey or moveable turret, artificial fire, and the *catapult* and *balist*, the sling, and the cross-bow for the casting of stones and darts". In the space of seven weeks, much labour and blood were expended, and some progress, especially by count Raymond, was made on the side of the besiegers. But the Turks could protract their resistance and secure their escape, as long as they were masters of the lake" Ascanius, which stretches several miles to the westward of the city. The means of conquest were supplied by the prudence and industry of Alexis; a great number of boats was transported on sledges from the sea to the lake; they were filled with the most dextrous of his archers; the flight of the sultana was intercepted; Nice was invested by land and water; and a Greek emissary persuaded the inhabitants to accept his master's protection, and to save themselves, by a timely surrender, from the rage of the savages of Europe.

CHAP. LVIII. In the moment of victory, or at least of hope, the crusaders, thirsting for blood and plunder, were awed by the Imperial banner that streamed from the citadel; and Alexius guarded with jealous vigilance this important conquest. The murmurs of the chiefs were stifled by honour or interest; and after an halt of nine days, they directed their march towards Phrygia under the guidance of a Greek general, whom they suspected of a secret connivance with the sultan. The consort and the principal servants of Soliman had been honourably restored without ransom; and the emperor's generosity to the *miscreants* " was interpreted as treason to the Christian cause.

Battle of  
Doryzeum,  
A. D. 1097,  
July 4.

Soliman was rather provoked than dismayed by the loss of his capital: he admonished his subjects and allies of this strange invasion of the western Barbarians; the Turkish emirs obeyed the call of loyalty or religion; the Turkman hords encamped round his standard; and his whole force is loosely stated by the Christians at two hundred, or even three hundred and sixty, thousand horse. Yet he patiently waited till they had left behind them the sea and the Greek frontier; and hovering on the flanks, observed their careless and confident progress in two columns beyond the view of each other. Some miles before they could reach Doryzeum in Phrygia, the left, and least numerous, division was surprised, and attacked, and almost oppressed, by the Turkish cavalry ". The heat of the weather, the clouds of arrows, and the barbarous onset, overwhelmed the  
crusaders;

crusaders; they lost their order and confidence, and the fainting fight was sustained by the personal valour, rather than by the military conduct, of Bohemond, Tancred, and Robert of Normandy. They were revived by the welcome banners of duke Godfrey, who flew to their succour with the count of Vermandois, and sixty thousand horse; and was followed by Raymond of Thoulouse, the bishop of Puy, and the remainder of the sacred army. Without a moment's pause, they formed in new order, and advanced to a second battle. They were received with equal resolution; and, in their common disdain for the unwarlike people of Greece and Asia, it was confessed on both sides, that the Turks and the Franks were the only nations entitled to the appellation of soldiers". Their encounter was varied and balanced by the contrast of arms and discipline; of the direct charge, and wheeling evolutions; of the couched lance, and the brandished javelin; of a weighty broad-sword, and a crooked sabre; of cumbrous armour, and thin flowing robes; and of the long Tartar bow, and the *abalist* or cross-bow, a deadly weapon, yet unknown to the Orientals". As long as the horses were fresh and the quivers full, Soliman maintained the advantage of the day; and four thousand Christians were pierced by the Turkish arrows. In the evening, swiftness yielded to strength; on either side, the numbers were equal, or at least as great as any ground could hold, or any generals could manage; but in turning the hills, the last division

CHAP. of Raymond and his *provincials* was led, perhaps  
 LVIII. without design, on the rear of an exhausted enemy;  
 and the long contest was determined. Besides a  
 nameless and unaccounted multitude, three thou-  
 sand *Pagan* knights were slain in the battle and  
 pursuit; the camp of Soliman was pillaged; and  
 in the variety of precious spoil, the curiosity of  
 the Latins was amused with foreign arms and  
 apparel, and the new aspect of dromedaries and  
 camels. The importance of the victory was  
 proved by the hasty retreat of the sultan: reserving  
 ten thousand guards of the relics of his army,  
 Soliman evacuated the kingdom of Roum, and  
 hastened to implore the aid, and kindle the  
 resentment, of his Eastern brethren. In a march  
 of five hundred miles, the crusaders traversed the  
 Lesser Asia, through a wasted land and deserted  
 towns, without finding either a friend or an  
 enemy. The geographer "may trace the position  
 of Dorykeum, Antioch of Pisidia, Iconium,  
 Archelais, and Germanicia, and may compare  
 those classic appellations with the modern names  
 of Eskishehr the old city, Akshehr the white  
 city, Cogni, Erekli, and Marash. As the pilgrims  
 passed over a desert, where a draught of water is  
 exchanged for silver, they were tormented by  
 intolerable thirst; and on the banks of the first  
 rivulet, their haste and intemperance were still  
 more pernicious to the disorderly throng. They  
 climbed with toil and danger the steep and slippery  
 sides of mount Taurus: many of the soldiers cast  
 away their arms to secure their footsteps; and

March  
 through the  
 Lesser Asia,  
 July—Sep-  
 tember.

had not terror preceded their van, the long and trembling file might have been driven down the precipice by an handful of resolute enemies. Two of their most respectable chiefs, the duke of Lorraine and the count of Tholouse, were carried in litters: Raymond was raised, as it is said by miracle, from an hopeless malady; and Godfrey had been torn by a bear, as he pursued that rough and perilous chace in the mountains of Pisidia.

To improve the general consternation, the cousin of Bohemond and the brother of Godfrey were detached from the main army with their respective squadrons of five, and of seven, hundred knights. They over-ran in a rapid career the hills and sea-coast of Cilicia, from Cogni to the Syrian gates: the Norman standard was first planted on the walls of Tarsus and Malmistra; but the proud injustice of Baldwin at length provoked the patient and generous Italian: and they turned their consecrated swords against each other in a private and profane quarrel. Honour was the motive, and fame the reward, of Tancred; but fortune smiled on the more selfish enterprise of his rival". He was called to the assistance of a Greek or Armenian tyrant, who had been suffered under the Turkish yoke to reign over the Christians of Edessa. Baldwin accepted the character of his son and champion; but no sooner was he introduced into the city, than he inflamed the people to the massacre of his father, occupied the throne and treasure, extended his conquests over the hills of Armenia and the plain of Mesopotamia, and

Baldwin  
founds the  
principality  
of Edessa,  
A. D.  
1097—1151.

C H A P. founded the first principality of the Franks or  
 LVIII. Latins, which subsisted fifty-four years beyond  
 the Euphrates ”.

Siege of  
 Antioch,  
 A. D. 1097.  
 October 21—  
 A. D. 1098,  
 June 3.

Before the Franks could enter Syria, the summer, and even the autumn, were completely wasted: the siege of Antioch, or the separation and repose of the army during the winter season, was strongly debated in their council: the love of arms and the holy sepulchre urged them to advance; and reason perhaps was on the side of resolution, since every hour of delay abates the fame and force of the invader, and multiplies the resources of defensive war. The capital of Syria was protected by the river Orontes; and the *iron bridge*, of nine arches, derives its name from the massy gates of the two towers which are constructed at either end. They were opened by the sword of the duke of Normandy: his victory gave entrance to three hundred thousand crusaders, an account which may allow some scope for losses and desertion, but which clearly detects much exaggeration in the review of Nice. In the description of Antioch”, it is not easy to define a middle term between her ancient magnificence, under the successors of Alexander and Augustus, and the modern aspect of Turkish desolation. The Tetrapolis, or four cities, if they retained their name and position, must have left a large vacancy in a circumference of twelve miles; and that measure, as well as the number of four hundred towers, are not perfectly consistent with the five gates, so often mentioned in the history of the



siege. Yet Antioch must have still flourished as a great and populous capital. At the head of the Turkish emirs, Baghisian, a veteran chief, commanded in the place: his garrison was composed of six or seven thousand horse, and fifteen or twenty thousand foot: one hundred thousand Moslems are said to have fallen by the sword; and their numbers were probably inferior to the Greeks, Armenians, and Syrians, who had been no more than fourteen years the slaves of the house of Seljuk. From the remains of a solid and stately wall, it appears to have arisen to the height of threescore feet in the vallies; and wherever less art and labour had been applied, the ground was supposed to be defended by the river, the morafs, and the mountains. Notwithstanding these fortifications, the city had been repeatedly taken by the Persians, the Arabs, the Greeks, and the Turks; so large a circuit must have yielded many pervious points of attack; and in a siege that was formed about the middle of October, the vigour of the execution could alone justify the boldness of the attempt. Whatever strength and valour could perform in the field was abundantly discharged by the champions of the cross: in the frequent occasions of sallies, of forage, of the attack and defence of convoys, they were often victorious; and we can only complain, that their exploits are sometimes enlarged beyond the scale of probability and truth. The sword of Godfrey "divided a Turk from the shoulder to the haunch; and one half of the infidel fell to the ground,

CHAP. while the other was transported by his horse to  
 LVIII. the city gate. As Robert of Normandy rode  
 against his antagonist, "I devote thy head," he  
 piously exclaimed, "to the dæmons of hell;" and  
 that head was instantly cloven to the breast by  
 the resistless stroke of his descending faulchion.  
 But the reality or the report of such gigantic  
 prowess "must have taught the Moslems to keep  
 within their walls; and against those walls of  
 earth or stone, the sword and the lance were  
 unavailing weapons. In the slow and successive  
 labours of a siege, the crusaders were supine and  
 ignorant, without skill to contrive, or money to  
 purchase, or industry to use, the artificial engines  
 and implements of assault. In the conquest of  
 Nice, they had been powerfully assisted by the  
 wealth and knowledge of the Greek emperor:  
 his absence was poorly supplied by some Genoese  
 and Pisan vessels, that were attracted by religion  
 or trade to the coast of Syria: the stores were  
 scanty, the return precarious, and the commu-  
 nication difficult and dangerous. Indolence or  
 weakness had prevented the Franks from investing  
 the entire circuit; and the perpetual freedom of  
 two gates relieved the wants and recruited the  
 garrison of the city. At the end of seven months,  
 after the ruin of their cavalry, and an enormous  
 loss by famine, desertion, and fatigue, the  
 progress of the crusaders was imperceptible, and  
 their success remote, if the Latin Ulysses, the  
 artful and ambitious Bohemond, had not employed  
 the arms of cunning and deceit. The Christians

of Antioch were numerous and discontented: Phirouz, a Syrian renegado, had acquired the favour of the emir and the command of three towers; and the merit of his repentance disguised to the Latins, and perhaps to himself, the foul design of perfidy and treason. A secret correspondence, for their mutual interest, was soon established between Phirouz and the prince of Tarento; and Bohemond declared in the council of the chiefs, that he could deliver the city into their hands. But he claimed the sovereignty of Antioch as the reward of his service; and the proposal which had been rejected by the envy, was at length extorted from the distress, of his equals. The nocturnal surprise was executed by the French and Norman princes, who ascended in person the scaling-ladders that were thrown from the walls: their new proselyte, after the murder of his too scrupulous brother, embraced and introduced the servants of Christ; the army rushed through the gates; and the Moslems soon found, that although mercy was hopeless, resistance was impotent. But the citadel still refused to surrender; and the victors themselves were speedily encompassed and besieged by the innumerable forces of Kerboga, prince of Mosul, who, with twenty-eight Turkish emirs, advanced to the deliverance of Antioch. Five-and-twenty days the Christians spent on the verge of destruction; and the proud lieutenant of the caliph and the sultan left them only the choice of servitude or death". In this extremity they

C H A P.

LVIII.

Victory of  
the crusaders,  
A. D. 1098,  
June 28.

collected the relics of their strength, sallied from the town, and in a single memorable day annihilated or dispersed the host of Turks and Arabians, which they might safely report to have consisted of six hundred thousand men". Their supernatural allies I shall proceed to consider: the human causes of the victory of Antioch were the fearless despair of the Franks; and the surprise, the discord, perhaps the errors, of their unskilful and presumptuous adversaries. The battle is described with as much disorder as it was fought; but we may observe the tent of Kerboga, a moveable and spacious palace, enriched with the luxury of Asia, and capable of holding above two thousand persons; we may distinguish his three thousand guards, who were cased, the horses as well as the men, in complete steel.

Their famine  
and distress  
at Antioch.

In the eventful period of the siege and defence of Antioch, the crusaders were alternately exalted by victory or sunk in despair; either swelled with plenty or emaciated with hunger. A speculative reasoner might suppose, that their faith had a strong and serious influence on their practice; and that the soldiers of the cross, the deliverers of the holy sepulchre, prepared themselves by a sober and virtuous life for the daily contemplation of martyrdom. Experience blows away this charitable illusion: and seldom does the history of profane war display such scenes of intemperance and prostitution as were exhibited under the walls of Antioch. The grove of Daphne no longer flourished; but the Syrian air was still impregnated

with the same vices; the Christians were seduced by every temptation "that nature either prompts or reprobates; the authority of the chiefs was despised; and sermons and edicts were alike fruitless against those scandalous disorders, not less pernicious to military discipline, than repugnant to evangetic purity. In the first days of the siege and the possession of Antioch, the Franks consumed with wanton and thoughtless prodigality the frugal subsistence of weeks and months: the desolate country no longer yielded a supply; and from that country they were at length excluded by the arms of the besieging Turks. Disease, the faithful companion of want, was envenomed by the rains of the winter, the summer heats, unwholesome food, and the close imprisonment of multitudes. The pictures of famine and pestilence are always the same, and always disgusting; and our imagination may suggest the nature of their sufferings and their resources. The remains of treasure or spoil were eagerly lavished in the purchase of the vilest nourishment; and dreadful must have been the calamities of the poor, since, after paying three marks of silver for a goat and fifteen for a lean camel", the count of Flanders was reduced to beg a dinner, and duke Godfrey to borrow an horse. Sixty thousand horses had been reviewed in the camp: before the end of the siege they were diminished to two thousand, and scarcely two hundred fit for service could be mustered on the day of battle. Weakness of body, and terror of mind, extinguished the ardent enthusiasm of

CHAP. the pilgrims; and every motive of honour and  
 LVIII. religion was subdued by the desire of life". Among the chiefs, three heroes may be found without fear or reproach: Godfrey of Bouillon was supported by his magnanimous piety; Bohemond by ambition and interest; and Tancred declared, in the true spirit of chivalry, that as long as he was at the head of forty knights, he would never relinquish the enterprize of Palestine. But the count of Tholouse and Provence was suspected of a voluntary indisposition; the duke of Normandy was recalled from the sea-shore by the censures of the church; Hugh the Great, though he led the vanguard of the battle, embraced an ambiguous opportunity of returning to France; and Stephen count of Chartres basely deserted the standard which he bore, and the council in which he presided. The soldiers were discouraged by the flight of William viscount of Melun, surnamed the *Carpenter*, from the weighty strokes of his axe; and the saints were scandalised by the fall of Peter the Hermit, who, after arming Europe against Asia, attempted to escape from the penance of a necessary fast. Of the multitude of recreant warriors, the names (says an historian) are blotted from the book of life; and the opprobrious epithet of the rope-dancers was applied to the deserters who dropt in the night from the walls of Antioch. The emperor Alexius", who seemed to advance to the succour of the Latins, was dismayed by the assurance of their hopeless condition. They expected their fate in silent

despair; oaths and punishments were tried without effect; and to rouse the soldiers to the defence of the walls, it was found necessary to set fire to their quarters.

For their salvation and victory, they were indebted to the same fanaticism which had led them to the brink of ruin. In such a cause, and in such an army; visions, prophecies, and miracles, were frequent and familiar. In the distress of Antioch; they were repeated with unusual energy and success: St. Ambrose had assured a pious ecclesiastic, that two years of trial must precede the season of deliverance and grace; the deserters were stopped by the presence and reproaches of Christ himself; the dead had promised to arise and combat with their brethren; the Virgin had obtained the pardon of their sins; and their confidence was revived by a visible sign, the seasonable and splendid discovery of the HOLY LANCE. The policy of their chiefs has on this occasion been admired, and might surely be excused; but a pious fraud is seldom produced by the cool conspiracy of many persons; and a voluntary impostor might depend on the support of the wise and the credulity of the people. Of the diocese of Marseilles, there was a priest of low cunning and loose manners, and his name was Peter Bartholemy. He presented himself at the door of the council-chamber, to disclose an apparition of St. Andrew, which had been thrice reiterated in his sleep, with a dreadful menace, if he presumed to suppress the commands of heaven.

C H A P.

LVIII.

Legend of  
the Holy  
Lance.

CHAP. "At Antioch," said the apostle, "in the church  
 LVIII. "of my brother St. Peter, near the high altar,  
 "is concealed the steel head of the lance that  
 "pierced the side of our Redeemer. In three  
 "days, that instrument of eternal, and now of  
 "temporal, salvation, will be manifested to his  
 "disciples. Search and ye shall find: bear it  
 "aloft in battle; and that mystic weapon shall  
 "penetrate the souls of the miscreants." The  
 pope's legate, the bishop of Puy, affected to  
 listen with coldness and distrust; but the revelation  
 was eagerly accepted by count Raymond, whom  
 his faithful subject, in the name of the apostle,  
 had chosen for the guardian of the holy lance.  
 The experiment was resolved; and on the third  
 day, after a due preparation of prayer and fasting,  
 the priest of Marseilles introduced twelve trusty  
 spectators, among whom were the count and his  
 chaplain; and the church-doors were barred  
 against the impetuous multitude. The ground  
 was opened in the appointed place; but the  
 workmen, who relieved each other, dug to the  
 depth of twelve feet without discovering the object  
 of their search. In the evening, when count  
 Raymond had withdrawn to his post, and the  
 weary assistants began to murmur, Bartholemy,  
 in his shirt, and without his shoes, boldly descended  
 into the pit; the darkness of the hour and of  
 the place enabled him to secrete and deposit the  
 head of a Saracen lance; and the first sound,  
 the first gleam, of the steel, was saluted with a  
 devout rapture. The holy lance was drawn from



its recess, wrapt in a veil of filk and gold, and exposed to the veneration of the crusaders; their anxious suspense burst forth in a general shout of joy and hope, and the desponding troops were again inflamed with the enthusiasm of valour. Whatever had been the arts, and whatever might be the sentiments of the chiefs, they skilfully improved this fortunate revolution by every aid that discipline and devotion could afford. The soldiers were dismissed to their quarters with an injunction to fortify their minds and bodies for the approaching conflict, freely to bestow their last pittance on themselves and their horses, and to expect with the dawn of day the signal of victory. On the festival of St. Peter and St. Paul, the gates of Antioch were thrown open; a martial psalm, "Let the Lord arise, and let his enemies be scattered!" was chaunted by a procession of priests and monks; the battle array was marshalled in twelve divisions, in honour of the twelve apostles; and the holy lance, in the absence of Raymond, was entrusted to the hands of his chaplain. The influence of this relic or trophy was felt by the servants, and perhaps by the enemies, of Christ"; and its potent energy was heightened by an accident, a stratagem, or a rumour, of a miraculous complexion. Three knights, in white garments and resplendent arms, either issued, or seemed to issue, from the hills: the voice of Adhemar, the pope's legate, proclaimed them as the martyrs St. George, St. Theodore, and St. Maurice; the tumult of battle

Celestial  
warriors.

CHAPTER. allowed no time for doubt or scrutiny; and the  
 LVIII. welcome apparition dazzled the eyes or the imagination of a fanatic army. In the season of danger and triumph, the revelation of Bartholemy of Marseilles was unanimously asserted; but as soon as the temporary service was accomplished the personal dignity and liberal alms which the count of Tholouse derived from the custody of the holy lance, provoked the envy, and awakened the reason, of his rivals. A Norman clerk presumed to sift, with a philosophic spirit, the truth of the legend, the circumstances of the discovery, and the character of the prophet; and the pious Bohemond ascribed their deliverance to the merits and intercession of Christ alone. For a while, the Provincials defended their national palladium with clamours and arms; and new visions condemned to death and hell the profane sceptics, who presumed to scrutinise the truth and merit of the discovery. The prevalence of incredulity compelled the author to submit his life and veracity to the judgment of God. A pile of dry faggots, four feet high, and fourteen long, was erected in the midst of the camp; the flames burnt fiercely to the elevation of thirty cubits; and a narrow path of twelve inches was left for the perilous trial. The unfortunate priest of Marseilles traversed the fire with dexterity and speed; but his thighs and belly were scorched by the intense heat; he expired the next day; and the logic of believing minds will pay some regard to his dying protestations of innocence and truth. Some efforts were made

by the Provincials to substitute a cross, a ring, or a tabernacle, in the place of the holy lance, which soon vanished in contempt and oblivion<sup>100</sup>. Yet the revelation of Antioch is gravely asserted by succeeding historians; and such is the progress of credulity, that miracles, most doubtful on the spot and at the moment, will be received with implicit faith at a convenient distance of time and space.

The prudence or fortune of the Franks had delayed their invasion till the decline of the Turkish empire<sup>101</sup>. Under the manly government of the three first sultans, the kingdoms of Asia were united in peace and justice; and the innumerable armies which they led in person were equal in courage, and superior in discipline, to the Barbarians of the West. But at the time of the crusade, the inheritance of Malek Shaw was disputed by his four sons; their private ambition was insensible of the public danger; and, in the vicissitudes of their fortune, the royal vassals were ignorant, or regardless, of the true object of their allegiance. The twenty-eight emirs, who marched with the standard of Kerboga, were his rivals or enemies: their hasty levies were drawn from the towns and tents of Mesopotamia and Syria; and the Turkish veterans were employed or consumed in the civil wars beyond the Tigris. The caliph of Egypt embraced this opportunity of weakness and discord, to recover his ancient possessions; and his sultan Aphdal besieged Jerusalem and Tyre, expelled

The state of  
the Turks  
and caliphs  
of Egypt.

C H A P.  
LVIII.

the children of Ortok, and restored in Palestine the civil and ecclesiastical authority of the Fatimites<sup>102</sup>. They heard with astonishment of the vast armies of Christians that had passed from Europe to Asia, and rejoiced in the sieges and battles which broke the power of the Turks, the adversaries of their sect and monarchy. But the same Christians were the enemies of the prophet; and from the overthrow of Nice and Antioch, the motive of their enterprise, which was gradually understood, would urge them forwards to the banks of the Jordan, or perhaps of the Nile. An intercourse of epistles and embassies, which rose and fell with the events of war, was maintained between the throne of Cairo and the camp of the Latins; and their adverse pride was the result of ignorance and enthusiasm. The ministers of Egypt declared in an haughty, or insinuated in a milder, tone, that their sovereign, the true and lawful commander of the faithful, had rescued Jerusalem from the Turkish yoke; and that the pilgrims, if they would divide their numbers, and lay aside their arms, should find a safe and hospitable reception at the sepulchre of Jesus. In the belief of their lost condition, the caliph Mostali despised their arms and imprisoned their deputies: the conquest and victory of Antioch prompted him to solicit those formidable champions with gifts of horses and silk robes, of vases, and purses of gold and silver; and in his estimate of their merit or power, the first place was assigned to Bohemond, and the second to Godfrey. In  
either

either fortune, the answer of the crusaders was firm and uniform: they disdained to enquire into the private claims or possessions of the followers of Mahomet: whatsoever was his name or nation, the usurper of Jerusalem was their enemy; and instead of prescribing the mode and terms of their pilgrimage, it was only by a timely surrender of the city and province, their sacred right, that he could deserve their alliance, or deprecate their impending and irresistible attack<sup>101</sup>.

Yet this attack, when they were within the view and reach of their glorious prize, was suspended above ten months after the defeat of Kerboga. The zeal and courage of the crusaders were chilled in the moment of victory: and, instead of marching to improve the consternation, they hastily dispersed to enjoy the luxury, of Syria. The causes of this strange delay may be found in the want of strength and subordination. In the painful and various service of Antioch, the cavalry was annihilated; many thousands of every rank had been lost by famine, sickness, and desertion: the same abuse of plenty had been productive of a third famine; and the alternative of intemperance and distress, had generated a pestilence, which swept away above fifty thousand of the pilgrims. Few were able to command, and none were willing to obey: the domestic feuds, which had been stifled by common fear, were again renewed in acts, or at least in sentiments, of hostility; the fortune of Baldwin and Bohemond excited the envy of

C H A P.

LVIII.

Delay of the Franks.

A. D. 1098, July—

A. D. 1099, May.

C H A P. LVIII. their companions; the bravest knights were enlisted for the defence of their new principalities; and count Raymond exhausted his troops and treasures in an idle expedition into the heart of Syria. The winter was consumed in discord and disorder; a sense of honour and religion was rekindled in the spring; and the private soldiers, less susceptible of ambition and jealousy, awakened with angry clamours the indolence of their chiefs. In the month of May, the relics of this mighty host proceeded from Antioch to Laodicea; about forty thousand Latins, of whom no more than fifteen hundred horse, and twenty thousand foot, were capable of immediate service. Their easy march was continued between mount Libanus and the sea-shore; their wants were liberally supplied by the coasting traders of Genoa and Pisa; and they drew large contributions from the emirs of Tripoli, Tyre, Sidon, Acre, and Cæsarea, who granted a free passage, and promised to follow the example of Jerusalem. From Cæsarea they advanced into the midland country; their clerks recognised the sacred geography of Lydda, Ramla, Emaus, and Bethlem, and as soon as they descried the holy city, the crusaders forgot their toils and claimed their reward<sup>104</sup>.

Their march  
to Jerusalem,  
A. D. 1099,  
May 13—  
June 6,

Siege and  
conquest of  
Jerusalem,  
A. D. 1099,  
June —  
July 15.

Jerusalem has derived some reputation from the number and importance of her memorable sieges. It was not till after a long and obstinate contest, that Babylon and Rome could prevail against the obstinacy of the people, the craggy ground

that might supersede the necessity of fortifications, and the walls and towers that would have fortified the most accessible plain<sup>'''</sup>. These obstacles were diminished in the age of the crusades. The bulwarks had been completely destroyed and imperfectly restored: the Jews, their nation and worship, were for ever banished; but nature is less changeable than man, and the site of Jerusalem, though somewhat softened and somewhat removed, was still strong against the assaults of an enemy. By the experience of a recent siege and a three years possession, the Saracens of Egypt had been taught to discern, and in some degree to remedy, the defects of a place, which religion as well as honour forbade them to resign. Aladin or Istikhar, the caliph's lieutenant, was entrusted with the defence: his policy strove to restrain the native Christians by the dread of their own ruin and that of the holy sepulchre; to animate the Moslems by the assurance of temporal and eternal rewards. His garrison is said to have consisted of forty thousand Turks and Arabians; and if he could muster twenty thousand of the inhabitants, it must be confessed that the besieged were more numerous than the besieging army<sup>'''</sup>. Had the diminished strength and numbers of the Latins allowed them to grasp the whole circumference of four thousand yards (about two English miles and an half<sup>'''</sup>), to what useful purpose should they have descended into the valley of Ben Himmon and torrent of Cedron<sup>'''</sup>, or approached the precipices of the South and East,

CHAP.  
LVIII.

from whence they had nothing either to hope or fear? Their siege was more reasonably directed against the northern and western sides of the city. Godfrey of Bouillon erected his standard on the first swell of mount Calvary: to the left, as far as St. Stephen's gate, the line of attack was continued by Tancred and the two Roberts; and count Raymond established his quarters from the citadel to the foot of mount Sion, which was no longer included within the precincts of the city. On the fifth day, the crusaders made a general assault in the fanatic hope of battering down the walls without engines, and of scaling them without ladders. By the dint of brutal force, they burst the first barrier, but they were driven back with shame and slaughter to the camp: the influence of vision and prophecy was deadened by the too frequent abuse of those pious stratagems; and time and labour were found to be the only means of victory. The time of the siege was indeed fulfilled in forty days, but they were forty days of calamity and anguish. A repetition of the old complaint of famine may be imputed in some degree to the voracious or disorderly appetite of the Franks; but the stony soil of Jerusalem is almost destitute of water; the scanty springs and hasty torrents were dry in the summer season; nor was the thirst of the besiegers relieved, as in the city, by the artificial supply of cisterns and aqueducts. The circumjacent country is equally destitute of trees for the uses of shade or building; but some large beams were disco-

vere  
Sich  
cut  
to t  
Tan  
Gen  
the  
conf  
of t  
louf  
not  
neg  
tow  
besi  
and  
arch  
let  
no  
of  
Jer  
fic  
hu  
Or  
me  
we  
ex  
spe  
ma  
ge  
A  
ve  
m



vered in a cave by the crusaders: a wood near Sichem, the enchanted grove of Tasso<sup>100</sup>, was cut down: the necessary timber was transported to the camp by the vigour and dexterity of Tancred; and the engines were framed by some Genoese artists, who had fortunately landed in the harbour of Jaffa. Two moveable turrets were constructed at the expence, and in the stations, of the duke of Lorraine and the count of Thoulouse, and rolled forwards with devout labour, not to the most accessible, but to the most neglected, parts of the fortification. Raymond's tower was reduced to ashes by the fire of the besieged, but his colleague was more vigilant and successful; the enemies were driven by his archers from the rampart; the draw-bridge was let down; and on a Friday at three in the afternoon, the day and hour of the Passion, Godfrey of Bouillon stood victorious on the walls of Jerusalem. His example was followed on every side by the emulation of valour; and about four hundred and sixty years after the conquest of Omar, the holy city was rescued from the Mahometan yoke. In the pillage of public and private wealth, the adventurers had agreed to respect the exclusive property of the first occupant; and the spoils of the great mosch, seventy lamps and massy vases of gold and silver, rewarded the diligence, and displayed the generosity, of Tancred. A bloody sacrifice was offered by his mistaken votaries to the God of the Christians: resistance might provoke, but neither age nor sex could

CHAP. mollify, their implacable rage: they indulged  
 LVIII. themselves three days in a promiscuous massacre<sup>'''</sup>; and the infection of the dead bodies produced an epidemical disease. After seventy thousand Moslems had been put to the sword, and the harmless Jews had been burnt in their synagogue, they could still reserve a multitude of captives, whom interest or lassitude persuaded them to spare. Of these savage heroes of the cross, Tancred alone betrayed some sentiments of compassion; yet we may praise the more selfish lenity of Raymond, who granted a capitulation and safe conduct to the garrison of the citadel<sup>'''</sup>. The holy sepulchre was now free; and the bloody victors prepared to accomplish their vow. Bareheaded and barefoot, with contrite hearts, and in an humble posture, they ascended the hill of Calvary, amidst the loud anthems of the clergy; kissed the stone which had covered the Saviour of the world; and bedewed with tears of joy and penitence the monument of their redemption. This union of the fiercest and most tender passions has been variously considered by two philosophers; by the one<sup>'''</sup>, as easy and natural; by the other<sup>'''</sup>, as absurd and incredible. Perhaps it is too rigorously applied to the same persons and the same hour: the example of the virtuous Godfrey awakened the piety of his companions; while they cleansed their bodies, they purified their minds; nor shall I believe that the most ardent in slaughter and rapine were the foremost in the procession to the holy sepulchre.

Eight days after this memorable event, which pope Urban did not live to hear, the Latin chiefs proceeded to the election of a king, to guard and govern their conquests in Palestine. Hugh the Great, and Stephen of Chartres, had retired with some loss of reputation, which they strove to regain by a second crusade and an honourable death. Baldwin was established at Edessa, and Bohemond at Antioch, and two Roberts, the duke of Normandy and the count of Flanders, preferred their fair inheritance in the West to a doubtful competition or a barren sceptre. The jealousy and ambition of Raymond were condemned by his own followers, and the free, the just, the unanimous voice of the army, proclaimed Godfrey of Bouillon the first and most worthy of the champions of Christendom. His magnanimity accepted a trust as full of danger as of glory; but in a city where his Saviour had been crowned with thorns, the devout pilgrim rejected the name and ensigns of royalty; and the founder of the kingdom of Jerusalem contented himself with the modest title of Defender and Baron of the Holy Sepulchre. His government of a single year, too short for the public happiness, was interrupted in the first fortnight by a summons to the field, by the approach of the vizir or sultan of Egypt, who had been too slow to prevent, but who was impatient to avenge, the loss of Jerusalem. His total overthrow in the battle of Ascalon sealed the establishment of the Latins in Syria, and signalized the valour of the French

C H A P.

LVIII.

Election and  
reign of  
Godfrey of  
Bouillon.A. D. 1099,  
July 23—A. D. 1100,  
July 18.

C H A P.

LVIII.

Battle of

Ascalon,

A. D 1099,

August 12,

princes, who in this action bade a long farewell to the holy wars. Some glory might be derived from the prodigious inequality of numbers, though I shall not count the myriads of horse and foot on the side of the Fatimites; but, except three thousand Ethiopians or blacks, who were armed with flails or scourges of iron, the Barbarians of the South fled on the first onset, and afforded a pleasing comparison between the active valour of the Turks and the sloth and effeminacy of the natives of Egypt. After suspending before the holy sepulchre the sword and standard of the sultan, the new king (he deserves the title) embraced his departing companions, and could retain only with the gallant Tancred three hundred knights, and two thousand foot soldiers, for the defence of Palestine. His sovereignty was soon attacked by a new enemy, the only one against whom Godfrey was a coward. Adhemar, bishop of Puy, who excelled both in council and action, had been swept away in the last plague of Antioch: the remaining ecclesiastics preserved only the pride and avarice of their character; and their seditious clamours had required that the choice of a bishop should precede that of a king. The revenue and jurisdiction of the lawful patriarch were usurped by the Latin clergy: the exclusion of the Greeks and Syrians was justified by the reproach of heresy or schism<sup>116</sup>; and, under the iron yoke of their deliverers, the Oriental Christians regretted the tolerating government of the Arabian caliphs, Daimbert, archbishop of Pisa,

had long been trained in the secret policy of Rome: he brought a fleet of his countrymen to the succour of the Holy Land, and was installed, without a competitor, the spiritual and temporal head of the church. The new patriarch "" immediately grasped the sceptre which had been acquired by the toil and blood of the victorious pilgrims; and both Godfrey and Bohemond submitted to receive at his hands the investiture of their feudal possessions. Nor was this sufficient; Daimbert claimed the immediate property of Jerusalem and Jaffa: instead of a firm and generous refusal, the hero negotiated with the priest; a quarter of either city was ceded to the church; and the modest bishop was satisfied with an eventual reversion of the rest, on the death of Godfrey without children, or on the future acquisition of a new seat at Cairo or Damascus.

Without this indulgence, the conqueror would have almost been stripped of his infant kingdom, which consisted only of Jerusalem and Jaffa, with about twenty villages and towns of the adjacent country "". Within this narrow verge, the Mahometans were still lodged in some impregnable castles; and the husbandman, the trader, and the pilgrim, were exposed to daily and domestic hostility. By the arms of Godfrey himself, and of the two Baldwins, his brother and cousin, who succeeded to the throne, the Latins breathed with more ease and safety; and at length they equalled, in the extent of their dominions, though not in the millions of their subjects, the ancient

The kingdom of Jerusalem,  
A. D.  
1099—1187.

CHAP.  
LVIII.

princes of Judah and Israel<sup>119</sup>. After the reduction of the maritime cities of Laodicea, Tripoli, Tyre, and Ascalon<sup>120</sup>; which were powerfully assisted by the fleets of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa, and even of Flanders and Norway<sup>121</sup>, the range of sea-coast from Scanderoon to the borders of Egypt was possessed by the Christian pilgrims. If the prince of Antioch disclaimed his supremacy, the counts of Edessa and Tripoli owned themselves the vassals of the king of Jerusalem: the Latins reigned beyond the Euphrates; and the four cities of Hems, Hamah, Damascus, and Aleppo, were the only relics of the Mahometan conquests in Syria<sup>122</sup>. The laws and language, the manners and titles, of the French nation and Latin church, were introduced into these transmarine colonies. According to the feudal jurisprudence, the principal states and subordinate baronies descended in the line of male and female succession<sup>123</sup>; but the children of the first conquerors<sup>124</sup>, a motley and degenerate race, were dissolved by the luxury of the climate; the arrival of new crusaders from Europe, was a doubtful hope and a casual event. The service of the feudal tenures<sup>125</sup> was performed by six hundred and sixty-six knights, who might expect the aid of two hundred more under the banner of the count of Tripoli; and each knight was attended to the field by four squires or archers on horseback<sup>126</sup>. Five thousand and seventy-five *serjeants*, most probably foot-soldiers, were supplied by the churches and cities; and the whole legal militia

of the kingdom could not exceed eleven thousand men, a slender defence against the surrounding myriads of Saracens and Turks<sup>117</sup>. But the firmest bulwark of Jerusalem was founded on the knights of the hospital of St. John<sup>118</sup>, and of the temple of Solomon<sup>119</sup>; on the strange association of a monastic and military life, which fanaticism might suggest, but which policy must approve. The flower of the nobility of Europe aspired to wear the cross, and to profess the vows, of these respectable orders; their spirit and discipline were immortal; and the speedy donation of twenty-eight thousand farms, or manors<sup>120</sup>, enabled them to support a regular force of cavalry and infantry for the defence of Palestine. The austerity of the convent soon evaporated in the exercise of arms: the world was scandalised by the pride, avarice, and corruption of these Christian soldiers; their claims of immunity and jurisdiction disturbed the harmony of the church and state; and the public peace was endangered by their jealous emulation. But in their most dissolute period, the knights of the hospital and temple maintained their fearless and fanatic character: they neglected to live, but they were prepared to die, in the service of Christ; and the spirit of chivalry, the parent and offspring of the crusades, has been transplanted by this institution from the holy sepulchre to the isle of Malta<sup>121</sup>.

The spirit of freedom, which pervades the feudal institutions, was felt in its strongest energy by the volunteers of the cross, who elected for

Assize of Je-  
rusalem,  
A. D.  
1099—1369,

CHAP.  
LVIII.

their chief the most deserving of his peers. Amidst the slaves of Asia, unconscious of the lesson or example, a model of political liberty was introduced: and the laws of the French kingdom are derived from the purest source of equality and justice. Of such laws, the first and indispensable condition is the assent of those, whose obedience they require, and for whose benefit they are designed. No sooner had Godfrey of Bouillon accepted the office of supreme magistrate, than he solicited the public and private advice of the Latin pilgrims, who were the best skilled in the statutes and customs of Europe. From these materials, with the counsel and approbation of the patriarch and barons, of the clergy and laity, Godfrey composed the ASSIZE OF JERUSALEM<sup>112</sup>, a precious monument of feudal jurisprudence. The new code, attested by the seals of the king, the patriarch, and the viscount of Jerusalem, was deposited in the holy sepulchre, enriched with the improvements of succeeding times, and respectfully consulted as often as any doubtful question arose in the tribunals of Palestine. With the kingdom and city, all was lost<sup>113</sup>: the fragments of the written law were preserved by jealous tradition<sup>114</sup> and variable practice till the middle of the thirteenth century: the code was restored by the pen of John d'Ibelin, count of Jassa, one of the principal feudatories<sup>115</sup>; and the final revision was accomplished in the year thirteen hundred and sixty-nine, for the use of the Latin kingdom of Cyprus<sup>116</sup>.



The justice and freedom of the constitution were maintained by two tribunals of unequal dignity, which were instituted by Godfrey of Bouillon after the conquest of Jerusalem. The king, in person, presided in the upper-court, the court of the barons. Of these the four most conspicuous were the prince of Galilee, the lord of Sidon and Casarea, and the counts of Jaffa and Tripoli, who, perhaps with the constable and marshal<sup>137</sup>, were in a special manner the compeers and judges of each other. But all the nobles, who held their lands immediately of the crown, were entitled and bound to attend the king's court; and each baron exercised a similar jurisdiction in the subordinate assemblies of his own feudatories. The connection of lord and vassal was honourable and voluntary: reverence was due to the benefactor, protection to the dependent; but they mutually pledged their faith to each other; and the obligation on either side might be suspended by neglect or dissolved by injury. The cognizance of marriages and testaments was blended with religion, and usurped by the clergy; but the civil and criminal causes of the nobles, the inheritance and tenure of their fiefs, formed the proper occupation of the supreme court. Each member was the judge and guardian both of public and private rights. It was his duty to assert with his tongue and sword the lawful claims of the lord; but if an unjust superior presumed to violate the freedom or property of a vassal, the confederate peers stood forth to maintain his quarrel by word and

C H A P.

LVIII.

Court of  
peers.

CHAP.  
LVIII.

deed. They boldly affirmed his innocence and his wrongs; demanded the restitution of his liberty or his lands; suspended, after a fruitless demand, their own service; rescued their brother from prison; and employed every weapon in his defence, without offering direct violence to the person of their lord, which was ever sacred in their eyes<sup>11</sup>. In their pleadings, replies, and rejoinders, the advocates of the court were subtle and copious; but the use of argument and evidence was often superseded by judicial combat; and the Assize of Jerusalem admits in many cases this barbarous institution, which has been slowly abolished by the laws and manners of Europe.

Law of judicial combats.

The trial by battle was established in all criminal cases, which affected the life, or limb, or honour, of any person; and in all civil transactions, of or above the value of one mark of silver. It appears, that in criminal cases the combat was the privilege of the accuser, who, except in a charge of treason, avenged his personal injury, or the death of those persons whom he had a right to represent; but wherever, from the nature of the charge, testimony could be obtained, it was necessary for him to produce witnesses of the fact. In civil cases, the combat was not allowed as the means of establishing the claim of the demandant; but he was obliged to produce witnesses who had, or assumed to have, knowledge of the fact. The combat was then the privilege of the defendant; because he charged the witness with an attempt by perjury to take away

his right. He came therefore to be in the same situation as the appellant in criminal cases. It was not then as a mode of proof that the combat was received, nor as making negative evidence (according to the supposition of Montequieu ""); but in every case the right to offer battle was founded on the right to pursue by arms the redress of an injury; and the judicial combat was fought on the same principle, and with the same spirit, as a private duel. Champions were only allowed to women, and to men maimed or past the age of sixty. The consequence of a defeat was death to the person accused, or to the champion or witness, as well as to the accuser himself; but in civil cases, the demandant was punished with infamy and the loss of his suit, while his witness and champion suffered an ignominious death. In many cases it was in the option of the judge to award or to refuse the combat: but two are specified, in which it was the inevitable result of the challenge; if a faithful vassal gave the lie to his compeer, who unjustly claimed any portion of their lord's demesnes; or if an unsuccessful suitor presumed to impeach the judgment and veracity of the court. He might impeach them, but the terms were severe and perilous: in the same day he successively fought *all* the members of the tribunal, even those who had been absent: a single defeat was followed by death and infamy: and where none could hope for victory, it is highly probable that none would adventure the trial. In the Assize of Jerusalem,

- C H A P.** the legal subtlety of the count of Jaffa is more  
**LVIII.** laudably employed to elude, than to facilitate,  
 the judicial combat, which he derives from a  
 principle of honour rather than of superstition<sup>100</sup>.
- Court of** Among the causes which enfranchised the ple-  
**burgesses.** beians from the yoke of feudal tyranny, the insti-  
 tution of cities and corporations is one of the most  
 powerful; and if those of Palestine are coeval with  
 the first crusade, they may be ranked with the most  
 ancient of the Latin world. Many of the pilgrims  
 had escaped from their lords under the banner of the  
 cross; and it was the policy of the French princes  
 to tempt their stay by the assurance of the rights  
 and privileges of freemen. It is expressly declared  
 in the Assize of Jerusalem, that after instituting,  
 for his knights and barons, the court of peers,  
 in which he presided himself, Godfrey of Bouillon  
 established a second tribunal, in which his person  
 was represented by his viscount. The jurisdiction  
 of this inferior court extended over the burgesses  
 of the kingdom; and it was composed of a select  
 number of the most discreet and worthy citizens;  
 who were sworn to judge, according to the laws,  
 of the actions and fortunes of their equals<sup>101</sup>. In  
 the conquest and settlement of new cities, the  
 example of Jerusalem was imitated by the kings  
 and their great vassals; and above thirty similar  
 corporations were founded before the loss of the  
 Holy Land. Another class of subjects, the Sy-  
 rians<sup>102</sup>, or Oriental Christians, were oppressed  
 by the zeal of the clergy, and protected by the  
 toleration of the state. Godfrey listened to their  
 reasonable

reasonable prayer, that they might be judged by their own national laws. A third court was instituted for their use, of limited and domestic jurisdiction: the sworn members were Syrians, in blood, language, and religion; but the office of the president (in Arabic, of the *rais*) was sometimes exercised by the viscount of the city. At an immeasurable distance below the *nobles*, the *burghesses*, and the *strangers*, the Assize of Jerusalem condescends to mention the *villains* and *slaves*, the peasants of the land and the captives of war, who were almost equally considered as the objects of property. The relief or protection of these unhappy men was not esteemed worthy of the care of the legislator; but he diligently provides for the recovery, though not indeed for the punishment, of the fugitives. Like hounds, or hawks, who had strayed from the lawful owner, they might be lost and claimed; the slave and falcon were of the same value; but three slaves, or twelve oxen, were accumulated to equal the price of the war-horse; and a sum of three hundred pieces of gold was fixed, in the age of chivalry, as the equivalent of the more noble animal<sup>111</sup>.

C H A P.

LVIII.

Villains and  
slaves.

## C H A P. LIX.

*Preservation of the Greek Empire. — Numbers, Passage, and Event, of the Second and Third Crusades. — St. Bernard. — Reign of Saladin in Egypt and Syria. — His Conquest of Jerusalem. — Naval Crusades. — Richard the First of England. — Pope Innocent the Third; and the Fourth and Fifth Crusades. — The Emperor Frederic the Second. — Louis the Ninth of France; and the two last Crusades. — Expulsion of the Latins, or Franks by the Mamalukes.*

C H A P.

LIX.

Success of  
Alexius.

A. D.

1097—1118.

**I**N a style less grave than that of history, I should perhaps compare the emperor Alexius to the jackall, who is said to follow the steps, and to devour the leavings, of the lion. Whatever had been his fears and toils in the passage of the first crusade, they were amply recompensed by the subsequent benefits which he derived from the exploits of the Franks. His dexterity and vigilance secured their first conquest of Nice; and from this threatening station the Turks were compelled to evacuate the neighbourhood of Constantinople. While the crusaders, with blind valour, advanced into the midland countries of Asia, the crafty Greek improved the favourable occasion when the emirs of the sea-coast were

recalled to the standard of the sultan. The Turks were driven from the isles of Rhodes and Chios: the cities of Ephesus and Smyrna, of Sardes, Philadelphia, and Laodicea, were restored to the empire, which Alexius enlarged from the Hellespont to the banks of the Mæander, and the rocky shores of Pamphylia. The churches resumed their splendour; the towns were rebuilt and fortified; and the desert country was peopled with colonies of Christians, who were gently removed from the more distant and dangerous frontier. In these paternal cares, we may forgive Alexius, if he forgot the deliverance of the holy sepulchre; but, by the Latins, he was stigmatized with the foul reproach of treason and desertion. They had sworn fidelity and obedience to his throne; but *he* had promised to assist their enterprise in person, or, at least, with his troops and treasures: his base retreat dissolved their obligations; and the sword, which had been the instrument of their victory, was the pledge and title of their just independence. It does not appear that the emperor attempted to revive his obsolete claims over the kingdom of Jerusalem<sup>a</sup>; but the borders of Cilicia and Syria were more recent in his possession, and more accessible to his arms. The great army of the crusaders was annihilated or dispersed; the principality of Antioch was left without a head, by the surprise and captivity of Bohemond: his ransom had oppressed him with a heavy debt; and his Norman followers were insufficient to repel the hostilities of the Greeks

CHAP. and Turks. In this distress, Bohemond embraced  
 LIX. a magnanimous resolution, of leaving the defence  
 of Antioch to his kinsman, the faithful Tancred;  
 of arming the West against the Byzantine empire,  
 and of executing the design which he inherited  
 from the lessons and example of his father Guiscard.  
 His embarkation was clandestine: and if we may  
 credit a tale of the princess Anne, he passed the  
 hostile sea, closely secreted in a coffin<sup>1</sup>. But his  
 reception in France was dignified by the public  
 applause, and his marriage with the king's  
 daughter: his return was glorious, since the  
 bravest spirits of the age enlisted under his veteran  
 command; and he repassed the Adriatic at the  
 head of five thousand horse and forty thousand  
 foot, assembled from the most remote climates  
 of Europe<sup>2</sup>. The strength of Durazzo, and  
 prudence of Alexius, the progress of famine,  
 and approach of Winter, eluded his ambitious  
 hopes; and the venal confederates were seduced  
 from his standard. A treaty of peace<sup>3</sup> suspended  
 the fears of the Greeks; and they were finally  
 delivered by the death of an adversary, whom  
 neither oaths could bind, nor dangers could appal,  
 nor prosperity could satiate. His children suc-  
 ceeded to the principality of Antioch; but the  
 boundaries were strictly defined, the homage  
 was clearly stipulated; and the cities of Tarsus and  
 Malmistra were restored to the Byzantine emperors.  
 Of the coast of Anatolia, they possessed the entire  
 circuit from Trebizond to the Syrian gates. The  
 Seljukian dynasty of Roum<sup>4</sup> was separated on all



sides from the sea and their Musulman brethren; the power of the sultans was shaken by the victories, and even the defeats of the Franks; and after the loss of Nice, they removed their throne to Cogni or Iconium, an obscure and inland town above three hundred miles from Constantinople. Instead of trembling for their capital, the Comnenian princes waged an offensive war against the Turks, and the first crusade prevented the fall of the declining empire.

In the twelfth century, three great emigrations marched by land from the West to the relief of Palestine. The soldiers and pilgrims of Lombardy, France, and Germany, were excited by the example and success of the first crusade. Forty-eight years after the deliverance of the holy sepulchre, the emperor, and the French king, Conrad the third, and Louis the seventh undertook the second crusade to support the falling fortunes of the Latins. A grand division of the third crusade was led by the emperor Frederic Barbarossa, who sympathised with his brothers of France and England in the common loss of Jerusalem. These three expeditions may be compared in their resemblance of the greatness of numbers, their passage through the Greek empire, and the nature and event of their Turkish warfare, and a brief parallel may save the repetition of a tedious narrative. However splendid it may seem, a regular story of the crusades would exhibit the perpetual return of the same causes and effects; and the frequent attempts for the defence or

CHAP.  
LIX.

Expeditions  
by land:  
the first cru-  
sade,  
A. D. 1101.  
the second, of  
Conrad III.  
and Louis  
VII.  
A. D. 1147.  
the third, of  
Frederic I.  
A. D. 1189.

C H A P.

LIX.

Their num-  
bers.

recovery of the Holy Land, would appear so many faint and unsuccessful copies of the original.

I. Of the swarms that so closely trod in the footsteps of the first pilgrims, the chiefs were equal in rank, though unequal in fame and merit, to Godfrey of Bouillon and his fellow adventurers. At their head were displayed the banners of the dukes of Burgundy, Bavaria, and Aquitain: the first a descendant of Hugh Capet, the second a father of the Brunswick line: the archbishop of Milan, a temporal prince, transported, for the benefit of the Turks, the treasures and ornaments of his church and palace; and the veteran crusaders, Hugh the Great, and Stephen of Chartres, returned to consummate their unfinished vow. The huge and disorderly bodies of their followers moved forwards in two columns; and if the first consisted of two hundred and sixty thousand persons, the second might possibly amount to sixty thousand horse, and one hundred thousand foot<sup>11</sup>. The armies of the second crusade might have claimed the conquest of Asia: the nobles of France and Germany were animated by the presence of their sovereigns; and both the rank and personal characters of Conrad and Louis, gave a dignity to their cause, and a discipline to their force, which might be vainly expected from the feudatory chiefs. The cavalry of the emperor, and that of the king, was each composed of seventy thousand knights and their immediate attendants in the field<sup>12</sup>; and if the light-armed troops, the peasant infantry, the women and children, the

priests and monks, be rigorously excluded, the full account will scarcely be satisfied with four hundred thousand souls. The West, from Rome to Britain, was called into action; the kings of Poland and Bohemia obeyed the summons of Conrad; and it is affirmed by the Greeks and Latins, that in the passage of a streight or river, the Byzantine agents; after a tale of nine hundred thousand, desisted from the endless and formidable computation<sup>11</sup>. In the third crusade, as the French and English preferred the navigation of the Mediterranean, the host of Frederic Barbarossa was less numerous. Fifteen thousand knights, and as many squires, were the flower of the German chivalry: sixty thousand horse, and one hundred thousand foot, were mustered by the emperor in the plains of Hungary; and after such repetitions we shall no longer be startled at the six hundred thousand pilgrims, which credulity has ascribed to this last emigration<sup>12</sup>. Such extravagant reckonings prove only the astonishment of contemporaries; but their astonishment most strongly bears testimony to the existence of an enormous though indefinite multitude. The Greeks might applaud their superior knowledge of the arts and stratagems of war, but they confessed the strength and courage of the French cavalry and the infantry of the Germans<sup>13</sup>; and the strangers are described as an iron race, of gigantic stature, who darted fire from their eyes, and spit blood like water on the ground. Under the banners of Conrad, a troop of females rode in the attitude and armour of men;

CHAP. and the chief of these Amazons, from her gilt  
LIX: spurs and buskins, obtained the epithet of the  
Golden-footed Dame.

Passage  
through the  
Greek em-  
pire.

II. The numbers and character of the strangers was an object of terror to the effeminate Greeks, and the sentiment of fear is nearly allied to that of hatred. This aversion was suspended or softened by the apprehension of the Turkish power; and the invectives of the Latins will not bias our more candid belief, that the emperor Alexius dissimulated their insolence, eluded their hostilities, counselled their rashness, and opened to their ardour the road of pilgrimage and conquest. But when the Turks had been driven from Nice and the sea-coast, when the Byzantine princes no longer dreaded the distant Sultans of Cogni, they felt with purer indignation the free and frequent passage of the western Barbarians, who violated the majesty, and endangered the safety, of the empire. The second and third crusades were undertaken under the reign of Manuel Comnenus and Isaac Angelus. Of the former, the passions were always impetuous, and often malevolent; and the natural union of a cowardly and a mischievous temper was exemplified in the latter, who, without merit or mercy, could punish a tyrant, and occupy his throne. It was secretly, and perhaps tacitly, resolved by the prince and people to destroy, or at least to discourage, the pilgrims, by every species of injury and oppression; and their want of prudence and discipline continually afforded the pretence or the

opportunity. The Western monarchs had stipulated a safe passage and fair market in the country of their Christian brethren; the treaty had been ratified by oaths and hostages; and the poorest foldier of Frederic's army was furnished with three marks of silver to defray his expences on the road. But every engagement was violated by treachery and injustice; and the complaints of the Latins are attested by the honest confession of a Greek historian, who has dared to prefer truth to his country ". Instead of an hospitable reception, the gates of the cities, both in Europe and Asia, were closely barred against the crusaders; and the scanty pittance of food was let down in baskets from the walls. Experience or foresight might excuse this timid jealousy; but the common duties of humanity prohibited the mixture of chalk, or other poisonous ingredients, in the bread; and should Manuel be acquitted of any foul connivance, he is guilty of coining base money for the purpose of trading with the pilgrims. In every step of their march they were stopped or misled: the governors had private orders to fortify the passes and break down the bridges against them: the stragglers were pillaged and murdered; the soldiers and horses were pierced in the woods by arrows from an invisible hand; the sick were burnt in their beds; and the dead bodies were hung on gibbets along the highways. These injuries exasperated the champions of the cross, who were not endowed with evangelical patience; and the Byzantine princes, who had

CHAP. LIX. provoked the unequal conflict, promoted the embarkation and march of these formidable guests: On the verge of the Turkish frontier Barbarossa spared the guilty Philadelphia", rewarded the hospitable Laodicea, and deplored the hard necessity that had stained his sword with any drops of Christian blood. In their intercourse with the monarchs of Germany and France, the pride of the Greeks was exposed to an anxious trial. They might boast that on the first interview the seat of Louis was a low stool, beside the throne of Manuel"; but no sooner had the French king transported his army beyond the Bosphorus, than he refused the offer of a second conference, unless his brother would meet him on equal terms, either on the sea or land. With Conrad and Frederic, the ceremonial was still nicer and more difficult: like the successors of Constantine, they styled themselves emperors of the Romans"; and firmly maintained the purity of their title and dignity. The first of these representatives of Charlemagne would only converse with Manuel on horseback in the open field; the second, by passing the Hellespont rather than the Bosphorus, declined the view of Constantinople and its sovereign. An emperor, who had been crowned at Rome, was reduced in the Greek epistles to the humble appellation of *Rex*, or prince of the Alemanni; and the vain and feeble Angelus affected to be ignorant of the name of one of the greatest men and monarchs of the age. While they viewed with hatred and suspicion the Latin

pilgrims, the Greek emperors maintained a strict, though secret, alliance with the Turks and Saracens. Isaac Angelus complained, that by his friendship for the great Saladin he had incurred the enmity of the Franks; and a mosque was founded at Constantinople for the public exercise of the religion of Mahomet <sup>20</sup>.

C H A P.

LIX.

III. The swarms that followed the first crusade, were destroyed in Anatolia by famine, pestilence, and the Turkish arrows: and the princes only escaped with some squadrons of horse to accomplish their lamentable pilgrimage. A just opinion may be formed of their knowledge and humanity; of their knowledge from the design of subduing Persia and Chorasan in their way to Jerusalem; of their humanity from the massacre of the Christian people, a friendly city, who came out to meet them with palms and crosses in their hands. The arms of Conrad and Louis were less cruel and imprudent; but the event of the second crusade was still more ruinous to Christendom; and the Greek Manuel is accused by his own subjects of giving seasonable intelligence to the sultan, and treacherous guides to the Latin princes. Instead of crushing the common foe, by a double attack at the same time but on different sides, the Germans were urged by emulation, and the French were retarded by jealousy. Louis had scarcely passed the Bosphorus when he was met by the returning emperor, who had lost the greatest part of his army in a glorious, but unsuccessful, action on the banks of the Mæander. The contrast of

Turkish warfare.

CHAP. the pomp of his rival hastened the retreat of Con-  
 LIX. rad : the desertion of his independent vassals reduced him to his hereditary troops; and he borrowed some Greek vessels to execute by sea the pilgrimage of Palestine. Without studying the lessons of experience, or the nature of the war, the king of France advanced through the same country to a similar fate. The vanguard, which bore the royal banner and the oriflamme of St. Denis", had doubled their march with rash and inconsiderate speed; and the rear which the king commanded in person no longer found their companions in the evening camp. In darkness and disorder they were encompassed, assaulted, and overwhelmed, by the innumerable host of Turks, who in the art of war were superior to the Christians of the twelfth century. Louis, who climbed a tree in the general discomfiture, was saved by his own valour and the ignorance of his adversaries; and with the dawn of day he escaped alive, but almost alone to the camp of the vanguard. But instead of pursuing his expedition by land, he was rejoiced to shelter the relics of his army in the friendly sea-port of Satalia. From thence he embarked for Antioch; but so penurious was the supply of Greek vessels, that they could only afford room for his knights and nobles; and the plebeian crowd of infantry was left to perish at the foot of the Pamphylian hills. The emperor and the king embraced and wept at Jerusalem; their martial trains, the remnant of mighty armies, were joined to the Christian



powers of Syria, and a fruitless siege of Damascus was the final effort of the second crusade. Conrad and Louis embarked for Europe with the personal fame of piety and courage; but the Orientals had braved these potent monarchs of the Franks, with whose names and military forces they had been so often threatened". Perhaps they had still more to fear from the veteran genius of Frederic the first, who in his youth had served in Asia under his uncle Conrad. Forty campaigns in Germany and Italy had taught Barbarossa to command; and his soldiers, even the princes of the empire, were accustomed under his reign to obey. As soon as he lost sight of Philadelphia and Laodicea, the last cities of the Greek frontier, he plunged into the salt and barren desert, a land (says the historian) of horror and tribulation". During twenty days, every step of his fainting and sickly march was besieged by the innumerable hords of Turk-mans", whose numbers and fury seemed after each defeat to multiply and inflame. The emperor continued to struggle and to suffer; and such was the measure of his calamities, that when he reached the gates of Iconium, no more than one thousand knights were able to serve on horseback. By a sudden and resolute assault, he defeated the guards, and stormed the capital of the sultan", who humbly sued for pardon and peace. The road was now open, and Frederic advanced in a career of triumph, till he was unfortunately drowned in a petty torrent of Cilicia". The remainder of his Germans was consumed by sickness and

CHAP. desertion; and the emperor's son expired with the  
 LIX. greatest part of his Swabian vassals at the siege of Acre. Among the Latin heroes, Godfrey of Bouillon and Frederic Barbarossa could alone achieve the passage of the Lesser Asia; yet even their success was a warning: and in the last and most experienced age of the crusades, every nation preferred the sea to the toils and perils of an inland expedition<sup>27</sup>.

Obstinacy of  
 the enthusi-  
 asm of the  
 crusades.

The enthusiasm of the first crusade is a natural and simple event, while hope was fresh, danger untried, and enterprise congenial to the spirit of the times. But the obstinate perseverance of Europe may indeed excite our pity and admiration; that no instruction should have been drawn from constant and adverse experience; that the same confidence should have repeatedly grown from the same failures; that six succeeding generations should have rushed headlong down the precipice that was open before them; and that men of every condition should have staked their public and private fortunes, on the desperate adventure of possessing or recovering a tomb-stone two thousand miles from their country. In a period of two centuries after the council of Clermont, each spring and summer produced a new emigration of pilgrim warriors for the defence of the Holy Land; but the seven great armaments or crusades were excited by some impending or recent calamity: the nations were moved by the authority of their pontiffs, and the example of their kings: their zeal was kindled, and their reason was silenced, by

the voice of their holy orators; and among these, Bernard<sup>22</sup>, the monk, or the saint, may claim the most honourable place. About eight years before the first conquest of Jerusalem, he was born of a noble family in Burgundy; at the age of three-and-twenty, he buried himself in the monastery of Cîteaux, then in the primitive fervour of the institution; at the end of two years he led forth her third colony, or daughter, to the valley of Clairvaux<sup>23</sup> in Champagne; and was content, till the hour of his death, with the humble station of Abbot of his own community. A philosophic age has abolished, with too liberal and indiscriminate disdain, the honours of these spiritual heroes. The meanest among them are distinguished by some energies of the mind; they were at least superior to their votaries and disciples; and, in the race of superstition, they attained the prize for which such numbers contended. In speech, in writing, in action, Bernard stood high above his rivals and contemporaries; his compositions are not devoid of wit and eloquence; and he seems to have preserved as much reason and humanity as may be reconciled with the character of a saint. In a secular life, he would have shared the seventh part of a private inheritance; by a vow of poverty and penance, by closing his eyes against the visible world<sup>24</sup>, by the refusal of all ecclesiastical dignities, the abbot of Clairvaux became the oracle of Europe, and the founder of one hundred and sixty convents. Princes and pontiffs trembled at the freedom of his apostolical

C H A P.

LIX.

Character  
and mission of  
St Bernard,  
A. D.  
1091—1153.

C H A P. censures : France , England , and Milan , consulted  
 LIX. and obeyed his judgment in a schism of the church :  
 the debt was repaid by the gratitude of Innocent  
 the second ; and his successor Eugenius the third  
 was the friend and disciple of the holy Bernard.  
 It was in the proclamation of the second crusade  
 that he shone as the missionary and prophet of  
 God , who called the nations to the defence of  
 his holy sepulchre". At the parliament of Vezelay  
 he spoke before the king ; and Louis the seventh,  
 with his nobles , received their crosses from his  
 hand. The abbot of Clairvaux then marched to  
 the less easy conquest of the emperor Conrad : a  
 phlegmatic people , ignorant of his language , was  
 transported by the pathetic vehemence of his tone  
 and gestures ; and his progress , from Constance to  
 Cologne , was the triumph of eloquence and zeal.  
 Bernard applauds his own success in the depopu-  
 lation of Europe ; affirms that cities and castles  
 were emptied of their inhabitants ; and computes ,  
 that only one man was left behind for the conso-  
 lation of seven widows". The blind fanatics were  
 desirous of electing him for their general ; but the  
 example of the hermit Peter was before his eyes ;  
 and while he assured the Crusaders of the divine  
 favour , he prudently declined a military command ,  
 in which failure and victory would have been  
 almost equally disgraceful to his character". Yet ,  
 after the calamitous event , the abbot of Clairvaux  
 was loudly accused as a false prophet , the author  
 of the public and private mourning ; his enemies  
 exulted , his friends blushed , and his apology

was

was slow and unsatisfactory. He justifies his obedience to the commands of the pope; expatiates on the mysterious ways of providence; imputes the misfortunes of the pilgrims to their own sins; and modestly insinuates, that his mission had been approved by signs and wonders". Had the fact been certain, the argument would be decisive; and his faithful disciples, who enumerate twenty or thirty miracles in a day, appeal to the public assemblies of France and Germany, in which they were performed". At the present hour, such prodigies will not obtain credit beyond the precincts of Clairvaux; but in the preternatural cures of the blind, the lame, and the sick, who were presented to the man of God, it is impossible for us to ascertain the separate shares of accident, of fancy, of imposture, and of fiction.

Progress of  
the Maho-  
metans.

Omnipotence itself cannot escape the murmurs of its discordant votaries; since the same dispensation which was applauded as a deliverance in Europe, was deplored, and perhaps arraigned, as a calamity in Asia. After the loss of Jerusalem, the Syrian fugitives diffused their consternation and sorrow: Bagdad mourned in the dust; the cadhi Zeineddin of Damascus tore his beard in the caliph's presence; and the whole divan shed tears at his melancholy tale". But the commanders of the faithful could only weep; they were themselves captives in the hands of the Turks: some temporal power was restored to the last age of the Abbassides; but their humble ambition was confined to Bagdad and the adjacent

CHAP. province. Their tyrants, the Seljukian sultans,  
LIX. had followed the common law of the Asiatic dynasties, the unceasing round of valour, greatness, discord, degeneracy, and decay: their spirit and power were unequal to the defence of religion; and, in his distant realm of Persia, the Christians were strangers to the name and the arms of Sangiar, the last hero of his race".

The Atabeks  
of Syria.

While the sultans were involved in the silken web of the haram, the pious task was undertaken by their slaves, the Atabeks"; a Turkish name, which, like the Byzantine patricians, may be translated by Father of the Prince. Ascanfar, a valiant Turk, had been the favourite of Malek Shaw, from whom he received the privilege of standing on the right-hand of the throne; but, in the civil wars that ensued on the monarch's death, he lost his head and the government of Aleppo. His domestic emirs persevered in their attachment to his son Zenghi, who proved his first arms against the Franks in the defeat of Antioch: thirty campaigns in the service of the caliph and sultan established his military fame; and he was invested with the command of Mosul, as the only champion that could avenge the cause of the prophet. The public hope was not disappointed: after a siege of twenty-five days, he stormed the city of Edessa, and recovered from the Franks their conquests beyond the Euphrates": the martial tribes of Curdistan were subdued by the independent sovereign of Mosul and Aleppo: his soldiers were taught to behold the camp as their only country; they trusted to

Zenghi,  
A. D.  
1127—1145.

his liberality for their rewards; and their absent families were protected by the vigilance of Zenghi. At the head of these veterans, his son Noured-din gradually united the Mahometan powers; added the kingdom of Damascus to that of Aleppo, and waged a long and successful war against the Christians of Syria; he spread his ample reign from the Tigris to the Nile, and the Abbassides rewarded their faithful servant with all the titles and prerogatives of royalty. The Latins themselves were compelled to own the wisdom and courage, and even the justice and piety of this implacable adversary. In his life and government, the holy warrior revived the zeal and simplicity of the first caliphs. Gold and silk were banished from his palace; the use of wine from his dominions; the public revenue was scrupulously applied to the public service; and the frugal household of Noured-din was maintained from his legitimate share of the spoil which he vested in the purchase of a private estate. His favourite Sultana sighed for some female object of expence. "Alas," replied the king, "I fear God, and am no more than the treasurer of the Moslems. Their property I cannot alienate; but I still possess three shops in the city of Hems: these you may take; and these alone can I bestow." His chamber of justice was the terror of the great and the refuge of the poor. Some years after the sultan's death, an oppressed subject called aloud in the streets of Damascus, "O Noured-din, Noured-din, where

C H A P.  
LIX.

Noured-din,  
A. D.  
1145 — 1174.

C H A P. " art thou now? Arise, arise, to pity and pro-  
 LIX " tect us!" A tumult was apprehended, and  
 a living tyrant blushed or trembled at the name  
 of a departed monarch.

Conquest of  
 Egypt by the  
 Turks,

A. D.

1163—1169.

By the arms of the Turks and Franks, the Fatimites had been deprived of Syria. In Egypt, the decay of their character and influence was still more essential. Yet they were still revered as the descendants and successors of the prophet; they maintained their invisible state in the palace of Cairo; and their person was seldom violated by the profane eyes of subjects or strangers. The "Latin ambassadors" have described their own introduction through a series of gloomy passages, and glittering porticoes: the scene was enlivened by the warbling of birds and the murmur of fountains: it was enriched by a display of rich furniture, and rare animals; of the Imperial treasures, something was shewn, and much was supposed; and the long order of unfolding doors was guarded by black soldiers and domestic eunuchs. The sanctuary of the presence chamber was veiled with a curtain; and the vizir, who conducted the ambassadors, laid aside his scymetar, and prostrated himself three times on the ground; the veil was then removed; and they beheld the commander of the faithful, who signified his pleasure to the first slave of the throne. But this slave was his master: the vizirs or sultans had usurped the supreme administration of Egypt; the claims of the rival candidates were decided by arms; and the name of the most



worthy, of the strongest, was inserted in the royal patent of command. The factions of Dargham and Shawer alternately expelled each other from the capital and country; and the weaker side implored the dangerous protection of the sultan of Damascus or the king of Jerusalem, the perpetual enemies of the sect and monarchy of the Fatimites. By his arms and religion, the Turk was most formidable; but the Frank, in an easy direct march, could advance from Gaza to the Nile; while the intermediate situation of his realm compelled the troops of Nouredin to wheel round the skirts of Arabia, a long and painful circuit, which exposed them to thirst, fatigue, and the burning winds of the desert. The secret zeal and ambition of the Turkish prince aspired to reign in Egypt under the name of the Abbassides; but the restoration of the suppliant Shawer was the ostensible motive of the first expedition; and the success was entrusted to the emir Shiracouh, a valiant and veteran commander. Dargham was oppressed and slain; but the ingratitude, the jealousy, the just apprehensions, of his more fortunate rival; soon provoked him to invite the king of Jerusalem to deliver Egypt from his insolent benefactors. To this union, the forces of Shiracouh were unequal; he relinquished the premature conquest; and the evacuation of Belbeis or Pelusium was the condition of his safe retreat. As the Turks defiled before the enemy, and their general closed the rear, with a vigilant eye, and a battle-axe

CHAP. in his hand, a Frank presumed to ask him if he  
 LIX. were not afraid of an attack? "It is doubtless  
 "in your power to begin the attack," replied  
 the intrepid emir; "but rest assured, that not  
 "one of my soldiers will go to paradise till he  
 "has sent an infidel to hell." His report of the  
 riches of the land, the effeminacy of the natives,  
 and the disorders of the government, revived  
 the hopes of Nouredin; the caliph of Bagdad  
 applauded the pious design; and Shiracouh de-  
 scended into Egypt a second time with twelve  
 thousand Turks and eleven thousand Arabs. Yet  
 his forces were still inferior to the confederate  
 armies of the Franks and Saracens; and I can  
 discern an unusual degree of military art, in his  
 passage of the Nile, his retreat into Thebais, his  
 masterly evolutions in the battle of Babain, the  
 surprise of Alexandria, and his marches and  
 counter-marches in the flats and valley of Egypt,  
 from the tropic to the sea. His conduct was  
 seconded by the courage of his troops, and on  
 the eve of action a Mamaluke "exclaimed, "If  
 "we cannot wrest Egypt from the Christian  
 "dogs, why do we not renounce the honours  
 "and rewards of the sultan, and retire to labour  
 "with the peasants, or to spin with the females  
 "of the haram?" Yet, after all his efforts in  
 the field", after the obstinate defence of Alex-  
 andria "by his nephew Saladin, an honourable  
 capitulation and retreat concluded the second  
 enterprise of Shiracouh; and Nouredin reserved  
 his abilities for a third and more propitious

occasion. It was soon offered by the ambition and avarice of Amalric or Amaury, king of Jerusalem, who had imbibed the pernicious maxim, that no faith should be kept with the enemies of God. A religious warrior, the great master of the hospital, encouraged him to proceed, the emperor of Constantinople, either gave, or promised, a fleet to act with the armies of Syria; and the perfidious Christian, unsatisfied with spoil and subsidy, aspired to the conquest of Egypt. In this emergency, the Moslems turned their eyes towards the sultan of Damascus; the vizir, whom danger encompassed on all sides, yielded to their unanimous wishes, and Nouredin seemed to be tempted by the fair offer of one third of the revenue of the kingdom. The Franks were already at the gates of Cairo; but the suburbs, the old city, were burnt on their approach; they were deceived by an insidious negotiation; and their vessels were unable to surmount the barriers of the Nile. They prudently declined a contest with the Turks, in the midst of an hostile country; and Amaury retired into Palestine, with the shame and reproach that always adhere to unsuccessful injustice. After this deliverance, Shiracouh was invested with a robe of honour, which he soon stained with the blood of the unfortunate Shower. For a while, the Turkish emirs condescended to hold the office of vizir; but this foreign conquest precipitated the fall of the Fatimites themselves; and the bloodless change was accomplished by a message and

CHAP.  
LIX.

End of the  
Fatimite ca-  
liphs,  
A. D. 1171.

a word. The caliphs had been degraded by their own weakness and the tyranny of the vizirs: their subjects blushed, when the descendant and successor of the prophet presented his naked hand to the rude gripe of a Latin ambassador; they wept when he sent the hair of his women, a sad emblem of their grief and terror, to excite the pity of the sultan of Damascus. By the command of Nouredin, and the sentence of the doctors, the holy names of Abubeker, Omar, and Othman, were solemnly restored: the caliph Mosthadi, of Bagdad, was acknowledged in the public prayers as the true commander of the faithful; and the green livery of the sons of Ali was exchanged for the black colour of the Abbassides. The last of his race, the caliph Adhed, who survived only ten days, expired in happy ignorance of his fate: his treasures secured the loyalty of the soldiers and silenced the murmurs of the sectaries; and in all subsequent revolutions, Egypt has never departed from the orthodox tradition of the Moslems<sup>41</sup>.

Reign and  
character of  
Saladin,  
A. D.  
1171—1193.

The hilly country beyond the Tigris is occupied by the pastoral tribes of the Curds<sup>42</sup>: a people hardy, strong, savage, impatient of the yoke, addicted to rapine, and tenacious of the government of their national chiefs. The resemblance of name, situation, and manners, seem to identify them with the Carduchians of the Greeks<sup>43</sup>; and they still defend against the Ottoman Porte the antique freedom which they asserted against the successors of Cyrus. Poverty and ambition prompted

them to embrace the profession of mercenary soldiers: the service of his father and uncle prepared the reign of the great Saladin "; and the son of Job or Ayub, a simple Curd, magnanimously smiled at his pedigree, which flattery deduced from the Arabian caliphs ". So unconscious was Nouredin of the impending ruin of his house, that he constrained the reluctant youth to follow his uncle Shiracouh into Egypt: his military character was established by the defence of Alexandria; and if we may believe the Latins, he solicited and obtained from the Christian general the *profane* honours of knighthood ". On the death of Shiracouh, the office of grand vizir was bestowed on Saladin, as the youngest and least powerful of the emirs; but with the advice of his father, whom he invited to Cairo, his genius obtained the ascendant over his equals, and attached the army to his person and interest. While Nouredin lived, these ambitious Curds were the most humble of his slaves; and the indiscreet murmurs of the divan were silenced by the prudent Ayub, who loudly protested that at the command of the sultan he himself would lead his son in chains to the foot of the throne. "Such language," he added in private, "was prudent and proper in an assembly of your rivals; but we are now above fear and obedience; and the threats of Nouredin shall not extort the tribute of a sugar-cane." His seasonable death relieved them from the odious and doubtful conflict: his son, a minor of eleven years of age,

C H A P.

LIX.

was left for a while to the emirs of Damascus; and the new lord of Egypt was decorated by the caliph with every title " that could sanctify his usurpation in the eyes of the people. Nor was Saladin long content with the possession of Egypt; he despoiled the Christians of Jerusalem, and the Atabeks of Damascus, Aleppo, and Diarbekir: Mecca and Medina acknowledged him for their temporal protector: his brother subdued the distant regions of Yemen, or the happy Arabia; and at the hour of his death, his empire was spread from the African Tripoli to the Tigris, and from the Indian ocean to the mountains of Armenia. In the judgment of his character, the reproaches of treason and ingratitude strike forcibly on *our* minds, impressed, as they are, with the principle and experience of law and loyalty. But his ambition may in some measure be excused by the revolutions of Asia", which had erased every notion of legitimate succession; by the recent example of the Atabeks themselves; by his reverence to the son of his benefactor, his humane and generous behaviour to the collateral branches; by *their* incapacity and *his* merit; by the approbation of the caliph, the sole source of all legitimate power; and, above all, by the wishes and interest of the people, whose happiness is the first object of government. In *his* virtues, and in those of his patron, they admired the singular union of the hero and the saint; for both Nouredin and Saladin are ranked among the Mahometan saints; and the constant meditation of the

holy war appears to have shed a serious and sober colour over their lives and actions. The youth of the latter " was addicted to wine and women; but his aspiring spirit soon renounced the temptations of pleasure, for the graver follies of fame and dominion: the garment of Saladin was a coarse woollen; water was his only drink; and, while he emulated the temperance, he surpassed the chastity, of his Arabian prophet. Both in faith and practice he was a rigid Musulman; he ever deplored that the defence of religion had not allowed him to accomplish the pilgrimage of Mecca; but at the stated hours, five times each day, the sultan devoutly prayed with his brethren; the involuntary omission of fasting was scrupulously repaid; and his perusal of the Koran, on horseback between the approaching armies, may be quoted as a proof, however ostentatious, of piety and courage ". The superstitious doctrine of the sect of Shafci was the only study that he deigned to encourage: the poets were safe in his contempt; but all profane science was the object of his aversion; and a philosopher, who had vented some speculative novelties, was seized and strangled by the command of the royal saint. The justice of his divan was accessible to the meanest suppliant against himself and his ministers; and it was only for a kingdom that Saladin would deviate from the rule of equity. While the descendants of Seljuk and Zenghi held his stirrup and smoothed his garments, he was affable and patient with the meanest of his servants. So boundless

CHAP.

LIX.

was his liberality, that he distributed twelve thousand horses at the siege of Acre; and, at the time of his death, no more than forty-seven drams of silver and one piece of gold coin were found in the treasury; yet in a martial reign, the tributes were diminished, and the wealthy citizens enjoyed without fear or danger the fruits of their industry. Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, were adorned by the royal foundations of hospitals, colleges, and mosques; and Cairo was fortified with a wall and citadel; but his works were consecrated to public use<sup>11</sup>, nor did the sultan indulge himself in a garden or palace of private luxury. In a fanatic age, himself a fanatic, the genuine virtues of Saladin commanded the esteem of the Christians: the emperor of Germany gloried in his friendship<sup>12</sup>: the Greek emperor solicited his alliance<sup>13</sup>; and the conquest of Jerusalem diffused, and perhaps magnified, his fame both in the East and West.

His conquest  
of the king-  
dom,  
A. D. 1187.  
July 3.

During its short existence, the kingdom of Jerusalem<sup>14</sup> was supported by the discord of the Turks and Saracens; and both the Fatimite caliphs and the sultans of Damascus were tempted to sacrifice the cause of their religion to the meaner considerations of private and present advantage. But the powers of Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, were now united by an hero, whom nature and fortune had armed against the Christians. All without, now bore the most threatening aspect; and all was feeble and hollow in the internal state of Jerusalem. After the two first Baldwins, the brother and cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon, the



sceptre devolved by female succession to Melisenda, daughter of the second Baldwin, and her husband Fulk, count of Anjou, the father, by a former marriage, of our English Plantagenets. Their two sons, Baldwin the third and Amaury, waged a strenuous, and not unsuccessful, war against the infidels; but the son of Amaury, Baldwin the fourth, was deprived, by the leprosy, a gift of the crusades, of the faculties both of mind and body. His sister Sybilla, the mother of Baldwin the fifth, was his natural heiress: after the suspicious death of her child, she crowned her second husband, Guy of Lusignan, a prince of a handsome person, but of such base renown, that his own brother Jeffrey was heard to exclaim, "Since they have made *him* a king, surely they "would have made *me* a god!" The choice was generally blamed, and the most powerful vassal, Raymond count of Tripoli, who had been excluded from the succession and regency, entertained an implacable hatred against the king, and exposed his honour and conscience to the temptations of the sultan. Such were the guardians of the holy city; a leper, a child, a woman, a coward, and a traitor: yet its fate was delayed twelve years by some supplies from Europe, by the valour of the military orders, and by the distant or domestic avocations of their great enemy. At length, on every side the sinking state was encircled and pressed by an hostile line; and the truce was violated by the Franks, whose existence it protected. A soldier of fortune, Regi-

C H A P.

LIX.

nald of Chatillon, had seized a fortress on the edge of the desert, from whence he pillaged the caravans, insulted Mahomet, and threatened the cities of Mecca and Medina. Saladin condescended to complain; rejoiced in the denial of justice; and at the head of fourscore thousand horse and foot, invaded the Holy Land. The choice of Tiberias for his first siege was suggested by the count of Tripoli, to whom it belonged; and the king of Jerusalem was persuaded to drain his garrisons, and to arm his people, for the relief of that important place". By the advice of the perfidious Raymond, the Christians were betrayed into a camp destitute of water: he fled on the first onset with the curses of both nations": Lusignan was overthrown with the loss of thirty thousand men; and the wood of the true cross, a dire misfortune! was left in the power of the infidels. The royal captive was conducted to the tent of Saladin; and as he fainted with thirst and terror, the generous victor presented him with a cup of sherbet cooled in snow, without suffering his companion, Reginald of Chatillon, to partake of this pledge of hospitality and pardon. "The person and dignity of a king," said the sultan, "are sacred; but this impious robber must instantly acknowledge the prophet, whom he has blasphemed, or meet the death which he has so often deserved." On the proud or conscientious refusal of the Christian warrior, Saladin struck him on the head with his scymetar, and Reginald was dispatched by the guards". The trembling Lusignan was sent

to Damascus to an honourable prison and speedy ransom, but the victory was stained by the execution of two hundred and thirty knights of the hospital, the intrepid champions and martyrs of their faith. The kingdom was left without a head; and of the two grand masters of the military orders, the one was slain and the other was a prisoner. From all the cities, both of the sea-coast and the inland country, the garrisons had been drawn away for this fatal field; Tyre and Tripoli alone could escape the rapid inroad of Saladin; and three months after the battle of Tiberias he appeared in arms before the gates of Jerusalem<sup>2</sup>.

He might expect, that the siege of a city, so venerable on earth and in heaven, so interesting to Europe and Asia, would rekindle the last sparks of enthusiasm; and that, of sixty thousand Christians, every man would be a soldier, and every soldier a candidate for martyrdom. But queen Sybilla trembled for herself and her captive husband; and the barons and knights, who had escaped from the sword and chains of the Turks, displayed the same factious and selfish spirit in the public ruin. The most numerous portion of the inhabitants was composed of the Greek and Oriental Christians, whom experience had taught to prefer the Mahometan before the Latin yoke<sup>3</sup>; and the holy sepulchre attracted a base and needy crowd, without arms or courage, who subsisted only on the charity of the pilgrims. Some feeble and hasty efforts were made for the defence of Jerusalem; but in the space of fourteen days, a

C H A P.  
LIX.

and city of  
Jerusalem,  
A. D. 1187,  
October 2.

CHAP.  
LIX.

victorious army drove back the sallies of the besieged, planted their engines, opened the wall to the breadth of fifteen cubits, applied their scaling-ladders, and erected on the breach twelve banners of the prophet and the sultan. It was in vain that a bare-foot procession of the queen, the women, and the monks, implored the Son of God to save his tomb and his inheritance from impious violation. Their sole hope was in the mercy of the conqueror, and to the first suppliant deputation that mercy was sternly denied. "He had sworn to avenge the patience and long-suffering of the Moslems; the hour of forgiveness was elapsed, and the moment was now arrived to expiate in blood, the innocent blood, which had been spilt by Godfrey and the first crusaders". But a desperate and successful struggle of the Franks admonished the sultan that his triumph was not yet secure; he listened with reverence to a solemn adjuration in the name of the common father of mankind; and a sentiment of human sympathy mollified the rigour of fanaticism and conquest. He consented to accept the city, and to spare the inhabitants. The Greek and Oriental Christians were permitted to live under his dominion; but it was stipulated, that in forty days all the Franks and Latins should evacuate Jerusalem, and be safely conducted to the sea-ports of Syria and Egypt; that ten pieces of gold should be paid for each man, five for each woman, and one for every child; and that those who were unable to purchase their freedom should

should be detained in perpetual slavery. Of some writers it is a favourite and invidious theme to compare the humanity of Saladin with the massacre of the first crusade. The difference would be merely personal; but we should not forget that the Christians had offered to capitulate, and that the Mahometans of Jerusalem sustained the last extremities of an assault and storm. Justice is indeed due to the fidelity with which the Turkish conqueror fulfilled the conditions of the treaty; and he may be deservedly praised for the glance of pity which he cast on the misery of the vanquished. Instead of a rigorous exaction of his debt; he accepted a sum of thirty thousand byzants, for the ransom of seven thousand poor; two or three thousand more were dismissed by his gratuitous clemency; and the number of slaves was reduced to eleven or fourteen thousand persons. In his interview with the queen, his words, and even his tears, suggested the kindest consolations; his liberal alms were distributed among those who had been made orphans or widows by the fortune of war; and while the knights of the hospital were in arms against him, he allowed their more pious brethren to continue, during the term of a year, the care and service of the sick. In these acts of mercy the virtue of Saladin deserves our admiration and love: he was above the necessity of dissimulation, and his stern fanaticism would have prompted him to dissemble, rather than to affect, this profane compassion for the enemies of the Koran. After Jerusalem had

C H A P.  
LIX.

been delivered from the presence of the strangers, the sultan made his triumphant entry, his banners waving in the wind and to the harmony of martial music. The great mosch of Omar, which had been converted into a church, was again consecrated to one God and his prophet Mahomet; the walls and pavement were purified with rose water; and a pulpit, the labour of Nouredin, was erected in the sanctuary. But when the golden cross that glittered on the dome was cast down, and dragged through the streets, the Christians of every sect uttered a lamentable groan, which was answered by the joyful shouts of the Moslems. In four ivory chests the patriarch had collected the crosses, the images, the vases, and the relics, of the holy place: they were seized by the conqueror, who was desirous of presenting the caliph with the trophies of Christian idolatry. He was persuaded however to entrust them to the patriarch and prince of Antioch; and the pious pledge was redeemed by Richard of England, at the expence of fifty-two thousand byzants of gold".

The third  
crusade, by  
sea,  
A. D. 1188.

The nations might fear and hope the immediate and final expulsion of the Latins from Syria; which was yet delayed above a century after the death of Saladin". In the career of victory, he was first checked by the resistance of Tyre; the troops and garrisons, which had capitulated, were imprudently conducted to the same port: their numbers were adequate to the defence of the place; and the arrival of Conrad of Montferrat inspired the disorderly crowd with confidence

and union. His father, a venerable pilgrim, had been made prisoner in the battle of Iberias; but that disaster was unknown in Italy and Greece, when the son was urged by ambition and piety to visit the inheritance of his royal nephew, the infant Baldwin. The view of the Turkish banners warned him from the hostile coast of Jaffa; and Conrad was unanimously hailed as the prince and champion of Tyre, which was already besieged by the conqueror of Jerusalem. The firmness of his zeal, and perhaps his knowledge of a generous foe, enabled him to brave the threats of the sultan, and to declare, that should his aged parent be exposed before the walls, he himself would discharge the first arrow, and glory in his descent from a Christian martyr. The Egyptian fleet was allowed to enter the harbour of Tyre; but the chain was suddenly drawn, and five galleys were either sunk or taken: a thousand Turks were slain in a fally; and Saladin, after burning his engines, concluded a glorious campaign by a disgraceful retreat to Damascus. He was soon assailed by a more formidable tempest. The pathetic narratives, and even the pictures, that represented in lively colours the servitude and profanation of Jerusalem, awakened the torpid sensibility of Europe: the emperor, Frederic Barbarossa, and the kings of France and England, assumed the cross; and the tardy magnitude of their armaments was anticipated by the maritime states of the Mediterranean and the Ocean. The skilful and provident Italians first embarked in

C H A P.  
LIX.

CHAP. the ships of Genoa, Pisa, and Venice. They  
 LIX. were speedily followed by the most eager pilgrims  
 of France, Normandy, and the Western Isles.  
 The powerful succour of Flanders, Frise, and  
 Denmark, filled near an hundred vessels; and the  
 northern warriors were distinguished in the field  
 by a lofty stature and a ponderous battle-axe".  
 Their encreasing multitudes could no longer be  
 confined within the walls of Tyre, or remain  
 obedient to the voice of Conrad. They pitied  
 the misfortunes, and revered the dignity, of  
 Lusignan, who was released from prison, perhaps,  
 to divide the army of the Franks. He proposed  
 the recovery of Ptolemais, or Acre, thirty miles  
 to the south of Tyre; and the place was first  
 invested by two thousand horse and thirty thou-  
 sand foot under his nominal command. I shall  
 not expatiate on the story of this memorable  
 siege; which lasted near two years, and consum-  
 ed, in a narrow space, the forces of Europe  
 and Asia. Never did the flame of enthusiasm  
 burn with fiercer and more destructive rage; not  
 could the true believers, a common appellation,  
 who consecrated their own martyrs, refuse some  
 applause to the mistaken zeal and courage of their  
 adversaries. At the sound of the holy trumpet,  
 the Moslems of Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and the  
 Oriental provinces, assembled under the servant  
 of the prophet": his camp was pitched and  
 removed within a few miles of Acre; and he  
 laboured, night and day, for the relief of his  
 brethren and the annoyance of the Franks. Nine

Siege of  
 Acre,  
 A. D. 1189,  
 July—  
 A. D. 1191,  
 July.

bat:  
 in c  
 such  
 the  
 one  
 tent.  
 regu  
 belie  
 the  
 fresh  
 Latin  
 and  
 repl  
 the t  
 trym  
 that  
 crus.  
 The  
 more  
 cour  
 raise  
 deat  
 and  
 enco  
 and  
 Germ  
 year  
 anch  
 more  
 lation  
 Rich  
 becu



battles, not unworthy of the name, were fought in the neighbourhood, of mount Carmel, with such vicissitude of fortune, that in one attack, the sultan forced his way into the city; that in one sally, the Christians penetrated to the royal tent. By the means of divers and pigeons, a regular correspondence was maintained with the besieged: and, as often as the sea was left open, the exhausted garrison was withdrawn, and a fresh supply was poured into the place. The Latin camp was thinned by famine, the sword, and the climate; but the tents of the dead were replenished with new pilgrims, who exaggerated the strength and speed of their approaching countrymen. The vulgar was astonished by the report, that the pope himself, with an innumerable crusade, was advanced as far as Constantinople. The march of the emperor filled the East with more serious alarms; the obstacles which he encountered in Asia, and perhaps in Greece, were raised by the policy of Saladin; his joy on the death of Barbarossa was measured by his esteem; and the Christians were rather dismayed than encouraged at the sight of the duke of Swabia and his way-worn remnant of five thousand Germans. At length, in the spring of the second year, the royal fleets of France and England cast anchor in the bay of Acre, and the siege was more vigorously prosecuted by the youthful emulation of the two kings, Philip Augustus and Richard Plantagenet. After every resource had been tried, and every hope was exhausted, the

C H A P.  
LIX.

C H A P.  
LIX.

defenders of Acre submitted to their fate; a capitulation was granted, but their lives and liberties were taxed at the hard conditions of a ransom of two hundred thousand pieces of gold, the deliverance of one hundred nobles and fifteen hundred inferior captives, and the restoration of the wood of the holy cross. Some doubts in the agreement, and some delay in the execution, rekindled the fury of the Franks, and three thousand Moslems, almost in the sultan's view, were beheaded by the command of the sanguinary Richard". By the conquest of Acre, the Latin powers acquired a strong town and a convenient harbour; but the advantage was most dearly purchased. The minister and historian of Saladin computes, from the report of the enemy, that their numbers, at different periods, amounted to five or six hundred thousand; that more than one hundred thousand Christians were slain; that a far greater number was lost by disease or shipwreck; and that a small portion of this mighty host could return in safety to their native countries".

Richard of  
England, in  
Palestine,  
A. D.  
1191, 1192.

Philip Augustus, and Richard the first, are the only kings of France and England, who have fought under the same banners; but the holy service, in which they were enlisted, was incessantly disturbed by their national jealousy; and the two factions, which they protected in Palestine, were more averse to each other than to the common enemy. In the eyes of the Orientals, the French monarch was superior in dignity and

power; and in the emperor's absence, the Latins revered him as their temporal chief". His exploits were not adequate to his fame. Philip was brave, but the statesman predominated in his character; he was soon weary of sacrificing his health and interest on a barren coast; the surrender of Acre became the signal of his departure; nor could he justify this unpopular desertion, by leaving the duke of Burgundy, with five hundred knights and ten thousand foot, for the service of the Holy Land. The king of England, though inferior in dignity, surpassed his rival in wealth and military renown"; and if heroism be confined to brutal and ferocious valour, Richard Plantagenet will stand high among the heroes of the age. The memory of *Cœur de Lion*, of the lion-hearted prince, was long dear and glorious to his English subjects; and, at the distance of sixty years, it was celebrated in proverbial sayings by the grandsons of the Turks and Saracens, against whom he had fought: his tremendous name was employed by the Syrian mothers to silence their infants; and if an horse suddenly started from the way, his rider was wont to exclaim, "Dost thou think king Richard is in that bush"? His cruelty to the Mahometans was the effect of temper and zeal; but I cannot believe that a soldier, so free and fearless in the use of his lance, would have descended to whet a dagger against his valiant brother Conrad of Montferrat, who was slain at Tyre by some secret assassins". After the surrender of Acre,

C H A P. and the departure of Philip, the king of England  
 LIX. led the crusaders to the recovery of the sea coast; and the cities of Cæsarea and Jaffa were added to the fragments of the kingdom of Lusignan. A march of one hundred miles from Acre to Ascalon, was a great and perpetual battle of eleven days. In the disorder of his troops, Saladin remained on the field with seventeen guards, without lowering his standard, or suspending the sound of his brazen kettle-drum: he again rallied and renewed the charge; and his preachers or heralds called aloud on the *unitarians*, manfully to stand up against the Christian idolaters. But the progress of these idolaters was irresistible; and it was only by demolishing the walls and buildings of Ascalon, that the sultan could prevent them from occupying an important fortress on the confines of Egypt. During a severe winter, the armies slept; but in the spring, the Franks advanced within a day's march of Jerusalem, under the leading standard of the English king; and his active spirit intercepted a convoy, or caravan, of seven thousand camels. Saladin<sup>75</sup> had fixed his station in the holy city; but the city was struck with consternation and discord: he fasted; he prayed; he preached; he offered to share the dangers of the siege; but his Mamalukes, who remembered the fate of their companions at Acre, pressed the sultan with loyal or seditious clamours, to reserve *his* person and *their* courage for the future defence of the religion and empire<sup>76</sup>. The Moslems were delivered by the sudden, or, as

they deemed, the miraculous, retreat of the Christians"; and the laurels of Richard were blasted by the prudence, or envy, of his companions. The hero, ascending an hill, and veiling his face, exclaimed with an indignant voice, "Those who are unwilling to rescue, are unworthy to view, the sepulchre of Christ!"

CHAP.  
LIX.

After his return to Acre, on the news that Jaffa was surprised by the sultan, he sailed with some merchant vessels, and leaped foremost on the beach; the castle was relieved by his presence; and sixty thousand Turks and Saracens fled before his arms. The discovery of his weakness provoked them to return in the morning; and they found him carelessly encamped before the gates with only seventeen knights and three hundred archers. Without counting their numbers, he sustained their charge; and we learn from the evidence of his enemies, that the king of England, grasping his lance, rode furiously along their front, from the right to the left wing, without meeting an adversary who dared to encounter his career". Am I writing the history of Orlando or Amadis?

During these hostilities, a languid and tedious negotiation" between the Franks and Moslems, was started, and continued, and broken, and again resumed, and again broken. Some acts of royal courtesy, the gift of snow and fruit, the exchange of Norway hawks and Arabian horses, softened the asperity of religious war: from the vicissitude of success, the monarchs might learn to suspect that

His treaty  
and depart-  
ure,  
A. D. 1192,  
September.

CHAPTER Heaven was neuter in the quarrel; nor, after the trial of each other, could either hope for a decisive victory. The health both of Richard and Saladin appeared to be in a declining state; and they respectively suffered the evils of distant and domestic warfare: Plantagenet was impatient to punish a perfidious rival who had invaded Normandy in his absence; and the indefatigable sultan was subdued by the cries of the people, who was the victim, and of the soldiers, who were the instruments, of his martial zeal. The first demands of the king of England were the restitution of Jerusalem, Palestine, and the true cross; and he firmly declared, that himself and his brother pilgrims would end their lives in the pious labour, rather than return to Europe with ignominy and remorse. But the conscience of Saladin refused, without some weighty compensation, to restore the idols, or promote the idolatry, of the Christians: he asserted, with equal firmness, his religious and civil claim to the sovereignty of Palestine; descanted on the importance and sanctity of Jerusalem; and rejected all terms of the establishment, or partition, of the Latins. The marriage which Richard proposed, of his sister with the sultan's brother, was defeated by the difference of faith: the princess abhorred the embraces of a Turk; and Adel, or Saphadin, would not easily renounce a plurality of wives. A personal interview was declined by Saladin, who alleged their mutual ignorance of each other's language; and the negotiation was managed with

much art and delay by their interpreters and envoys. The final agreement was equally disapproved by the zealots of both parties, by the Roman pontiff and the caliph of Bagdad. It was stipulated that Jerusalem and the holy sepulchre should be open, without tribute or vexation, to the pilgrimage of the Latin Christians; that, after the demolition of Ascalon, they should inclusively possess the sea-coast from Jaffa to Tyre; that the count of Tripoli and the prince of Antioch should be comprised in the truce; and that, during three years and three months, all hostilities should cease. The principal chiefs of the two armies swore to the observance of the treaty; but the monarchs were satisfied with giving their word and their right-hand, and the royal majesty was excused from an oath, which always implies some suspicion of falsehood and dishonour. Richard embarked for Europe to seek a long captivity and a premature grave; and the space of a few months concluded the life and glories of Saladin. The Orientals describe his edifying death, which happened at Damascus; but they seem ignorant of the equal distribution of his alms among the three religions", or of the display of a shroud, instead of a standard, to admonish the East of the instability of human greatness. The unity of empire was dissolved by his death; his sons were oppressed by the stronger arm of their uncle Saphadin; the hostile interests of the sultans of Egypt, Damascus, and Aleppo", were again revived; and the Franks or Latins stood, and breathed,

C H A P.  
LIX.

Death of Sa-  
ladin,  
A. D. 1193,  
March 4.

CHAP. and hoped, in their fortresses along the Syrian coast.

LIX.

Innocent I.I.

A. D.

1193—1216.

The noblest monument of a conqueror's fame, and of the terror which he inspired, is the Saladin tenth, a general tax, which was imposed on the laity, and even the clergy, of the Latin church for the service of the holy war. The practice was too lucrative to expire with the occasion; and this tribute became the foundation of all the tithes and tenths on ecclesiastical benefices, which have been granted by the Roman pontiffs to Catholic sovereigns, or reserved for the immediate use of the apostolic see ". This pecuniary emolument must have tended to encrease the interest of the popes in the recovery of Palestine; after the death of Saladin they preached the crusade, by their epistles, their legates, and their missionaries; and the accomplishment of the pious work might have been expected from the zeal and talents of Innocent the third ". Under that young and ambitious priest, the successors of St. Peter attained the full meridian of their greatness; and in a reign of eighteen years, he exercised a despotic command over the emperors and kings, whom he raised and deposed; over the nations, whom an interdict of months or years deprived, for the offence of their rulers, of the exercise of Christian worship. In the council of the Lateran he acted as the ecclesiastical, almost as the temporal, sovereign of the East and West. It was at the feet of his legate that John of England surrendered his crown; and Innocent



may boast of the two most signal triumphs over C H A P.  
 sense and humanity, the establishment of transub- LIX.  
 stantiation, and the origin of the inquisition. At  
 his voice, two crusades, the fourth and the fifth,  
 were undertaken; but except a king of Hungary,  
 the princes of the second order were at the head  
 of the pilgrims; the forces were inadequate to the  
 design; nor did the effects correspond with the  
 hopes and wishes of the pope and the people.

The fourth crusade was diverted from Syria to The fourth  
 Constantinople; and the conquest of the Greek crusade.  
 or Roman empire by the Latins will form the A. D. 1203.  
 proper and important subject of the next chapter.

In the fifth", two hundred thousand Franks The fifth.  
 were landed at the eastern mouth of the Nile. A. D. 1218.

They reasonably hoped that Palestine must be  
 subdued in Egypt, the seat and storehouse of the  
 sultan; and, after a siege of sixteen months, the  
 Moslems deplored the loss of Damietta. But the  
 Christian army was ruined by the pride and in-  
 solence of the legate Pelagius, who, in the  
 pope's name, assumed the character of general:  
 the sickly Franks were encompassed by the waters  
 of the Nile and the Oriental forces; and it was by  
 the evacuation of Damietta that they obtained a  
 safe retreat, some concessions for the pilgrims,  
 and the tardy restitution of the doubtful relic  
 of the true cross. The failure may in some measure  
 be ascribed to the abuse and multiplication of the  
 crusades, which were preached at the same time  
 against the Pagans of Livonia, the Moors of  
 Spain, the Albigeois of France, and the kings of

C H A P.  
LIX.

Sicily, of the Imperial family. In these meritorious services, the volunteers might acquire at home the same spiritual indulgence, and a larger measure of temporal rewards; and even the popes, in their zeal against a domestic enemy, were sometimes tempted to forget the distress of their Syrian brethren. From the last age of the crusades they derived the occasional command of an army and revenue; and some deep reasoners have suspected that the whole enterprise, from the first synod of Placentia, was contrived and executed by the policy of Rome. The suspicion is not founded, either in nature or in fact. The successors of St. Peter appear to have followed, rather than guided, the impulse of manners and prejudice; without much foresight of the seasons, or cultivation of the soil, they gathered the ripe and spontaneous fruits of the superstition of the times. They gathered these fruits without toil or personal danger: in the council of the Lateran, Innocent the third declared an ambiguous resolution of animating the crusaders by his example; but the pilot of the sacred vessel could not abandon the helm; nor was Palestine ever blessed with the presence of a Roman pontiff".

The emperor  
Frederic II.  
in Palestine,  
A. D. 1228.

The persons, the families, and estates of the pilgrims, were under the immediate protection of the popes; and these spiritual patrons soon claimed the prerogative of directing their operations, and enforcing, by commands and censures, the accomplishment of their vow. Frederic the second", the grandson of Barbarossa, was succes-

sively the pupil, the enemy, and the victim, of the church. At the age of twenty-one years, and in obedience to his guardian Innocent the third, he assumed the cross; the same promise was repeated at his royal and imperial coronations; and his marriage with the heiress of Jerusalem for ever bound him to defend the kingdom of his son Conrad. But as Frederic advanced in age and authority, he repented of the rash engagements of his youth: his liberal sense and knowledge taught him to despise the phantoms of superstition and the crowns of Asia: he no longer entertained the same reverence for the successors of Innocent; and his ambition was occupied by the restoration of the Italian monarchy from Sicily to the Alps. But the success of this project would have reduced the popes to their primitive simplicity; and, after the delays and excuses of twelve years, they urged the emperor, with intreaties and threats, to fix the time and place of his departure for Palestine. In the harbours of Sicily and Apulia, he prepared a fleet of one hundred gallies, and of one hundred vessels, that were framed to transport and land two thousand five hundred knights, with their horses and attendants; his vassals of Naples and Germany formed a powerful army; and the number of English crusaders was magnified to sixty thousand by the report of fame. But the inevitable, or affected, slowness of these mighty preparations, consumed the strength and provisions of the more indigent pilgrims: the multitude was thinned by sickness and desertion, and the

**CHAP. LIX.** sultry summer of Calabria anticipated the mischiefs of a Syrian campaign. At length the emperor hoisted sail at Brundisium, with a fleet and army of forty thousand men; but he kept the sea no more than three days; and his hasty retreat, which was ascribed by his friends to a grievous indisposition, was accused by his enemies as a voluntary and obstinate disobedience. For suspending his vow, was Frederic excommunicated by Gregory the ninth; for presuming, the next year, to accomplish his vow, he was again excommunicated by the same pope". While he served under the banner of the cross, a crusade was preached against him in Italy; and after his return he was compelled to ask pardon for the injuries which he had suffered. The clergy and military orders of Palestine were previously instructed to renounce his communion and dispute his commands; and in his own kingdom, the emperor was forced to consent that the orders of the camp should be issued in the name of God and of the Christian republic. Frederic entered Jerusalem in triumph; and with his own hands (for no priest would perform the office) he took the crown from the altar of the holy sepulchre. But the patriarch cast an interdict on the church which his presence had profaned; and the knights of the hospital and temple informed the sultan how easily he might be surprised and slain in his unguarded visit to the river Jordan. In such a state of fanaticism and faction, victory was hopeless and defence was difficult; but the conclusion

conclusion of an advantageous peace may be imputed to the discord of the Mahometans and their personal esteem for the character of Frederic. The enemy of the church is accused of maintaining with the miscreants an intercourse of hospitality and friendship, unworthy of a Christian; of despising the barrenness of the land; and of indulging a profane thought, that if Jehovah had seen the kingdom of Naples, he never would have selected Palestine for the inheritance of his chosen people. Yet Frederic obtained from the sultan the restitution of Jerusalem, of Bethlem and Nazareth, of Tyre and Sidon: the Latins were allowed to inhabit and fortify the city; an equal code of civil and religious freedom was ratified for the sectaries of Jesus and those of Mahomet; and, while the former worshipped at the holy sepulchre, the latter might pray and preach in the mosch of the temple", from whence the prophet undertook his nocturnal journey to heaven. The clergy deplored this scandalous toleration; and the weaker Moslems were gradually expelled; but every rational object of the crusades was accomplished without bloodshed; the churches were restored, the monasteries were replenished; and, in the space of fifteen years, the Latins of Jerusalem exceeded the number of six thousand. This peace and prosperity, for which they were ungrateful to their benefactor, was terminated by the irruption of the strange and savage hords of Carizmians". Flying from the arms of the Moguls, those shepherds of the Caspian rolled

Invasion of  
the Cariz-  
mians,

CHAP. headlong on Syria; and the union of the Franks  
LIX. with the sultans of Aleppo, Hems, and Damascus,  
was insufficient to stem the violence of the torrent.

A. D. 1243. Whatever stood against them, was cut off by  
the sword, or dragged into captivity; the mili-  
tary orders were almost exterminated in a single  
battle; and in the pillage of the city, in the  
profanation of the holy sepulchre, the Latins confess  
and regret the modesty and discipline of the  
Turks and Saracens.

St Louis,  
and the sixth  
crusade,

A. D.

1248—1254.

Of the seven crusades, the two last were under-  
taken by Louis the ninth, king of France; who  
lost his liberty in Egypt, and his life on the coast  
of Africa. Twenty-eight years after his death,  
he was canonized at Rome; and sixty-five miracles  
were readily found, and solemnly attested; to  
justify the claim of the royal saint". The voice  
of history renders a more honourable testimony,  
that he united the virtues of a king, an hero,  
and a man; that his martial spirit was tempered  
by the love of private and public justice; and that  
Louis was the father of his people, the friend of  
his neighbours, and the terror of the infidels.  
Superstition alone, in all the extent of her baleful  
influence", corrupted his understanding and his  
heart; his devotion stooped to admire and imitate  
the begging friars of Francis and Dominic; he  
pursued with blind and cruel zeal the enemies of  
the faith; and the best of kings twice descended  
from his throne to seek the adventures of a  
spiritual knight-errant. A monkish historian would  
have been content to applaud the most despicable

part of his character; but the noble and gallant Joinville", who shared the friendship and captivity of Louis, has traced with the pencil of nature the free portrait of his virtues as well as of his failings. From this intimate knowledge, we may learn to suspect the political views of depressing their great vassals, which are so often imputed to the royal authors of the crusades. Above all the princes of the middle ages, Louis the ninth successfully laboured to restore the prerogatives of the crown; but it was at home, and not in the East, that he acquired for himself and his posterity; his vow was the result of enthusiasm and sickness; and if he were the promoter, he was likewise the victim, of this holy madness. For the invasion of Egypt, France was exhausted of her troops and treasures; he covered the sea of Cyprus with eighteen hundred sails; the most modest enumeration amounts to fifty thousand men; and, if we might trust his own confession, as it is reported by Oriental vanity, he disembarked nine thousand five hundred horse, and one hundred and thirty thousand foot, who performed their pilgrimage under the shadow of his power".

In complete armour, the oriflamme waving before him, Louis leaped foremost on the beach; and the strong city of Damietta, which had cost his predecessors a siege of sixteen months, was abandoned on the first assault by the trembling Moslems. But Damietta was the first and the last of his conquests; and in the fifth and sixth crusades, the same causes, almost on the same

He takes  
Damietta,  
A. D. 1249.

CHAP. ground, were productive of similar calamities".  
 LIX. After a ruinous delay, which introduced into the camp the seeds of an epidemical disease, the Franks advanced from the sea-coast towards the capital of Egypt, and strove to surmount the unseasonable inundation of the Nile, which opposed their progress. Under the eye of their intrepid monarch, the barons and knights of France displayed their invincible contempt of danger and discipline: his brother, the count of Artois, stormed with inconsiderate valour the town of Maffoura; and the carrier pigeons announced to the inhabitants of Cairo, that all was lost. But a soldier, who afterwards usurped the sceptre, rallied the flying troops: the main body of the Christians was far behind their vanguard; and Artois was overpowered and slain. A shower of Greek fire was incessantly poured on the invaders; the Nile was commanded by the Egyptian galleys, the open country by the Arabs; all provisions were intercepted; each day aggravated the sickness and famine; and about the same time a retreat was found to be necessary and impracticable. The Oriental writers confess, that Louis might have escaped, if he would have deserted his subjects: he was made prisoner, with the greatest part of his nobles; all who could not redeem their lives by service or ransom, were inhumanly massacred; and the walls of Cairo were decorated with a circle of Christian heads". The king of France was loaded with chains; but the generous victor, a great grandson of the brother of Saladin, sent

\* His captivity  
 in Egypt,  
 A.D. 1250.



a robe of honour to his royal captive; and his deliverance, with that of his soldiers, was obtained by the restitution of Damietta " and the payment of four hundred thousand pieces of gold. In a soft and luxurious climate, the degenerate children of the companions of Nouredin and Saladin were incapable of resisting the flower of European chivalry: they triumphed by the arms of their slaves or Mamalukes, the hardy natives of Tartary, who at a tender age had been purchased of the Syrian merchants, and were educated in the camp and palace of the sultan. But Egypt soon afforded a new example of the danger of prætorian bands; and the rage of these ferocious animals, who had been let loose on the strangers, was provoked to devour their benefactor. In the pride of conquest, Touran Shaw, the last of his race, was murdered by his Mamalukes; and the most daring of the assassins entered the chamber of the captive king, with drawn scymetars, and their hands imbrued in the blood of their sultan. The firmness of Louis commanded their respect "; their avarice prevailed over cruelty and zeal; the treaty was accomplished; and the king of France, with the relics of his army, was permitted to embark for Palestine. He wasted four years within the walls of Acre, unable to visit Jerusalem, and unwilling to return without glory to his native country.

The memory of his defeat excited Louis, after sixteen years of wisdom and repose, to undertake the seventh and last of the crusades. His finances

C H A P.

LIX.

April 5—

May 6.

**C H A P. LIX.** were restored, his kingdom was enlarged; a new generation of warriors had arisen, and he embarked with fresh confidence at the head of six thousand horse and thirty thousand foot. The loss of Antioch had provoked the enterprise: a wild hope of baptising the king of Tunis, tempted him to flee for the African coast; and the report of an immense treasure reconciled his troops to the delay of their voyage to the Holy Land. Instead of a proselyte, he found a siege; the French panted and died on the burning sands; St. Louis expired in his tent; and no sooner had he closed his eyes, than his son and successor gave the signal of the retreat<sup>100</sup>. "It is thus," says a lively writer, "that a Christian king died near the ruins of Carthage, waging war against the sectaries of Mahomet, in a land to which Dido had introduced the deities of Syria<sup>101</sup>."

His death before Tunis, in the seventh crusade, A. D. 1270, August 25.

The Mamelukes of Egypt,

A. D. 1250—127.

A more unjust and absurd constitution cannot be devised, than that which condemns the natives of a country to perpetual servitude, under the arbitrary dominion of strangers and slaves. Yet such has been the state of Egypt above five hundred years. The most illustrious sultans of the Baharite and Borgite dynasties<sup>102</sup>, were themselves promoted from the Tartar and Circassian bands; and the four-and-twenty beys or military chiefs, have ever been succeeded, not by their sons, but by their servants. They produce the great charter of their liberties, the treaty of Selim the first with the republic<sup>103</sup>; and the Othman emperor still accepts from Egypt a slight acknowledgment of

tribute and subjection. With some breathing intervals of peace and order, the two dynasties are marked as a period of rapine and bloodshed<sup>100</sup>; but their throne, however shaken, reposed on the two pillars of discipline and valour; their sway extended over Egypt, Nubia, Arabia, and Syria; their Mamalukes were multiplied from eight hundred to twenty-five thousand horse; and their numbers were encreased by a provincial militia of one hundred and seven thousand foot, and the occasional aid of sixty-six thousand Arabs<sup>101</sup>. Princes of such power and spirit could not long endure on their coast an hostile and independent nation; and if the ruin of the Franks was postponed about forty years, they were indebted to the cares of an unsettled reign, to the invasion of the Mogols, and to the occasional aid of some warlike pilgrims. Among these, the English reader will observe the name of our first Edward, who assumed the cross in the lifetime of his father Henry. At the head of a thousand soldiers, the future conqueror of Wales and Scotland delivered Acre from a siege; marched as far as Nazareth with an army of nine thousand men; emulated the fame of his uncle Richard; extorted, by his valour, a ten years truce; and escaped, with a dangerous wound, from the dagger of a fanatic *assassin*<sup>102</sup>. Antioch<sup>103</sup>, whose situation had been less exposed to the calamities of the holy war, was finally occupied and ruined by Bôndocdar, or Bibars, sultan of Egypt and Syria; the Latin principality was extinguished;

Loss of Antioch,  
A. D. 1268,  
June 12.

CHAP. and the first seat of the Christian name was  
 LIX. dispeopled by the slaughter of seventeen, and the  
 captivity of one hundred, thousand of her inhabitants. The maritime towns of Laodicea, Gabala, Tripoli, Berytus, Sidon, Tyre, and Jaffa, and the stronger castles of the Hospitalers and Templars, successively fell; and the whole existence of the Franks was confined to the city and colony of St. John of Acre, which is sometimes described by the more classic title of Ptolemais.

After the loss of Jerusalem, Acre<sup>100</sup>, which is distant about seventy miles, became the metropolis of the Latin Christians, and was adorned with strong and stately buildings, with aqueducts, an artificial port, and a double wall. The population was increased by the incessant streams of pilgrims and fugitives: in the pauses of hostility, the trade of the East and West was attracted to this convenient station; and the market could offer the produce of every clime and the interpreters of every tongue. But in this conflux of nations, every vice was propagated and practised: of all the disciples of Jesus and Mahomet, the male and female inhabitants of Acre were esteemed the most corrupt; nor could the abuse of religion be corrected by the discipline of law. The city had many sovereigns, and no government. The kings of Jerusalem and Cyprus, of the house of Lusignan, the princes of Antioch, the counts of Tripoli and Sidon, the great masters of the hospital, the temple, and the Teutonic order, the republics of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa, the pope's legate, the kings of  
 France

France and England, assumed an independent command: seventeen tribunals exercised the power of life and death; every criminal was protected in the adjacent quarter; and the perpetual jealousy of the nations often burst forth in acts of violence and blood. Some adventurers, who disgraced the ensign of the cross, compensated their want of pay by the plunder of the Mahometan villages: nineteen Syrian merchants, who traded under the public faith, were despoiled and hanged by the Christians; and the denial of satisfaction justified the arms of the sultan Khalil. He marched against Acre, at the head of sixty thousand horse and one hundred and forty thousand foot: his train of artillery (if I may use the word) was numerous and weighty; the separate timbers of a single engine were transported in one hundred waggons; and the royal historian Abulfeda, who served with the troops of Hamah, was himself a spectator of the holy war. Whatever might be the vices of the Franks, their courage was rekindled by enthusiasm and despair; but they were torn by the discord of seventeen chiefs, and overwhelmed on all sides by the powers of the sultan. After a siege of thirty-three days, the double wall was forced by the Moslems; the principal tower yielded to their engines; the Mamalukes made a general assault; the city was stormed; and death or slavery was the lot of sixty thousand Christians. The convent, or rather fortress, of the Templars resisted three days longer; but the great master was pierced with an arrow; and, of five hundred

The loss of  
Acre and the  
Holy Land,  
A. D. 1291,  
May 18.

C H A P. knights, only ten were left alive, less happy than  
 LIX. the victims of the sword; if they lived to suffer  
 on a scaffold in the unjust and cruel proscription  
 of the whole order. The king of Jerusalem, the  
 patriarch, and the great master of the hospital,  
 effected their retreat to the shore; but the sea  
 was rough; the vessels were insufficient; and great  
 numbers of the fugitives were drowned before  
 they could reach the isle of Cyprus, which might  
 comfort Lusignan for the loss of Palestine. By  
 the command of the sultan, the churches and  
 fortifications of the Latin cities were demolished:  
 a motive of avarice or fear still opened the holy  
 sepulchre to some devout and defenceless pilgrims;  
 and a mournful and solitary silence prevailed along  
 the coast which had so long resounded with the  
 WORLD'S DEBATE<sup>109</sup>.

END OF THE TENTH VOLUME.



568433









